This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

+ *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.

+ *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.

+ *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.

+ *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at `http://books.google.com/`

Educ T 918.98.190

Harvard College Library
THE GIFT OF
GINN AND COMPANY

3 2044 097 078 331

GILDERSLEEVE-LODGE LATIN SERIES

FIRST LATIN BOOK

BY

CHAS. W. BAIN

HEAD MASTER OF THE SEWANEE GRAMMAR SCHOOL
UNIVERSITY OF THE SOUTH

UNIVERSITY PUBLISHING COMPANY

NEW YORK • BOSTON • NEW ORLEANS

Educ T 918.98.190

HARVARD COLLEGE LIBRARY
GIFT OF
GINN & COMPANY
MARCH 17, 19[illegible]

COPYRIGHT, 1898, BY
UNIVERSITY PUBLISHING COMPANY

*** 2027

PREFACE.

THIS little book is the outgrowth of thirteen years' experience in the classroom, and it is hoped that herein is a justification, however slight, for its appearance among so many books of a like character.

The chief aim of the book is not to overtax the reasoning power of young pupils, and therefore everything has been presented in the simplest way. Only the most important matters have been dwelt upon, while exceptions and peculiarities have been almost entirely excluded. Attention has been called carefully to points of likeness and unlikeness between Latin and English, as well as to the characteristics of the Latin language itself. An attempt has also been made to clear the way for translation; and with this in view, not only illustrative sentences and rules are given, but full explanations of every principle follow the illustrative sentences. There is much repetition, by which method, it is believed, constructions become more firmly imbedded in the pupil's mind. Only the easier and more necessary principles of syntax are introduced in the early part of the book; and throughout, syntax has been rigidly subordinated to the gradual development of the forms.

The vocabulary comes mainly from *Caesar*, and consists of those words that occur most frequently; many words are from *Virī Rōmae* and some few from *Livy* and *Cicero*. In the Latin-English vocabulary, derivations and etymologies are given, in the hope that observant pupils may gain some useful knowledge, but it is not intended that they be dwelt upon in class.

The reading lessons do not form an integral part of the book, and accordingly may be omitted by those teachers who deem them too difficult for their classes. Every attempt has, however, been made to make them easy, by careful explanation of every construction likely to cause difficulty, and, in the earlier lessons, by such alteration of the text as seems necessary to avoid constructions not yet explained. In the extracts at the end of the book special attention has been paid to showing how certain constructions should be translated, and throughout the book the pupil is directed how to translate those Subjunctive constructions which become Indicative in English.

From § 295 on, the exercises, both Latin and English, are made up from the reading lessons, thus repeating the words and constructions, and leading gradually to an easy acquisition of the subsequent extracts.

In conclusion, I take great pleasure in thanking PROFESSOR GILDERSLEEVE and PROFESSOR LODGE, the editors-in-chief of the series, and DR. MCCABE, of the University School, Richmond, Va., who read the book in manuscript and made many valuable suggestions. PROFESSOR LODGE and my brother, MR. GEO. MCK. BAIN, Principal of the Norfolk (Va.) High School, have also given material help in the proof-reading.

It is also a pleasure to acknowledge the uniform courtesy and kindness of the publishers and their reader, and to thank them cordially for their endeavor to render the book attractive in appearance as well as accurate in execution.

CHAS. W. BAIN.

SEWANEE, TENN., *August* 23, 1898.

CONTENTS.

LESSON		PAGE
	Introduction: Alphabet, Syllables, Quantity, Accent, Parts of Speech, Inflexion, Cases, Gender, Number, Persons..	1
I.	First or **A**-Declension: Feminine Nouns.....	7
II.	First or **A**-Declension Continued.....	8
III.	First or **A**-Declension Continued. Genitive Case.....	10
IV.	Verbs of First Conjugation: Stems in **ā**.....	11
V.	First Conjugation Continued: Stems in **ā**. Persons and Number. Direct Object.....	12
VI.	Second or **O**-Declension: Masculine Nouns in **-us**.....	14
VII.	First Conjugation Continued. Dative Case.....	16
VIII.	Second or **O**-Declension: Neuter Nouns in **-um**.....	18
IX.	First Conjugation Continued. Dative Case.....	20
X.	Adjectives in **-us, -a, -um**.....	21
XI.	Second or **O**-Declension Continued: Masculine Nouns in **-er** and **-ir**.....	23
XII.	Second Conjugation: Stems in **ē**.....	25
XIII.	Adjectives in **(-e)r, (-e)ra, (-e)rum**.....	26
XIV.	Second or **O**-Declension Continued: Nouns in **-ius** and **-ium**. Ablative Case.....	28
XV.	Second Conjugation Continued. Ablative Case.....	30
XVI.	Second Conjugation Continued. Accusative Case.....	31
XVII.	Third Declension: Consonant Stems; Mute Stems....	33
XVIII.	Third Declension Continued: Mute Stems Continued..	35
XIX.	First Conjugation Continued. Ablative Case.....	37
XX.	Third Declension Continued: Liquid Stems—Stems in **l** or **n**.....	38
XXI.	Third Declension Continued: Liquid Stems Continued —Stems in **r**. Accusative Case.....	40
XXII.	First Conjugation Continued.....	43
XXIII.	Third Declension Continued: Liquid Stems Continued —Stems in **s**.....	44
XXIV.	Second Conjugation Continued. Accusative Case.....	46
XXV.	Third Declension Continued: **I**-Stems.....	48

LESSON		PAGE
XXVI.	Third Declension Continued : I-Stems Continued. Ablative Case	49
XXVII.	Second Conjugation Continued	51
XXVIII.	Third Declension Continued : I-Stems Continued. Ablative Case.	53
XXIX.	Third Declension Continued. Rules of Gender. Questions	55
XXX.	Third Conjugation : Stems in a Consonant or in i	56
XXXI.	Adjectives of Three Terminations	58
XXXII.	Adjectives of Two Terminations. Ablative Case	60
XXXIII.	Third Conjugation Continued. Ablative Case	61
XXXIV.	Adjectives of One Termination	63
XXXV.	Third Conjugation Continued	65
XXXVI.	Comparison of Adjectives. Ablative Case	67
XXXVII.	Comparison Continued. Ablative Case	69
XXXVIII.	Comparison Continued. Genitive Case	71
XXXIX.	Third Conjugation Continued	73
XL.	Formation and Comparison of Adverbs	75
XLI.	Fourth Conjugation	78
XLII.	Fourth Declension	80
XLIII.	Fifth Declension	82
XLIV.	Fourth Conjugation Continued	84
XLV.	Conjugation of **sum**	86
XLVI.	Cardinal Numeral Adjectives	88
XLVII.	Passive Voice of **amō**. Ablative Case	90
XLVIII.	Ordinal Numeral Adjectives	92
XLIX.	Passive Voice of **amō** Continued	94
L.	Personal Pronouns and Possessive Adjectives	96
LI.	Passive Voice of **amō** Continued	99
LII.	Irregular Adjectives	101
LIII.	Passive Voice of **moneō**. **Hīc, haec, hōc**	103
LIV.	Demonstrative Pronouns Continued	105
LV.	Passive Voice of **moneō** Continued. Determinative Pronouns	107
LVI.	Determinative Pronouns Continued	109
LVII.	Relative Pronouns	111
LVIII.	Passive Voice of **emō**	113
LIX.	Passive of **emō** Continued. Interrogative Pronouns	115
LX.	Passive Voice of **capiō**	117
LXI.	Passive Voice of **audiō**	119

LESSON		PAGE
LXII.	Infinitive Mood	121
	Italia.—Prōserpina	123
LXIII.	Indefinite Pronouns	124
LXIV.	Deponent Verbs	126
	Rōmānī Imperī Exōrdium, I	129
LXV.	Conjugation of **vereor**; **loquor**; **mentior**	130
	Rōmānī Imperī Exōrdium, II	133
LXVI.	Semi-Deponent Verbs. Genitive Case	134
LXVII.	Conjugation of **amō** Continued. Final Subjunctive	135
	Rōmānī Imperī Exōrdium, III	138
LXVIII.	Conjugation of **moneō** Continued. Consecutive Subjunctive	140
LXIX.	Conjugation of **emō** Continued. **Cum** Historical and **cum** Causal	143
	Rōmānī Imperī Exōrdium, IV	146
LXX.	Conjugation of **capiō** Continued. Indirect Question	147
LXXI.	Conjugation of **amō** Continued. Final and Consecutive Subjunctive Continued	149
	Rōmulus, Rōmānōrum Prīmus Rēx, I	153
LXXII.	Conjugation of **sum** Continued. Wishes	154
LXXIII.	Compounds of **sum**. Dative Case	156
LXXIV.	Conjugation of **amō** Concluded: Imperative Mood, etc	158
LXXV.	Conjugation of **moneō** Concluded: Imperative Mood, etc	161
	Rōmulus, Rōmānōrum Prīmus Rēx, II	163
LXXVI.	Conjugation of **emō** Concluded: Imperative Mood, etc. Dative Case	164
LXXVII.	Conjugation of **audiō** Concluded: Imperative Mood, etc. Genitive Case	166
LXXVIII.	Conjugation of **capiō** Concluded: Imperative Mood, etc. Ablative Absolute	169
	Rōmulus, Rōmānōrum Prīmus Rēx, III	171
LXXIX.	Conjugation of **sum** Concluded. Names of Places	172
LXXX.	Impersonal Verbs. Genitive Case	174
LXXXI.	The Accusative and Infinitive	176
	Rōmulus, Rōmānōrum Prīmus Rēx, IV	179
LXXXII.	Conjugation of **possum**. Conditional Sentences	179
LXXXIII.	Conjugation of **prōsum**. Conditional Sentences Continued	182

LESSON		PAGE
LXXXIV.	Conjugation of **eō**. Conditional Sentences Concluded.	185
	Rōmulus, Rōmānōrum Prīmus Rēx, V.	188
LXXXV.	Conjugation of **ferō**, Active and Passive.	188
LXXXVI.	Conjugation of **fīō**. Predicate Nominative.	191
	Rōmulus, Rōmānōrum Prīmus Rēx, VI.	193
LXXXVII.	Conjugation of **volō**; **nōlō**; **mālō**.	194
LXXXVIII.	The Gerund and Gerundive.	196
LXXXIX.	The Supines.	199
	Horātius Cocles, I.	200
XC.	The Periphrastic Conjugation. Dative Case.	201
XCI.	Relative Sentences.	204
	Horātius Cocles, II.	206
XCII.	Sequence of Tenses.	206
XCIII.	Ōrātiō Oblīqua.	208
Reading Lessons :	Life of Caesar.	211
	Life of Cicero.	232
Appendix : Paradigms.		243
Vocabulary :	Latin-English.	275
	English-Latin.	321

ILLUSTRATIONS.

	PAGE
Tuba	14
Hasta	19
Gladiī	29
Mīlitēs	36
Carrus	40
Templum	42
Nāvis	47
Pōculum	54
Arātrum	59
Eques	77
Arcus	81
Sīgna	83
Corōna	95
Agger	98
Horātius	102
Domus	106
Castellum	114
Vestae Sacerdōs	123
Lupa	129
Auspicia	139
Scūta	153
Ānulus	156
Armilla	160
Ārae	168
Forum	175
Gāius Iūlius Caesar	211
Mārcus Tullius Cicerō	232

FIRST LATIN BOOK.

PART I.

I. PRONUNCIATION.

Alphabet.

1. The Latin Alphabet has 24 letters and is like the English, except that it has no J or W.

Vowels.

2. The Vowels are **a, e, i, o, u,** and (in Greek words) **y**; they are divided according to quantity (i.e. the time required for pronunciation) into

long, marked thus —
short, " " ⏑
common, i.e. sometimes *short*, sometimes *long* ⏑ –
" *long*, " *short* – ⏑

REMARK.—In this book all the long vowels are marked.

Sounds of the Vowels.

3. 1. The long vowels are pronounced as follows:

ā like *a* in *f*a*ther*.
ē " *e* in pr*ey*.
ī " *i* in capr*i*ce.
ō like *o* in b*o*ne.
ū " *oo* in n*oo*n.
ȳ " the French *u* in *sûr*.

2. The short vowels have no exact equivalents in English, but are sounded nearly as follows:

a like *a* the first syllable in *a*há.
e " *e* in m*e*t.
i " *i* in p*i*n.
o like *o* in *o*bey.
u " *oo* in c*oo*k.

EXERCISE.

ā,	mē,	sī,	nisi,	tot,
at,	tē,	sīc,	quod,	cūr,
ad,	et,	hī,	nōn,	cum,
sē,	que,	quis,	hōc,	tum.

Diphthongs.

4. The Diphthongs (or Double Sounds) should be pronounced with a slur, but so that each sound should be heard separately ; e.g.:

ae = *aye* (ăh-eh).	**ei** = *ei* in *fe*i*nt* (drawled).
oe = *oy* in b*oy*.	**eu** = *eu* in Spanish d*eu*da (ĕh-oo).
au = *ou* in *our*.	(**ui** = *we* almost).

REMARK.—The sign ¨ (Diærĕsis) over the second vowel shows that each vowel is to be sounded separately.

EXERCISE.

mēn-sae,	coe-pit,	hēia,	cuī,
fae-num,	cau-sa,	heus,	huīc.
foe-dus,	fau-stus,	ēheu,	

Consonants.

5. 1. The Consonants are pronounced as in English, with the following exceptions :

c and **g** are always hard, as in *cat* and *get*.

v is nearly like our *w* in *wine*.

s is always a hissing sound, as in *so*.

t is always hard, as in *time*.

i consonant, i.e. **i** at the beginning of a word before a vowel or between two vowels, like *y* in *yet*.

n before **c**, **g**, **q** has a guttural sound, as in *anchor*.

qu = *kw* almost.

r is trilled.

2. The consonants are divided into

A. *Semivowels:* of which

l, m, n, r are liquids;
h is a breathing;
s is a sibilant.

B. *Mutes:* of which

p, b, f are the P-mutes;
t, d are the T-mutes;
k, c, qu, g are the K-mutes.

3. The double consonants are:

x = **cs** or **gs**, and **z** = **dz**.

Syllables.

6. 1. A syllable is the unit of pronunciation and consists of a vowel or of a vowel and one or more consonants.

2. A Latin word has as many syllables as it has separate vowels or diphthongs: **a-gri-co-la,** *farmer.*

3. A single consonant between two vowels belongs with the following vowel: **a-mō,** *I love;* **mo-nē-bō,** *I shall advise.*

4. Any combination of consonants that can begin a word belongs with the following vowel: **a-sper,** *rough;* **fau-stus,** *lucky;* **cō-gnō-scō,** *I recognize.*

5. Compound words are divided into their component parts: **ab-igō,** *I drive off;* **rēs-pūblica,** *commonwealth.*

6. The last syllable of a word is called *ultimate;* the next to the last, *penult;* the one before the penult, the *antepenult.*

Quantity.

7. A. *Quantity of Vowels.*

1. Vowels are *long by nature:*

a) before **nf, ns,** and **i** consonant (*j*): **infēlix,** *unlucky;* **mēnsa,** *table;* **Pompēius,** *Pompey.*

b) before **gn** and before **-gm** in a few words: **benignus,** *kind;* **pigmentum,** *color.*

c) when the result of contraction: **cōgō,** *I collect* (for **cŏăgō**).

2. Vowels are *short by nature:*

a) before **nd, nt**: **dēfendō,** *I ward off;* **amant,** *they love.*

b) before another vowel or **h**: **meus,** *my;* **trahō,** *I draw.*

B. *Quantity of Syllables.*

1. A syllable is *long by nature,* when it contains a long vowel or a diphthong: **lē-gēs,** *laws;* **sae-vae,** *cruel.*

2. A syllable is *long by position,* when a short vowel is followed by two or more consonants: **ars,** *art;* **amant,** *they love.*

3. A syllable is *common,* when it contains a short vowel followed by a mute with **l** or **r**: **tenĕ-brae,** *darkness.*

Accent.

8. 1. Words of two syllables accent the penult: **pa'ter,** *father;* **mā'-ter,** *mother;* **ĕ-quus,** *horse.*

2. Words of more than two syllables accent the penult when the penult is long; otherwise, the antepenult: **mandā'-re,** *to commit;* **mān'-dĕ-re,** *to chew;* **in'-te-grum,** *entire.*

3. A few little words called enclitics (**-que, -ne, -ve, -ce, -met, -dum**) are so closely joined to the preceding word that its last syllable has an accent: **hominēs'que,** *and the men;* **flūmina've,** *or the rivers;* **ībis'-ne,** *will you go?*

EXERCISE.

Divide into syllables, accent, and pronounce the following words:

molestī,	relinquere,	cucūlus,
culicēs,	peregrē,	cēpērunt,
māgnopere,	concīdit,	māgnus,
cruciābant,	effugit,	nātiō,
īnfēlīcem,	effūgit,	Rhodanus.

II. PARTS OF SPEECH.

9. The Parts of Speech are the same in Latin as in English; namely, the noun, adjective, pronoun, verb, and the particles, which include the adverb, preposition, conjunction, and interjection.

There is no article in Latin, but in other respects the two languages are alike, and what is noun, verb, adjective, etc., in English, must be noun, verb, adjective, etc., in Latin.

Inflexion.

10. Inflexion is the change that words undergo to correspond to change in use.

The inflexion of nouns, pronouns, and adjectives is called *Declension*, and they are said to be *declined*. There are five declensions.

The inflexion of verbs is called *Conjugation*, and they are said to be *conjugated*. There are four conjugations.

Nouns.

11. Nouns are Proper or Common, as in English: **Rōma**, *Rome*; **dominus**, *master*.

Genders.

12. There are three genders—masculine, feminine, and neuter.

The gender of Latin nouns, except when males or females are meant, is largely determined by the endings.

The following rules will prove serviceable:

1. Winds, Rivers, Months, and Mountains are Masculine.
2. Countries, Islands, Cities, Trees, and Plants are feminine.
3. Indeclinable words are neuter.

Cases.

13. Nouns, Adjectives, and Pronouns have six cases in Latin:

1. *Nominative* is the case of the Subject, and is found by asking the question *who?* or *what? before* the verb.
2. *Genitive* is the Adjective case, and is found by asking the question *whose? of whom? of what?*
3. *Dative* is the case of the Indirect Object, and is found by asking the question *to* or *for whom? to* or *for what?*
4. *Accusative* is the case of the Direct Object, and is found by asking the question *whom?* or *what? after* the verb.
5. *Vocative* is the case of Address or of the person spoken to.
6. *Ablative* is the Adverbial Case, and is found by asking the question *by, with, from, in whom?* or *what?*

Conjugation of Verbs.

14. Verbs in Latin have three finite moods—Indicative, Imperative, and Subjunctive: they also have Infinitives, Participles, Gerund, Gerundive, Supines.

Tenses.

15. There are six tenses, as in English: Present, Imperfect, Future, Perfect, Pluperfect, Future Perfect.

Voices.

16. There are two Voices, Active and Passive, as in English.

Numbers.

17. There are two Numbers, Singular and Plural, as in English.

Persons.

18. There are three Persons, First, Second, and Third, as in English.

III. DECLENSIONS AND CONJUGATIONS.

LESSON I.

First or A-Declension: Feminine Nouns.

19. 1. The stem ends in **-ā**, weakened from an original **-ā**, which is found by dropping the **-rum** of the Gen. Plur., e.g. **mēnsārum**, stem **mēnsa-**.

2. The base, to which the case-endings are added, is found by dropping the **-ae** of the Gen. Sing.; e.g. **mēnsae**, base **mēns-**.

mēnsa, *a table:* stem **mēnsa-**.

Sing.—Nom.	mēns**a**,	*a* or *the table.*
Gen.	mēns**ae**,	*of a* or *the table.*
Dat.	mēns**ae**,	*to* or *for a* or *the table.*
Acc.	mēns**am**,	*a* or *the table.*
Voc.	mēns**a**,	*O table.*
Abl.	mēns**ā**,	*by, with, from, in a* or *the table.*
Plur.—Nom.	mēns**ae**,	*tables* or *the tables.*
Gen.	mēns**ārum**,	*of tables* or *of the tables.*
Dat.	mēns**īs**,	*to* or *for tables* or *the tables.*
Acc.	mēns**ās**,	*tables* or *the tables.*
Voc.	mēns**ae**,	*O tables.*
Abl.	mēns**īs**,	*by, with, from, in tables* or *the tables.*

Note carefully

1. That the Nom. and Voc. Sing. are alike.
2. That the Gen. and Dat. Sing. are alike.
3. That the Abl. Sing. differs from the Nom. Sing. only in the long **a** of the ending.
4. That the Nom. and Voc. Plur. are alike.
5. That the Dat. and Abl. Plur. are alike.

20. Vocabulary.

NOUNS.

causa, -ae, f. *cause.*
cōpia, -ae, f. *abundance, plenty.*
fuga, -ae, f. *flight.*
silva, -ae, f. *forest.*
casa, -ae, f. *hut.*
puella, -ae, f. *girl.*
rēgīna, -ae, f. *queen.*
tuba, -ae, f. *trumpet.*—See p. 14.
serva, -ae, f. *slave, female servant.*
fīlia,* -ae, f. *daughter.*

EXERCISES.

21. I. Causae — cōpiārum — fugīs — silva rēgīnae — casa servārum — fugae puellārum — fīliābus*—cōpiā—silvam—tubae—servis.

II. For the queen—to the girls—of the hut—with a rose —from the forest—of the hut—the hut of the slave—the cause of the queens—the forests.

LESSON II.

First or A-Declension Continued.

22. Feminine Adjectives of the First Declension are declined just like the nouns ; e.g.:

Rēgīna bona, *good queen :* stem **rēgīna- bona-.**

* **Fīlia,** *daughter,* and **dea,** *goddess,* have **-ābus** in the Dat. and Abl. Plural.

SING. —	Nom.	rēgīna	bona,	*a* or *the good queen.*
	Gen.	rēgīnae	bonae,	*of a* or *the good queen.*
	Dat.	rēgīnae	bonae,	*to* or *for a* or *the queen.*
	Acc.	rēgīnam	bonam,	*a* or *the good queen.*
	Voc.	rēgīna	bona,	*O good queen.*
	Abl.	rēgīnā	bonā,	*by, with, from, in a* or *the good queen.*
PLUR. —	Nom.	rēgīnae	bonae,	*good queens* or *the good queens.*
	Gen.	rēgīnārum	bonārum,	*of good queens* or *the good queens.*
	Dat.	rēgīnīs	bonīs,	*to* or *for* (*the*) *good queens.*
	Acc.	rēgīnās	bonās,	*good queens* or *the good queens.*
	Voc.	rēgīnae	bonae,	*O good queens.*
	Abl.	rēgīnīs	bonīs,	*by, with, from, in good queens* or *the good queens.*

Note carefully :

That the adjective and noun are in the same case, and that the adjective follows its noun.

23. Vocabulary.

ADJECTIVES.

bona, **-ae**, f. *good.*	**mala**, **-ae**, f. *bad.*
superba, **-ae**, f. *proud.*	**pulchra**, **-ae**, f. *beautiful, pretty.*
parva, **-ae**, f. *small, little.*	**alba**, **-ae**, f. *white.*

VERBS.

est, *is* (*he, she,* or *it is*).	**sunt**, *are* (*they are*).

24. Examine the following :

1. **Puella** est **bona**, the *girl* is *good.*
2. **Puellae** sunt **bonae**, the *girls* are *good.*

EXERCISES.

25. I. 1. Rēgīna est superba. 2. Casa est parva. 3. Causae sunt malae. 4. Rosae sunt pulchrae. 5. Fuga est mala. 6. Silvae sunt parvae. 7. Fīlia est bona. 8. Rēgīna bona est pulchra. 9. Rosa pulchra est alba. 10. Puella mala est superba.

II. 1. The girl is bad. 2. The daughters are good. 3. The roses are white. 4. The forests are beautiful. 5. The queens are proud. 6. White roses are pretty. 7. The small girl is bad. 8. Good queens are beautiful. 9. Bad slaves are proud. 10. The pretty roses are small.

26. 1. RULE.—*The Subject of a finite verb is in the Nominative Case.*

2. RULE.—*A Predicate Noun or Adjective, agreeing with the Subject, is in the Nominative Case.*

LESSON III.

First or A-Declension Continued. Genitive Case.

27. Examine the following:

1. Fīlia **rēgīnae** est bona, { the *queen's* daughter is good; or, the daughter *of the queen* is good.

2. Rosae **puellārum** sunt albae, { the *girls'* roses are white; or, the roses *of the girls* are white.

28. **Vocabulary.**

NOUNS.	ADJECTIVES.
Gallia, -ae, f. *Gaul, France.*	**lāta**, -ae, f. *broad, wide.*
Eurōpa, -ae, f. *Europe.*	**longa**, -ae, f. *long.*
Victōria, -ae, f. *Victoria.*	**māgna**, -ae, f. *great, large.*
Britannia, -ae, f. *Britain.*	ADVERBS.
agricola, -ae, m. *farmer.*	**ubi**, *where?*
nauta, -ae, m. *sailor.*	**nōn**, *not.*

EXERCISES.

29. I. 1. Rēgīna Britanniae est bona. 2. Fīliae agricolārum sunt puellae pulchrae. 3. Casa nautae nōn est māgna. 4. Eurōpa est māgna. 5. Victōria est rēgīna Bri-

tanniae. 6. Gallia est pulchra. 7. Rosae puellārum sunt albae. 8. Ubi est Gallia? 9. Gallia est in (*in*) Eurōpā. 10. Silvae rēgīnae sunt māgnae.

II. 1. The farmer's daughter is pretty. 2. Sailors' huts are small. 3. Britain is not large. 4. Europe is long and (et) broad. 5. The queen's slave is bad. 6. The forest of the farmer is small. 7. The daughter of the proud queen is pretty. 8. The roses of the small girl are white. 9. Where is the good girl? 10. The good girl is in (in) the hut.

30. RULE.—*The Genitive is used to limit or define the meaning of a Noun.*

LESSON IV.

Verbs of the First Conjugation: Stems in -A.

31. PRESENT INDICATIVE of the Verb **amō**, *I love:* stem **amā-**.

SING.—1.	am-**ō**,	*I love, am loving,* or *do love.*
2.	amā-**s**,	*you love, are loving,* or *do love.*
3.	ama-**t**,	*he loves, is loving,* or *does love.*
PLUR.—1.	amā-**mus**,	*we love, are loving,* or *do love.*
2.	amā-**tis**,	*you love, are loving,* or *do love.*
3.	ama-**nt**,	*they love, are loving,* or *do love.*

Observe:

1. That **amō** is for **amā-ō** and that the stem-vowel **-ā** is lost before **-ō**;

2. That the endings in black type are added to the stem **amā-** to denote persons and numbers, as follows:

SING.—1.	**-ō** or **-m** = *I*	PLUR.—1.	**-mus** = *we.*
2.	**-s** = *thou* or *you.*	2.	**-tis** = *you.*
3.	**-t** = *he* (*she* or *it*).	3.	**-nt** = *they.*

32. Like **amō**, conjugate the following verbs:

dō, *I give.*	**ēducō**, *I bring up, educate.*
pūgnō, *I fight.*	**culpō**, *I blame.*
parō, *I prepare.*	**laudō**, *I praise.*
vocō, *I call.*	**servō**, *I save.*

33. To conjugate all the moods and tenses of a Verb, we must know its *Principal Parts.*

The Principal Parts of a Latin Verb are as follows:

PRES. IND.	PRES. INF.	PERF. IND.	SUPINE.
am-ō,	amā-re,	amā-v-ī,	amā-tum.
pūgn-ō,	pūgnā-re,	pūgnā-v-ī,	pūgnā-tum.
par-ō,	parā-re,	parā-v-ī,	parā-tum.
voc-ō,	vocā-re,	vocā-v-ī,	vocā-tum.

EXERCISES.

34. I. 1. Amās. 2. Pūgnāmus. 3. Parātis. 4. Vocat. 5. Dās. 6. Ēducāmus. 7. Culpant. 8. Laudās. 9. Servātis. 10. Vocāmus. 11. Ēducat. 12. Amātis.

II. 1. You love. 2. We give. 3. They fight. 4. He calls. 5. You prepare. 6. We educate. 7. They praise. 8. We blame. 9. He saves. 10. He blames. 11. I praise. 12. You fight.

LESSON V.

First Conjugation Continued: Stems in -A.

PERSONS AND NUMBER—DIRECT OBJECT.

35. I. Examine the following:

1. Fīliam
   - **amō** = I *love the daughter.*
   - **amās** = YOU *love the daughter.*
   - **amāmus** = WE *love the daughter.*
   - **amātis** = YE *love the daughter.*

2.
   - **Rēgīna fīliam amat** = *the* QUEEN *loves the* DAUGHTER.
   - **Rēgīnae fīliam amant** = *the* QUEENS *love the* DAUGHTER.

Observe :

1. That the *first* and *second persons* Sing. and Plur. *cannot* have a *noun subject.*

2. That when the *subject* is a *noun,* the *verb* must be in the *third person singular* for a *singular noun* and *in the third person plural* for a *plural noun.*

II. Examine carefully :

1. **Rēgīnam amat,** { HE *loves the queen;* or, SHE *loves the queen;* or, IT *loves the queen.*

2. **Rēgīnam amant,** THEY *love the queen.*

Observe that,

When *no subject is expressed* in Latin, the *Pronouns* (*he, she,* or *it* for the Sing. and *they* for the Plur.) are used in English.

III. Examine the following :

1. { **Rēgīna fīliam** laudat, / **Fīliam rēgīna** laudat, / Laudat **fīliam rēgīna,** } *the* QUEEN *praises the* DAUGHTER.

2. { **Fīlia** laudat **rēgīnam,** / **Rēgīnam** laudat **fīlia,** / Laudat **fīlia rēgīnam,** } *the* DAUGHTER *praises the* QUEEN.

Observe :

1. That in the first group of sentences, **rēgīna** is *Subject* and in the *Nominative* Case, and **fīliam** is *Object* and in the *Accusative* Case, without regard to the order of the words.

2. That in the second group, **fīlia** is *Subject* and in the *Nominative* Case, and **rēgīnam** is *Object* and in the *Accusative* Case, without regard to the order of the words.

3. That in English a change of order makes a change of sense, but in Latin the *cases must be changed* to change the sense.

EXERCISES.

36. I. 1. Agricola fīliam laudat. 2. Nauta puellam servat. 3. Servae rosās dant. 4. Rēgīna fīliās vocat. 5. Puellam ēducat. 6. Servās culpāmus. 7. Puellās bonās laudātis. 8. Agricolae pūgnant. 9. Rēgīnam Britanniae amās. 10. Puellae rēgīnam superbam nōn amant.

II. 1. He praises the sailors. 2. We love the farmers. 3. Proud queens do not love the slaves. 4. They are educating the girls. 5. You are blaming the farmer's daughter. 6. Small girls love pretty roses. 7. The sailors save the queen's daughter. 8. Girls do not fight. 9. I call the bad slaves. 10. The farmer's daughter loves the sailor.

37. RULE.—*The Verb agrees with its Subject in Person and Number.*

38. RULE.—*The Direct Object of a Transitive Verb is in the Accusative Case.*

TUBA.

LESSON VI.

Second or O-Declension: Masculine Nouns in -us.

39. 1. The stem ends in **-ŏ**, weakened from an original **-ō**, which is found by dropping the **-rum** of the Gen. Plur.; e.g. **dominōrum**, stem **domino-**.

2. The base, to which the case-endings are added, is found by dropping the **-ī** of the Gen. Sing.; e.g. **domini**, base **domin-**.

	dominus, *master*: stem **domino-**.	**dominus bonus**, *good master*: stem **domino- bono-**.
SING.—Nom.	**dominus**,	**dominus** **bonus**,
Gen.	**dominī**,	**dominī** **bonī**,
Dat.	**dominō**,	**dominō** **bonō**,
Acc.	**dominum**,	**dominum** **bonum**,
Voc.	**domine**,	**domine** **bone**,
Abl.	**dominō**.	**dominō** **bonō**.
PLUR.—Nom.	**dominī**,	**dominī** **bonī**,
Gen.	**dominōrum**,	**dominōrum** **bonōrum**,
Dat.	**dominīs**,	**dominīs** **bonīs**,
Acc.	**dominōs**,	**dominōs** **bonōs**,
Voc.	**dominī**,	**dominī** **bonī**,
Abl.	**dominīs**.	**dominīs** **bonīs**.

Note:

1. That the Gen. Sing. and Nom. and Voc. Plur. are alike.

2. That the Voc. Sing. ends in **e** and differs from the Nom. Singular.

3. That the Dat. and Abl. Sing. are alike.

4. That the Dat. and Abl. Plur. are alike.

5. That the Adj. and Noun must be of the same gender and number and in the same case.

40. Vocabulary.

NOUNS.	ADJECTIVES.
amīcus, **-ī**, m. *friend.*	**bonus**, **-ī**, m. *good.*
equus, **-ī**, m. *horse.*	**malus**, **-ī**, m. *bad.*
dominus, **-ī**, m. *master.*	**parvus**, **-ī**, m. *small.*
servus, **-ī**, m. *slave, male servant.*	**superbus**, **-ī**, m. *proud.*
hortus, **-ī**, m. *garden.*	**albus**, **-ī**, m. *white.*

EXERCISES.

41. I. 1. Amīcus est bonus. 2. Dominus equōs amat. 3. Servōs dominī laudāmus. 4. Equus parvus nōn est

superbus. 5. Dominī hortum laudat. 6. Puellae equum album amant. 7. Fīlia rēgīnae servum servat. 8. Agricola est amīcus equī. 9. Agricolae hortum amō. 10. Dominī malī servōs culpant.

II. 1. The bad slaves are fighting. 2. We love the good horse. 3. The queen praises the good friends. 4. The daughter of the slave is good. 5. The queen's horse is white. 6. The master is calling the slaves. 7. You love the friends of the farmer. 8. The farmer's daughter educates the slaves. 9. We give pretty roses. 10. Good slaves do not love proud masters.

LESSON VII.

First Conjugation Continued. Dative Case.

42. IMPERFECT INDICATIVE of the Verb **amō**, *I love:* stem **amā-**.

SING. — 1.	amā-**ba-m**,	*I was loving, loved.*
2.	amā-**bā-s**,	*you were loving, loved.*
3.	amā-**ba-t**,	*he was loving, loved.*
PLUR. — 1.	amā-**bā-mus**,	*we were loving, loved.*
2.	amā-**bā-tis**,	*you were loving, loved.*
3.	amā-**ba-nt**,	*they were loving, loved.*

Note:

That the Imperfect tense is formed by means of the stem **amā**, with the tense-sign **-ba-** and the personal endings (31, 2).

43. Vocabulary.

NOUNS.

fābula, -ae, f. *story.*
incola, -ae, m. and f. *inhabitant.*
terra, -ae, f. *earth, land, country.*
medicīna, -ae, f. *medicine.*
taurus, -I, m. *bull.*
populus, -I, m. *people.*
cibus, -I, m. *food.*
oppidānus, -I, m. *townsman.*

VERBS.

nārr-ō,	**nārrā-re,**	**nārrā-vī,**	**nārrā-tum,**	*I tell, relate.*
īnfrēn-ō,	**īnfrēnā-re,**	**īnfrēnā-vī,**	**īnfrēnā-tum,**	*I bridle.*
volner-ō,	**volnerā-re,**	**volnerā-vī,**	**volnerā-tum,**	*I wound.*
ar-ō,	**arā-re,**	**arā-vī,**	**arā-tum,**	*I plough.*

44. Examine the following:

1. Puella **rēgīnae** rosam dat, { *the girl gives* THE QUEEN *a rose.* / *the girl gives a rose* TO THE QUEEN.

2. Servus **dominō** medicīnam parat, *the slave prepares medicine* FOR THE MASTER.

Observe:

That in the above sentences **rosam** and **medicīnam**, being the objects *directly* affected, are in the *Accusative* Case, while **rēgīnae** and **dominō**, being the objects *indirectly affected,* are in the *Dative* Case.

EXERCISES.

45. I. 1. Nauta puellae fābulam nārrābat. 2. Incolae equōs īnfrēnābant. 3. Agricola taurum volnerābat. 4. Servus dominō medicīnam parābat. 5. Rēgīna populō cibum dabat. 6. Agricolae terram arant. 7. Servus rēgīnae epistulam dabat. 8. Puellae amīcīs rosās pulchrās dant. 9. Serva rēgīnae medicīnam parābat. 10. Rosae albae agricolārum sunt pulchrae.

II. 1. The farmer's slave wounded the bull. 2. The good queen was giving food to the slaves. 3. We were bridling the horses. 4. The daughter of the queen prepares medicine for the slave. 5. He gave the queen a letter. 6. The girl gives a white rose to the queen. 7. Gaul is a country of Europe. 8. The sailor tells stories to the girls. 9. The queen gave a garden to the farmer.

46. RULE.—*The Indirect Object is in the Dative Case.*

LESSON VIII.

Second or O-Declension Continued: Neuter Nouns in -UM.

47. 1. The stem ends in **-ŏ**, weakened from an original **-ō**, which is found by dropping the **-rum** of the Gen. Plur.; e.g. **dōnōrum**: stem **dōno-**.

2. The base, to which the case-endings are added, is found by dropping the **-ī** of the Gen. Sing.; e.g. **dōnī**: base **dōn-**.

	dōnum, *gift*: stem **dōno-**.	**dōnum bonum**, *good gift*: stem **dōno- bono-**.	
SING.—Nom.	dōn**um**,	dōn**um**	bon**um**,
Gen.	dōn**ī**,	dōn**ī**	bon**ī**,
Dat.	dōn**ō**,	dōn**ō**	bon**ō**,
Acc.	dōn**um**,	dōn**um**	bon**um**,
Voc.	dōn**um**,	dōn**um**	bon**um**,
Abl.	dōn**ō**.	dōn**ō**	bon**ō**.
PLUR.—Nom.	dōn**a**,	dōn**a**	bon**a**,
Gen.	dōn**ōrum**,	dōn**ōrum**	bon**ōrum**,
Dat.	dōn**īs**,	dōn**īs**	bon**īs**,
Acc.	dōn**a**,	dōn**a**	bon**a**,
Voc.	dōn**a**,	dōn**a**	bon**a**,
Abl.	dōn**īs**.	dōn**īs**	bon**īs**.

Observe:

1. That the Nom., Acc., and Voc. Sing. are alike.
2. That the Dat. and Abl. Sing. are alike.
3. That the Nom., Acc., and Voc. Plur. are alike and end in **ă**.
4. That the Dat. and Abl. Plur. are alike.
5. That the Adjective and Noun must be of the same gender and in the same case.

48. Vocabulary.

NOUNS.

dōnum, -ī, n. *gift.*
bellum, -ī, n. *war.*
rēgnum, -ī, n. *kingdom.*
caelum, -ī, n. *sky, weather, heaven.*
stella, -ae, f. *star.*

ADJECTIVES.

bonum, -ī, n. *good.*
parvum, -ī, n. *small.*
malum, -ī, n. *bad.*
māgnum, -ī, n. *great, large.*
grātum, -ī, n. *pleasant, pleasing, welcome.*

VERBS.

dēlect-ō,	**dēlectā-re,**	**dēlectā-vī,**	**dēlectā-tum,**	*I delight.*
port-ō,	**portā-re,**	**portā-vī,**	**portā-tum,**	*I carry.*
fug-ō,	**fugā-re,**	**fugā-vī,**	**fugā-tum,**	*I put to flight.*
pōstul-ō,	**pōstulā-re,**	**pōstulā-vī,**	**pōstulā-tum,**	*I ask for.*

EXERCISES.

49. I. 1. Rēgīna bellum māgnum parābat. 2. Fīlia nautae dōnum parvum portat. 3. Dōnum parvum puellās dēlectat. 4. Dōnum malum nōn est grātum. 5. Agricolae taurōs fugābant. 6. Fīliae nautārum cibum pōstulābant. 7. Dōna bona servīs grāta sunt. 8. Stellae caelī sunt pulchrae. 9. Rēgnum rēgīnam dēlectābat. 10. Servī dominō bonō cibum dant.

II. 1. The war is not welcome to the farmers. 2. Good people do not love war. 3. The gift of the queen delighted the girl. 4. The queen's kingdom is small. 5. The girls ask for small gifts. 6. We were carrying food for the horses. 7. Small gifts are welcome. 8. The sailor was telling a story to the inhabitants. 9. The townsmen prepare a great war. 10. The bad slave was wounding the farmer's horse.

LESSON IX.

First Conjugation Continued. Ablative Case.

50. FUTURE INDICATIVE of the verb **amō**, *I love:* stem **amā-**.

SING. — 1.	amā-b-ō,	*I shall love* or *shall be loving.*
2.	amā-bi-s,	*you will love* or *will be loving.*
3.	amā-bi-t,	*he will love* or *will be loving.*
PLUR. — 1.	amā-bi-mus,	*we shall love* or *shall be loving.*
2.	amā-bi-tis,	*you will love* or *will be loving.*
3.	amā-bu-nt,	*they will love* or *will be loving.*

Note:

That the Future tense is formed by means of the stem **amā-**, with the tense-sign **-bi-** (third Pers. Plur. **-bu-**) and the personal endings (31, 2).

51. **Vocabulary.**

aqua, -ae, f. *water.*	**frūmentum**, -ī, n. *grain.*
templum, -ī, n. *temple.*—p. 42.	**pīlum**, -ī, n. *javelin.*
pecūnia, -ae, f. *money.*	**somnus**, -ī, m. *sleep.*
hasta, -ae, f. *spear.*—p. 19.	**vicīnus**, -ī, m. *neighbor.*
deus, -ī, m. *god.*	**gladius**, -ī, m. *sword.*—p. 29.

agit-ō,	**agitā-re,**	**agitā-vī,**	**agitā-tum,**	*I chase, drive.*
tent-ō,	**tentā-re,**	**tentā-vī,**	**tentā-tum,**	*I try, attempt.*
nec-ō,	**necā-re,**	**necā-vī,**	**necā-tum,**	*I slay, kill.*

52. Examine the following:

1. **Pīlō** taurum necat, *he kills the bull* WITH A JAVELIN (instrument).
2. **Venēnō** rēgīnam necat, *he kills the queen* WITH POISON (means).

EXERCISES.

53. I. 1. Agricolae pīlīs taurōs agitābunt. 2. Nautae fugam tentābunt. 3. Incolās tubā vocābimus. 4. Templa Britanniae sunt māgna. 5. Servī equīs frūmentum dabunt.

6. Somnus vicīnum agricolae dēlectat. 7. Rēgīnae fīliās ēducābis. 8. Servō dominī pecūniam dabitis. 9. Puella aquam pōstulābit. 10. Agricola pīlō servum volnerābat.

II. 1. The gifts of the queen will delight the girl. 2. The farmer calls the slaves with a trumpet. 3. The large temples of Gaul are pleasing to the sailors. 4. We shall wound the bull with a javelin. 5. You will give money to the sailors. 6. I shall not blame the little girls. 7. The queen will delight the girl with a gift. 8. The servant gives water to the horses. 9. The farmer's neighbor will kill the bull with a sword. 10. The beautiful temples were delighting the gods.

54. RULE.—*The Means or Instrument, with which anything is done, is expressed by the Ablative without a Preposition.*

LESSON X.

Adjectives in -us, -a, -um.

55. Adjectives of the first and second declensions are declined like nouns, as follows:

bonus, *good*.

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
SING.—Nom.	bonus,	bona,	bonum,
Gen.	bonī,	bonae,	bonī,
Dat.	bonō,	bonae,	bonō,
Acc.	bonum,	bonam,	bonum,
Voc.	bone,	bona,	bonum,
Abl.	bonō,	bonā,	bonō.
PLUR.—Nom.	bonī,	bonae,	bona,
Gen.	bonōrum,	bonārum,	bonōrum,
Dat.	bonīs,	bonīs,	bonīs,
Acc.	bonōs,	bonās,	bona,
Voc.	bonī,	bonae,	bona,
Abl.	bonīs,	bonīs,	bonīs.

56. Examine the following :

1. Masc. { Amīcus est bonus, *the friend is good.*
   { Nautae sunt validī, *the sailors are strong.*
2. Fem. { Īnsula est māgna, *the island is large.*
   { Rēgīnam bonam amāmus, *we love the good queen.*
3. Neut. { Dōnum est grātum, *the gift is welcome.*
   { Dōna sunt grāta, *the gifts are welcome.*

Observe :

1. That the adjective is in the *same gender, number, and case* as the noun.

2. That the adjective usually has the same endings as the noun.

3. That the adjective, agreeing with a masculine noun of the first declension, *must have the masculine endings of the second declension.*

57. Vocabulary.

ADJECTIVES.

bonus,	bona,	bonum, *good.*	māgnus,	māgna,	māgnum, *great.*
superbus,	superba,	superbum, *proud.*	albus,	alba,	album, *white.*
parvus,	parva,	parvum, *small.*	grātus,	grāta,	grātum, *pleasing.*
malus,	mala,	malum, *bad.*	validus,	valida,	validum, *strong.*

VERBS.

vol-ō,	volā-re,	volā-vī,	volā-tum,	*I fly.*
formīd-ō,	formīdā-re,	formīdā-vī,	formīdā-tum,	*I dread, fear.*

NOUNS.

columba, -ae, f. *dove.*
āla, -ae, f. *wing.*
arātrum, -ī, n. *plough.*—p. 59.
oppidum, -ī, n. *town.*

EXERCISES.

58. I. 1. Fīlia bona rēgīnae superbae columbam parvam amat. 2. Servōs malōs tubā māgnā vocābimus. 3. Columbae ālīs parvīs volant. 4. Agricolae validī taurōs nōn formīdābunt. 5. Puellae nautae bonō cibum dabant. 6.

Agricola arātrō terram arābit. 7. Oppida Britanniae sunt māgna. 8. Taurum pīlō māgnō volnerābāmus. 9. Fīlia agricolae bonī nautam validum amābit. 10. Columbae parvae puellīs grātae sunt.

II. 1. The farmer praises the strong sailors. 2. The bad slave does not love the good master. 3. White roses delight the proud queen. 4. We shall chase the bulls of the good farmers. 5. Large horses are strong. 6. The huts of the farmers are small. 7. The dove flies with wings. 8. The girl gives roses to the good sailor. 9. The weather is pleasing to the girls. 10. We did not fear the farmer's bull.

59. RULE.—*Adjectives agree with their Nouns in Gender, Number, and Case.*

LESSON XI.

Second or O-Declension Continued: Masculine Nouns in -ER and -IR.

60. 1. These nouns originally ended in **-us**, so that the stem ends in **-ŏ**, weakened from an original **ō**, which is found by dropping the **-rum** of the Gen. Plur.; e.g. **puerōrum**: stem **puero-**.

2. The base, to which the case-endings are added, is found by dropping the **-ī** of the Gen. Sing.; e.g. **puerī**: base **puer-**.

	puer, *boy*: stem **puero-**.	**ager**, *field*: stem **agro-**.	**vir**, *man*: stem **viro-**.
SING.—Nom.	puer,	ager,	vir,
Gen.	puerī,	agrī,	virī,
Dat.	puerō,	agrō,	virō,
Acc.	puerum,	agrum,	virum,
Voc.	puer,	ager,	vir,
Abl.	puerō.	agrō.	virō.

PLUR.—Nom.	puerī,	agrī,	virī,
Gen.	puerōrum,	agrōrum,	virōrum,
Dat.	puerīs,	agrīs,	virīs,
Acc.	puerōs,	agrōs,	virōs,
Voc.	puerī,	agrī,	virī,
Abl.	puerīs.	agrīs.	virīs.

Observe:

1. That nouns in **-er** and **-ir** are declined like nouns in **-us.**

2. That nouns in **-er** and **-ir** have lost the case-ending in Nom. and Voc. Sing.

61. Vocabulary.

puer, puerī, m. *boy.*
ager, agrī, m. *field.*
vir, virī, m. *man.*
aper, aprī, m. *wild-boar.*
magister, magistrī, m. *teacher.*
līberī, līberōrum, m. *children.*
caper, caprī, m. *goat.*
culter, cultrī, m. *knife.*
liber, librī, m. *book.*
discipulus, -ī, m. *pupil.*

EXERCISES.

62. I. 1. Fīliam magistrī amāmus. 2. Puerī aprōs necant. 3. Virī līberōs bonōs laudābant. 4. Magister puerō librum dabit. 5. Rēgīna virō cultrum dabat. 6. Līberī agricolae cultrō caprum volnerābunt. 7. Librī magistrī sunt bonī. 8. Dīscipulī bonī magistrum nōn formīdābunt. 9. Aprōs gladiīs necābimus. 10. Agricola arātrō agrum arābat.

II. 1. The boys were killing the wild-boar with knives. 2. The children give food to the goats. 3. Teachers love good books. 4. Good men do not love war. 5. The teacher will praise the good pupil. 6. The daughter of the queen gave the man a rose. 7. We love good children. 8. The teacher will tell the boys a story. 9. You were calling the men with a trumpet. 10. The fields of good farmers delight the doves.

LESSON XII.

Second Conjugation: Stems in -ē.

63. PRESENT INDICATIVE of the verb **moneō**, *I advise:* stem **monē-**.

SING.—1.	mone-**ō**,	*I advise, do advise,* or *am advising.*
2.	monē-**s**,	*you advise, do advise,* or *are advising.*
3.	mone-**t**,	*he advises, does advise,* or *is advising.*
PLUR.—1.	monē-**mus**,	*we advise, do advise,* or *are advising.*
2.	monē-**tis**,	*you advise, do advise,* or *are advising.*
3.	mone-**nt**,	*they advise, do advise,* or *are advising.*

Observe:

1. That **moneō**, unlike **amō** (31, 1), retains **e** in the first person.

2. That the endings in black type are added to the stem **monē-** to denote the persons and numbers (cf. 31, 2).

64. 1. The stem of a Latin verb is found by dropping the ending **-re** of the Infinitive active; e.g. **amāre**: stem **amā-**; **monēre**: stem **monē-**.

2. There are in Latin Four Conjugations, distinguished by the endings of the Infinitive Active, as follows:

First conj. ends in **-āre**, distinguished by the vowel **ā**.
Second " " " **-ēre**, " " " " **ē** (long).
Third " " " **-ĕre**, " " " " **ĕ** (short).
Fourth " " " **-īre**, " " " " **ī**.

3. Thus by knowing the Infin. Active, we can tell to what conjugation a verb belongs and how to conjugate it, for **ā-** verbs must be conjugated like **amō**, and **ē-** verbs like **moneō**, etc.

65. Vocabulary.

iniūria, -ae, f. *injury, wrong.*	**peritus, -a, -um**, *skilful.*
dīligentia, -ae, f. *diligence.*	**longus, -a, -um**, *long.*
multus, -a, -um, *much*, pl. *many.*	**dēfessus, -a, -um**, *tired, worn out.*
Rōmānus, -i, m. *a Roman.*	**Graecus, -i**, m. *a Greek.*

mone-ō,	**monē-re,**	**mon-uī,**	**mon-itum,**	*I advise.*
habe-ō,	**habē-re,**	**hab-uī,**	**hab-itum,**	*I have.*
terre-ō,	**terrē-re,**	**terr-uī,**	**terr-itum,**	*I frighten.*

EXERCISES.

66. I. 1. Rōmānī Graecōs terrent. 2. Graecī pīla longa habent. 3. Magister dīscipulōs monet. 4. Nauta perītus fīliam bonam laudābit. 5. Agricolae nautārum dīligentiam laudant. 6. Equī rēgīnae sunt dēfessī. 7. Magister librōs multōs habet. 8. Aprī puellās terrent. 9. Dīligentiam māgnam habēs. 10. Rēgīnae equōs multōs habent.

II. 1. We advise the boys. 2. You frighten the girls. 3. The farmer has a large field. 4. Teachers love the books of the Romans. 5. The daughter of the skilful farmer gives money to the tired sailor. 6. The girls have pretty roses. 7. You did not blame the bad slave. 8. The boys were killing the wild-boar with knives. 9. I have many horses. 10. The Romans fought with long spears.

LESSON XIII.

Adjectives in -ER, -(E)RA, -(E)RUM.

67. **miser,** *wretched, poor.*

	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Sing.—Nom.	miser,	misera,	miserum,
Gen.	miserī,	miserae,	miserī,
Dat.	miserō,	miserae,	miserō,
Acc.	miserum,	miseram,	miserum,
Voc.	miser,	misera,	miserum,
Abl.	miserō,	miserā,	miserō.
Plur.—Nom.	miserī,	miserae,	misera,
Gen.	miserōrum,	miserārum,	miserōrum,
Dat.	miserīs,	miserīs,	miserīs,
Acc.	miserōs,	miserās,	misera,
Voc.	miserī,	miserae,	misera,
Abl.	miserīs,	miserīs,	miserīs.

piger, *slow, lazy.*

SING.—Nom.	piger,	pigra,	pigrum,
Gen.	pigrī,	pigrae,	pigrī,
Dat.	pigrō,	pigrae,	pigrō,
Acc.	pigrum,	pigram,	pigrum,
Voc.	piger,	pigra,	pigrum,
Abl.	pigrō,	pigrā,	pigrō.
PLUR.—Nom.	pigrī,	pigrae,	pigra,
Gen.	pigrōrum,	pigrārum,	pigrōrum,
Dat.	pigrīs,	pigrīs,	pigrīs,
Acc.	pigrōs,	pigrās,	pigra,
Voc.	pigrī,	pigrae,	pigra,
Abl.	pigrīs,	pigrīs,	pigrīs.

Observe:

That adjectives in **-er** differ from those in **-us** only in the Nom. and Voc. Sing. Masc., where the ending is lost (66).

68. Vocabulary.

asper, asper-a, asper-um, *rough, harsh.*
līber, līber-a, līber-um, *free.*
miser, miser-a, miser-um, *wretched, poor.*
prosper, prosper-a, prosper-um, *prosperous* (of things).
aeger, aegr-a, aegr-um, *sick.*
niger, nigr-a, nigr-um, *black.*
piger, pigr-a, pigr-um, *lazy.*
pulcher, pulchr-a, pulchr-um, *beautiful, pretty.*

EXERCISES.

69. I. 1. Somnus grātus nautam aegrum dēlectat. 2. Deus servae aegrae somnum dabit. 3. Pecūnia virōs multōs dēlectat. 4. Puerī pigrī librōs nōn amant. 5. Virōs līberōs laudāmus. 6. Fīliae nautīs miserīs rosās dabunt. 7. Puerī aprum nigrum gladiīs necābunt. 8. Dea virum monet. 9. Oppida prospera virōs līberōs habent. 10. Aper asper puellās parvās terret.

II. 1. The Romans loved their beautiful temples. 2. The daughter of the queen prepares medicine for the sick farmer. 3. Lazy boys love sleep. 4. The teacher gave the book to the lazy boy. 5. The black wild-boar frightens

the poor man. 6. Sleep is welcome to gods and men. 7. The Greeks have beautiful towns. 8. The skilful teacher praises the diligence of the scholars. 9. The pretty girl will give food to the sick sailor. 10. We shall kill the wild-boar with javelins.

LESSON XIV.

Second or O-Declension Continued: Nouns in -ius and -ium. Ablative Case.

70.

	fīlius, *son*: stem **fīlio-**.	**ingenium**, *talent*: stem **ingenio-**.	**Vergilius**, *Vergil*: stem **Vergilio-**.
SING.—Nom.	fīlius,	ingenium,	Vergilius,
Gen.	fīlī, fīliī,	ingénī, ingeniī,	Vergílī, Vergiliī,
Dat.	fīliō,	ingeniō,	Vergiliō,
Acc.	fīlium,	ingenium,	Vergilium,
Voc.	fīlī,	ingenium,	Vergilī,
Abl.	fīliō.	ingeniō.	Vergiliō.
PLUR.—Nom.	fīliī,	ingenia,	
Gen.	fīliōrum,	ingeniōrum,	
Dat.	fīliīs,	ingeniīs,	
Acc.	fīliōs,	ingenia,	
Voc.	fīliī,	ingenia,	
Abl.	fīliīs.	ingeniīs.	

Observe:

1. That Nouns in **-ius** and **-ium** usually have but one **ī** in the *Genitive Singular*.

2. That proper Nouns in **-ius**, with **fīlius** and **genius**, always have the Voc. Sing. in **ī** with accent unchanged; e.g. **fīlī, genī, Vergílī.**

3. That elsewhere these Nouns are regular.

71. Examine the following:

In oppidō sunt templa multa, *there are many temples* IN THE TOWN.
Librī multī sunt **in mēnsā**, *many books are* ON THE TABLE.

Observe:

That **in oppidō** and **in mēnsā** denote the *Place Where*.

72. Vocabulary.

pīrāta, -ae, m. *pirate.*	**perīculōsus**, -a, -um, *perilous, dangerous.*
schola, -ae, f. *school.*	**acūtus**, -a, -um, *sharp.*
epistula, -ae, f. *letter.*	**molestus**, -a, -um, *troublesome, grievous.*
via, viae, f. *road, street, way.*	**saevus**, -a, -um, *cruel, savage.*

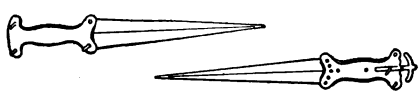
super-ō,	**superā-re**,	**superā-vī**,	**superā-tum**,	*I conquer, overcome.*
habit-ō,	**habitā-re**,	**habitā-vī**,	**habitā-tum**,	*I dwell, live.*
mōnstr-ō,	**mōnstrā-re**,	**mōnstrā-vī**,	**mōnstrā-tum**,	*I show.*

EXERCISES.

73. I. 1. Columbae multae in silvīs sunt. 2. Agricolae in casīs parvīs habitant. 3. Nautīs viam perīculōsam mōnstrāmus. 4. Aprī saevī agricolīs molestī sunt. 5. Fīliī rēgīnae sunt in scholā. 6. Incolae oppidī pīrātās saevōs superābunt. 7. Stellae pulchrae in caelō sunt. 8. Servus dominō epistulam dat. 9. Virī multī sunt in viā lātā. 10. Aprum saevum pīlō acūtō volnerābāmus.

II. 1. Farmers have not much money. 2. We shall dwell in a beautiful town. 3. The queen's son conquered the cruel pirates. 4. The lazy boy has a sharp sword. 5. The pretty roses are on the table. 6. The streets of the town are dangerous. 7. We shall give the farmer's letter to the queen. 8. The troublesome boy is in the woods. 9. The teacher's friend frightens the boy. 10. The cruel pirates are frightening the inhabitants of the town.

74. RULE.—*Place Where is put in the Ablative Case always with a Preposition.*



GLADĪ.

LESSON XV.

Second Conjugation Continued. Ablative Case.

75. IMPERFECT INDICATIVE of the Verb **moneō**, *I advise:* stem **monē-**.

SING.—1.	monē-**ba-m**,	*I was advising, advised.*
2.	monē-**bā-s**,	*you were advising, advised.*
3.	monē-**ba-t**,	*he was advising, advised.*
PLUR.—1.	monē-**bā-mus**,	*we were advising, advised.*
2.	monē-**bā-tis**,	*you were advising, advised.*
3.	monē-**ba-nt**,	*we were advising, advised.*

Note:

That the Imperfect tense is formed by means of the stem **monē-**, with the tense-sign **-ba-** and the personal endings (31, 2).

76. Examine the following:

1. Agricola **ex oppidō** fēstīnat, *the farmer hastens* OUT OF TOWN.
2. Puerī **ā scholā** fēstīnant, *the boys hasten* FROM SHCOOL.
3. Puerī **dē mūrō** pīla iactant, *boys hurl javelins* DOWN FROM THE WALL.

Observe:

That **ex oppidō, ā scholā**, and **dē mūrō** denote *Place Whence.*

77. Vocabulary.

mūrus, -ī, m. *wall.*
lēgātus, -ī, m. *lieutenant, ambassador.*
carrus, -ī, m. *cart.*—p. 40.
in, *in, on* (prep. with Abl.).
ā or **ab**, *from, away from* (prep. with Abl.).
nūntius, -ī, m. *messenger.*
concilium, -ī, n. *council, meeting.*
īnsula, -ae, f. *island.*
dē, *from, down from* (prep. with Abl.).
ē or **ex**, *from, out of* (prep. with Abl.).

iact-ō (1),	**iactā-re,**	**iactā-vī,**	**iactā-tum,**	*I hurl.*
move-ō (2),	**movē-re,**	**mōv-ī,**	**mō-tum,**	*I move.*
fēstīn-ō (1),	**fēstīnā-re,**	**fēstīnā-vī,**	**fēstīnā-tum,**	*I hasten.*

EXERCISES.

78. I. 1. Puerī ex agrīs fēstīnant. 2. Nūntius lēgātō epistulam dabit. 3. Virī multī in conciliō sunt. 4. Servus librōs dē mēnsā movēbat. 5. Incolae ab īnsulā pīrātās agitant. 6. Līberī multī in carrō māgnō sunt. 7. Discipulī ā scholā fēstīnant. 8. Agricola ē casā mēnsās movēbat. 9. Agricolae equōs bonōs īnfrēnābunt. 10. Oppidānī in oppidō habitant.

II. 1. We shall chase the bull away from the hut. 2. The men hurled the swords down from the wall. 3. The lieutenant had a plenty of swords. 4. The cause of the sailor is troublesome to his friends. 5. Many roses are in the queen's garden. 6. The farmer drives the horses out of the fields. 7. The sailor moved the money out of the hut. 8. The boy kills the wild-boar with a sharp sword. 9. Knives are dangerous to little boys. 10. You had many books on the table.

79. RULE.—*Place Whence is expressed by the Ablative with the Prepositions* **ab, dē,** *and* **ex.**

LESSON XVI.

Second Conjugation Continued. Accusative Case.

80. FUTURE INDICATIVE of the Verb **moneō,** *I advise:* stem **monē-.**

SING.—1. monē-**b-ō,** *I shall advise* or *be advising.*
2. monē-**bi-s,** *you will advise* or *be advising.*
3. monē-**bi-t,** *he will advise* or *be advising.*

PLUR.—1. monē-**bi-mus,** *we shall advise* or *be advising.*
2. monē-**bi-tis,** *you will advise* or *be advising.*
3. monē-**bu-nt,** *they will advise* or *be advising.*

Note:

That the Future tense is formed by means of the stem **monē-,** with the tense-sign **-bi-** (3rd Pers. Plur. **-bu-**) and the personal endings (31, 2).

81. Examine the following :

1. Puerī **in oppidum** fēstīnant, *boys hasten* INTO THE TOWN.
2. Puerī **ad scholam** fēstīnant, *boys hasten* TO SCHOOL.

Observe :

1. That in these sentences ***motion*** is expressed.
2. That when motion is expressed, a preposition must be used with the Accusative Case.

Caution :

Carefully distinguish *to* denoting ***Motion*** from *to* denoting the *Indirect Object* (44).

82. **Vocabulary.**

dēle-ō,	**dēlē-re,**	**dēlē-vī,**	**dēlē-tum,**	*I destroy.*
vide-ō,	**vidē-re,**	**vīd-ī,**	**vī-sum,**	*I see.*

in, *into* (prep. with Acc.). **ad,** *to* (prep. with Acc.).

EXERCISES.

83. I. 1. Agricolae ex agrīs in oppidum fēstīnābunt. 2. Servī ad aquam aprōs agitābant. 3. In oppidō templa multa vidēbimus. 4. Puerī mēnsās pulchrās dēlēbunt. 5. Magister ex scholā in casam fēstīnābat. 6. Puellae in viā lātā virōs multōs vidēbunt. 7. Dē mūrō gladiōs iactāmus. 8. Agricolae aprōs pīlīs acūtīs necābunt. 9. Puellae in casam rosās portābunt. 10. Ē casā in agrum mēnsās movēbimus.

II. 1. The sailors will destroy the temples in the town. 2. The boys hasten to the farmer's hut. 3. We were carrying food into the town. 4. The boys threw the javelins down from the wall to the earth. 5. We shall see the beautiful gifts on the table. 6. The slave was preparing food for the master. 7. The teacher was advising the good boys. 8. The queen gives the good girl a rose. 9. The

farmer will move his son into the hut. 10. The boys are hastening to the water.

84. RULE.—*Place Whither* (Motion to a Place) *is expressed by the Accusative with a Preposition.*

LESSON XVII.

Third Declension.

85. 1. The stem ends in a CONSONANT or in **i**.

2. Consonant stems are divided, according to their last letter, into *Mute Stems* and *Liquid Stems*.

86. I. CONSONANT STEMS.

1. The stem ends in a Consonant and is found by dropping the **-um** of the Gen. Plur.; e.g. **prīncipum**: stem **prīncip-**.

2. The base, to which the case-endings are added, is found by dropping the **-is** of the Gen. Sing.; e.g. **prīncipis**: base **prīncip-**.

3. In this division stem and base are alike.

87. A. MUTE STEMS.

	prīnceps, *chief*: stem **prīncip-**.	**rēx**, *king*: stem **rēg-**.	**mīles**, *soldier*: stem **mīlit-**.	**aetās**, *age*: stem **aetāt-**.
SG.—Nom.	prīnceps,	rēx,	mīles,	aetās,
Gen.	prīncip**is**,	rēg**is**,	mīlit**is**,	aetāt**is**,
Dat.	prīncip**ī**,	rēg**ī**,	mīlit**ī**,	aetāt**ī**,
Acc.	prīncip**em**,	rēg**em**,	mīlit**em**,	aetāt**em**,
Voc.	prīnceps,	rēx,	mīles,	aetās,
Abl.	prīncip**e**.	rēg**e**.	mīlit**e**.	aetāt**e**.
PL.—Nom.	prīncip**ēs**,	rēg**ēs**,	mīlit**ēs**,	aetāt**ēs**,
Gen.	prīncip**um**,	rēg**um**,	mīlit**um**,	aetāt**um**,
Dat.	prīncip**ibus**,	rēg**ibus**,	mīlit**ibus**,	aetāt**ibus**,
Acc.	prīncip**ēs**,	rēg**ēs**,	mīlit**ēs**,	aetāt**ēs**,
Voc.	prīncip**ēs**,	rēg**ēs**,	mīlit**ēs**,	aetāt**ēs**,
Abl.	prīncip**ibus**.	rēg**ibus**.	mīlit**ibus**.	aetāt**ibus**.

Observe:

1. That the Nom. and Voc. Sing. are alike.
2. That the Nom., Acc., and Voc. Plur. are alike.
3. That the Dat. and Abl. Plur. are alike.
4. That **c** or **g** of the stem before Nom. ending **s** becomes **x**; e.g. **rēg-s** becomes **rēx**.
5. That **t** of the stem is dropped before the Nom. ending **s**; e.g **aetāt-s** becomes **aetās**.
6. The vowel **i** of the stem often becomes **e** in the Nom. Singular.

88. Vocabulary.

princeps, principis, m. *chief.*
mīles, mīlitis, m. *soldier.*—p. 36.
rēx, rēgis, m. *king.*
aetās, aetātis, f. *age.*
iūdex, iūdicis, m. *judge.*
eques, equitis, m. *horseman.*—p. 77.

equit-ō, equitā-re, equitā-vī, equitā-tum, *I ride* (on horseback).
oppūgn-ō, oppūgnā-re, oppūgnā-vī, oppūgnā-tum, *I storm, besiege, attack.*

EXERCISES.

89. I. 1. Rēgēs in silvā equitābant. 2. Mīlitēs oppida multa oppūgnant. 3. Mīlitēs prīncipis bonī sunt. 4. Fīlius rēgis mīlitī gladium dabit. 5. Rēgēs iūdicibus librōs dant. 6. Bella mala prīncipēs bonōs nōn dēlectant. 7. Rēgīna rēgī fābulās nārrābat. 8. Equī mīlitum validī sunt. 9. Mīlitēs Rōmānōrum oppida māgna oppūgnābant. 10. Oppidānī rēgī dōna pulchra dabunt.

II. 1. We shall praise the good judges. 2. Soldiers do not love a proud king. 3. The daughter of the chief gave money to the soldiers. 4. We saw many soldiers in the town. 5. The pirates dread the king. 6. The horsemen ride into the forests. 7. The queen prepares medicine for the king. 8. The javelins of the soldiers are long. 9. The messenger will carry the letter to the king. 10. The age of the queen's daughter delights the chief.

LESSON XVIII.

Third Declension Continued.

90. A. MUTE STEMS CONTINUED.

	pēs, *foot:*	**cūstōs**, { *guard,* / *keeper,* } :	**virtūs**, *valor:*	**caput**, *head:*
	stem **ped-**.	stem **cūstōd-**.	stem **virtūt-**.	stem **capit-**.
SING. — Nom.	pēs,	cūstōs,	virtūs,	caput,
Gen.	pedis,	cūstōdis,	virtūtis,	capitis,
Dat.	pedī,	cūstōdī,	virtūtī,	capitī,
Acc.	pedem,	cūstōdem,	virtūtem,	caput,
Voc.	pēs,	cūstōs,	virtūs,	caput,
Abl.	pede.	cūstōde.	virtūte.	capite.
PLUR. — Nom.	pedēs,	cūstōdēs,	virtūtēs,	capita,
Gen.	pedum,	cūstōdum,	virtūtum,	capitum,
Dat.	pedibus,	cūstōdibus,	virtūtibus,	capitibus,
Acc.	pedēs,	cūstōdēs,	virtūtēs,	capita,
Voc.	pedēs,	cūstōdēs,	virtūtēs,	capita,
Abl.	pedibus.	cūstōdibus.	virtūtibus.	capitibus.

Observe:

1. That **d** and **t** of the stem are dropped before **s** of the Nom. Singular.

2. That neuters do not add **s** to form the Nom. Singular.

3. That **capit-** changes **i** of the stem to **u** in the Nom. Singular.

4. That in neuters the Nom., Acc., and Voc. of both numbers are alike.

5. That the case-endings here are the same as in the preceding paradigm.

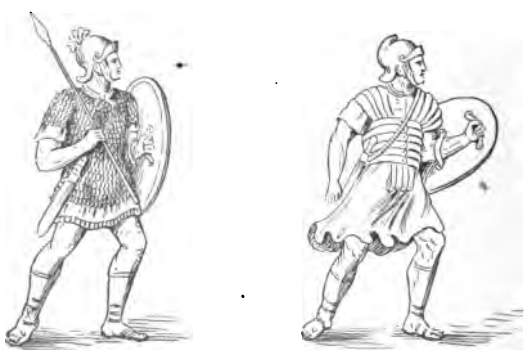
91. ### Vocabulary.

pēs, pedis, m. *foot.*
cūstōs, -ōdis, m. and f. *guard, keeper.*
virtūs, -ūtis, f. *valor, courage.*
caput, capitis, n. *head.*
dux, ducis, m. *leader.*
lapis, -idis, m. *stone.*
obses, -idis, m. and f. *hostage.*
comes, -itis, m. and f. *companion.*
voluptās, -ātis, f. *pleasure.*
fortūna, -ae, f. *fortune.*

EXERCISES.

92. I. 1. Puer mīlitum virtūtem laudat. 2. Rēx comitibus dōna dabit. 3. Puerī malī cūstōdem formīdant. 4. Prīnceps obsidēs multōs pōstulābat. 5. Virtūs oppidānōrum ducem dēlectat. 6. Puer lapide agricolae caput volnerābit. 7. Equitēs rēgem servābunt. 8. Rēgēs et rēgīnae voluptātem amant. 9. Līberī ducis obsidēs sunt. 10. In agricolae agrōs lapidēs multōs portābimus.

II. 1. The soldiers praise the leader's courage. 2. You love good companions. 3. The horsemen will frighten the girls. 4. The townsmen hurled stones down from the wall upon the soldiers. 5. The guard will save the hostages. 6. The soldiers were bringing grain out of the fields into the town. 7. The king will not blame the tired soldiers. 8. The fortune of the chief delights the townsmen. 9. Horses have white feet. 10. The companions of the judge are in the town.



MĪLITĒS.

LESSON XIX.

First Conjugation Continued. Ablative Case.

93. PERFECT INDICATIVE of the verb **amō**, *I love:* stem **amā-**.

SG.—1.	amā-v-ī,	*I loved, did love, have loved.*
2.	amā-v-istī,	*you loved, did love, have loved.*
3.	amā-v-it,	*he loved, did love, has loved.*
PL.—1.	amā-v-imus,	*we loved, did love, have loved.*
2.	amā-v-istis,	*you loved, did love, have loved.*
3.	amā-v-ērunt or amā-v-ēre,	*they loved, did love, have loved.*

Observe:

That the perfect stem is formed by means of the stem **amā**, with the tense sign **-v-**, and to this stem **amāv-**, the personal endings with the connecting vowel **-i-** (**ē** in 3d Pl.) are added as follows:

SING.—1.	**-ī** = *I.*	PLUR.—1.	**-i-mus** = *we.*
2.	**-i-stī** = *you.*	2.	**-i-stis** = *you.*
3.	**-i-t** = *he.*	3.	**-ēru-nt** or **ēre** = *they.*

94. Examine the following:

1. Puer **cum cūrā** labōrat, *the boy works* WITH CARE.
2. Puer **māgnā cum cūrā** labōrat, *the boy works* WITH GREAT CARE.
3. Puer **cūrā māgnā** labōrat, *the boy works* WITH GREAT CARE.

Observe:

1. That the expressions in black type denote *Manner* and answer the question *How?*

2. That in the first and second examples the preposition **cum** *is used,* but in the third example it is *not used.*

95. Vocabulary.

castra, -ōrum (only pl.), n. *camp.*
cīvitās, -ātis, f. *state.*
locus, -ī, m. *place.*
numerus, ī, m. *number.*
proelium, -ī, n. *battle.*
arma, -ōrum (only pl.), n. *arms.*

vāst-ō,	**-āre,**	**-āvī,**	**-ātum,**	*I lay waste.*
tene-ō,	**-ēre,**	**-uī,**	**ten-tum,**	*I hold, keep.*

EXERCISES.

96. I. 1. Rōmānī agrōs vāstāvērunt. 2. Nauta perītus fīliam bonam laudāvit. 3. Magister māgnā cum dīligentiā puerōs monēbit. 4. Mīlitēs ad castra arma portāvērunt. 5. Prīncipēs cīvitātis in hōc (*this*) locō proelia multa pūgnāvērunt. 6. Dux in castrīs māgnum mīlitum numerum tenet. 7. Puerōs et puellās cūrā multā ēducāvistī. 8. Equī validī in oppidum frūmentum portāvēre. 9. Dominus servōs māgnā tubā vocāvit. 10. In mēnsā sunt librī multī.

II. 1. The boys have wounded many wild-boars. 2. You did not blame the slave. 3. The farmers have been killing the wild-boar with knives. 4. The messenger carried the letter to the queen with great care. 5. The Romans had many arms in the camp. 6. We saw the chiefs of the states. 7. The soldiers of the king did not hold the place. 8. We shall move the arms from the camp into the town. 9. The Romans fought great battles. 10. The children of the king are in a cart.

97. RULE.—*Manner is expressed by the Ablative with the Preposition* **cum**, with, *but* **cum** *may be omitted if an adjective is used.*

LESSON XX.

Third Declension Continued.

98. B. LIQUID STEMS: STEMS IN *l* AND *n*.

cōnsul, *consul:*	**leō,** *lion:*	**imāgō,** *likeness:*	**nōmen,** *name:*
stem **cōnsul-.**	stem **leōn-.**	stem **imāgin-.**	stem **nōmin-.**

SING. —	Nom.	cōnsul,	leŏ,	imāgō,	nōmen,
	Gen.	cōnsulis,	leōnis,	imāginis,	nōminis,
	Dat.	cōnsulī,	leōnī,	imāginī,	nōminī,
	Acc.	cōnsulem,	leōnem,	imāginem,	nōmen,
	Voc.	cōnsul,	leŏ,	imāgō,	nōmen,
	Abl.	cōnsule.	leōne.	imāgine.	nōmine.
PLUR. —	Nom.	cōnsulēs,	leōnēs,	imāginēs,	nōmina,
	Gen.	cōnsulum,	leōnum,	imāginum,	nōminum,
	Dat.	cōnsulibus,	leōnibus,	imāginibus,	nōminibus,
	Acc.	cōnsulēs,	leōnēs,	imāginēs,	nōmina,
	Voc.	cōnsulēs,	leōnēs,	imāginēs,	nōmina,
	Abl.	cōnsulibus.	leōnibus.	imāginibus.	nōminibus.

Observe:

1. That the case-endings here are the same as in the other paradigms.

2. That the Nom. Sing. is formed without **s**.

3. That stems in **-n** drop **n** and change **i** to **o** in Nom. Sing., if masculine or feminine.

4. That neuter stems retain **n** and change **i** to **e** in Nom. Singular.

99. Vocabulary.

cōnsul, -ulis, m. *consul.*
leŏ, leōnis, m. *lion.*
imāgō, imāginis, f. *likeness, statue.*
nōmen, nōminis, n. *name.*
carmen, carminis, n. *song.*
virgō, virginis, f. *maiden, virgin.*
flūmen, flūminis, n. *river.*
fossa, -ae, f. *ditch.*
vallum, -i, n. *rampart.*
altus, -a, -um, *high, deep.*
fīdus, -a, -um, *faithful.*
laetus, -a, -um, *glad, joyful.*

fīrm-ō,	**-āre,**	**-āvī,**	**-ātum,**	*I strengthen.*
cant-ō,	**-āre,**	**-āvī,**	**-atum,**	*I sing.*

EXERCISES.

100. I. 1. Agrī agricolārum fossam lātam habent. 2. Puellae carmina pulchra cantābunt. 3. Dux fossā et vallō locum fīrmāvit. 4. In templō nōmina et imāginēs cōnsulum Rōmānōrum vidēbimus. 5. Leŏ virginem terrēbit.

6. Flūmen est lātum et altum. 7. Cūstōdēs fīdī obsidēs miserōs servāvērunt. 8. Fīliī rēgis magistrō laetō librōs dabant. 9. Iūdicēs fīdī populum Rōmānum dēlectāvērunt. 10. Oppidānī oppidum mūrō altō fīrmābant.

II. 1. The boy wounded the lion's head with a stone. 2. The joyful maidens will praise the name of the leader. 3. The soldiers will strengthen the camp with a ditch and a rampart. 4. The faithful lions love their masters. 5. The townsmen hurled stones down from the wall into the ditch. 6. The consul will keep his soldiers in camp. 7. The joyful maidens sing songs to the gods. 8. In the temple are beautiful statues of the gods. 9. The teacher praises the name of the faithful boy. 10. Lions live in the forest.

CARRUS.

LESSON XXI.

Third Declension Continued. Accusative Case.

101. LIQUID STEMS CONTINUED: STEMS IN *r*.

	labor, *toil*: stem **labōr-**.	**pater**, *father*: stem **patr-**.	**aequor**, *sea*: stem **aequor-**.
SING.—Nom.	labor,	pater,	aequor,
Gen.	labōr**is**,	patr**is**,	aequor**is**,
Dat.	labōr**ī**,	patr**ī**,	aequor**ī**,
Acc.	labōr**em**,	patr**em**,	aequor,
Voc.	labor,	pater,	aequor,
Abl.	labōr**e**.	patr**e**.	aequor**e**.

PLUR.—Nom.	labōrēs,	patrēs,	**aequora,**
Gen.	labōrum,	patrum,	**aequorum,**
Dat.	labōribus,	patribus,	**aequoribus,**
Acc.	labōrēs,	patrēs,	aequora,
Voc.	labōrēs,	patrēs,	aequora,
Abl.	labōribus.	patribus.	aequoribus.

Observe :

1. That the Nom. Sing. is formed without **s**.
2. That the stem **patr-** inserts **e** in the Nom. Singular.
3. That the case-endings here are the same as in the foregoing paradigms.

102. Examine the following :

1. **Trēs hōrās** labōrāvit, *he worked* THREE HOURS.
2. Fossa **sex pedēs** lāta est, *the ditch is* SIX FEET *wide.*
3. Flūmen **decem pedēs** altum est, *the river is* TEN FEET *deep.*
4. Mūrus **pedēs sexāgintā** longus est, *the wall is* SIXTY FEET *long.*
5. Castra **decem mīlia passuum** movet, *he moves the camp* TEN MILES.

Observe :

1. That the expressions in heavy type denote *Extent of Times or Space,* and answer the questions *How long? How wide? How deep? How far?*
2. That the adjectives **lātus, altus,** and **longus** must agree with their nouns in *Gender, Number,* and *Case.*

103. Vocabulary.

sex (indeclinable), Num. adj., *six.*
decem (indeclinable), Num. adj., *ten.*
clāmor, -ōris, m. *shout, noise.*
māter, mātris, f. *mother.*
soror, -ōris, f. *sister.*
labor, -ōris, m. *labor.*
hōra, -ae, f. *hour.*
annus, -ī, m. *year.*
victor, -ōris, m. *conqueror.*
frāter, frātris, m. *brother.*
aequor, aequoris, n. *sea.*
arbor, -oris, f. *tree.*

mane-ō,	**manē-re,**	**mān-sī,**	**mān-sum,**	*I remain.*
time-ō,	**timē-re,**	**tim-uī,**	———	*I fear.*

EXERCISES.

104. I. 1. Mīlitēs in oppidō hōrās decem manēbunt. 2. Clāmōrēs puerōrum molestī sunt. 3. Līberī patribus et mātribus cārī sunt. 4. Annus hōrās multās longus est. 5. Frātrēs et sorōrēs amāmus. 6. Labor puerum bonum dēlectat. 7. Mīlitēs victōris cōnsulem terrēbant. 8. Mūrus pedēs decem altus est. 9. Agricolae ex agrīs in oppidum frūmentum portāvērunt. 10. Aequora sunt longa et lāta.

II. 1. The teacher's brother blamed the noise of the scholars. 2. The children will see the conqueror in the town. 3. Mothers and fathers love their children. 4. We shall see long rivers and deep seas. 5. The ditch is ten feet long. 6. The conqueror will remain many years in the town. 7. We shall see many trees in the king's garden. 8. The wall is ten feet broad. 9. The boy wounded the soldier's head with a sword. 10. The soldiers were moving the arms from the town into the camp.

105. RULE.—*Extent of Time and Space is expressed by the Accusative.*

TEMPLUM.

LESSON XXII.

First Conjugation Continued.

106. 1. PLUPERFECT TENSE of the verb **amō**, *I love:* stem **amā-**.

SING. — 1.	amā-v-era-m,	*I had loved.*
2.	amā-v-erā-s,	*you had loved.*
3.	amā-v-era-t,	*he had loved.*
PLUR. — 1.	amā-v-erā-mus,	*we had loved.*
2.	amā-v-erā-tis,	*you had loved.*
3.	amā-v-era-nt,	*they had loved.*

Observe:

That the Pluperfect tense is formed by means of the *Perfect stem* **amāv-**, with the tense sign **-era-** and the personal endings (31, 2).

2. FUTURE PERFECT TENSE of the verb **amō**, *I love:* stem **amā-**.

SING. — 1.	amā-v-er-ō,	*I shall have loved.*
2.	amā-v-eri-s,	*you will have loved.*
3.	amā-v-eri-t,	*he will have loved.*
PLUR. — 1.	amā-v-eri-mus,	*we shall have loved.*
2.	amā-v-eri-tis,	*you will have loved.*
3.	amā-v-eri-nt,	*they will have loved.*

Observe:

That the Future Perfect tense is formed by means of the *Perfect stem* **amāv-**, the tense-sign **-eri-**, and the personal endings (31, 2).

107. Vocabulary.

Caesar, -aris, m. *Caesar.*
corōna, -ae, f. *crown.*—p. 95.
poēta, -ae, m. *poet.*
homŏ, -inis, m. *man.*
iniūria, -ae, f. *injury, wrong.*
patria, -ae, f. *native land.*

ōrn-ō,	**-āre,**	**-āvī,**	**-ātum,**	*I adorn.*
cēl-ō,	**-āre,**	**-āvī,**	**-ātum,**	*I conceal, hide.*
celebr-ō,	**-āre,**	**-āvī,**	**-ātum,**	*I honor, celebrate.*

EXERCISES.

108. I. 1. Caesar corōnā rēgīnam ōrnāverat. 2. Poētae carminibus patriam celebrāverint. 3. Amīcī rēgis iniūriās cēlāverant. 4. Hominēs in silvīs habitābant. 5. Mīles pīlō acūtō prīncipem volnerāvit. 6. Caesar mīlitibus frūmentum dabit. 7. Equitēs hōrās multās in oppidō manēbant. 8. Ex agrīs in oppidum frūmentum portāverimus. 9. Iūdex annōs multōs iniūriam cēlāverat. 10. Poētae nōmen Caesaris laudāvērunt.

II. 1. Caesar had overcome the soldiers of the consul. 2. The Romans had adorned Caesar with a crown. 3. The townsmen will hide the arms in a hut. 4. The native land was dear to the Romans. 5. Many men have overcome wrongs. 6. The queen will adorn the daughter with roses. 7. We shall see many poets in the king's garden. 8. The friends of Caesar had much money. 9. Caesar kept the soldiers in camp many hours. 10. The soldiers had carried the arms from the town to the camp.

LESSON XXIII.

Third Declension Continued.

109. LIQUID STEMS CONTINUED: STEMS IN *s*.

	flōs, *flower*: stem **flōr-**.	**iūs**, *right*: stem **iūr-**.	**genus**, *kind*: stem **gener-**.	**corpus**, *body*: stem **corpor-**.
SG.—Nom.	flōs,	iūs,	genus,	corpus,
Gen.	flōr**is**,	iūr**is**,	gener**is**,	corpor**is**,
Dat.	flōr**ī**,	iūr**ī**,	gener**ī**,	corpor**ī**,
Acc.	flōr**em**,	iūs,	genus,	corpus,
Voc.	flōs,	iūs,	genus,	corpus,
Abl.	flōr**e**.	iūr**e**.	gener**e**.	corpor**e**.
PL.—Nom.	flōr**ēs**,	iūr**a**,	gener**a**,	corpor**a**,
Gen.	flōr**um**,	iūr**um**,	gener**um**,	corpor**um**,
Dat.	flōr**ibus**,	iūr**ibus**,	gener**ibus**,	corpor**ibus**,
Acc.	flōr**ēs**,	iūr**a**,	gener**a**,	corpor**a**,
Voc.	flōr**ēs**,	iūr**a**,	gener**a**,	corpor**a**,
Abl.	flōr**ibus**.	iūr**ibus**.	gener**ibus**.	corpor**ibus**.

Observe:

1. That the case-endings here are the same as in the foregoing paradigms.

2. That **s** of the Nom. Sing. becomes **r** between two vowels.

110. Vocabulary.

flōs, flōris, m. *flower.*	**mōs, mōris**, m. *custom* (pl. *character*).
iūs, iūris, n. *right.*	**volnus, volneris**, n. *wound.*
genus, generis, n. *kind.*	**opus, operis**, n. *work.*
corpus, corporis, n. *body.*	**tempus, temporis**, n. *time.*

cūr-ō,	**-āre,**	**-āvī,**	**-ātum,**	*I care for, heal* (with Acc.).
opt-ō,	**-āre,**	**-āvī,**	**-ātum,**	*I wish for, desire* (with Acc.).
ōr-ō,	**-āre,**	**-āvī,**	**-ātum,**	*I beg for, beg* (with Acc.).
rog-ō,	**-āre,**	**-āvī,**	**-ātum,**	*I ask for, ask* (with Acc.).

EXERCISES.

111. I. 1. Flōrēs multī in agrīs sunt. 2. Opera Caesaris laudāmus. 3. Iūdicibus bonīs iūs cārum est. 4. Volnera mīlitum cūrābimus. 5. Tempora et mōrēs Rōmānōrum carminibus celebrāvimus. 6. Puellae nautīs flōrēs optāverant. 7. Puerī librōs bonōs ōrāverint. 8. In rēgis hortō multa flōrum genera vidēbimus. 9. Fīlia rēgīnae flōrēs rogat. 10. Opera Caesaris magistrīs grāta sunt.

II. 1. The queen's daughter saw many flowers in the fields. 2. The wounds are troublesome to the soldiers. 3. Girls love many kinds of roses. 4. The soldiers of Caesar desired war. 5. Good judges love the rights of men. 6. The master had healed the slave's wound. 7. The farmer desires food for the horses. 8. The bodies of wild-boars and of lions are large. 9. Men blame the customs of the times. 10. The girls will have adorned the queen with flowers.

LESSON XXIV.

Second Conjugation Continued. Accusative Case.

112. PERFECT TENSE of the verb **moneō**, *I advise:* stem **monē-**.

SG.—1.	mon-**u-ī**,	*I advised, did advise, have advised.*
2.	mon-**u-istī**,	*you advised, did advise, have advised.*
3.	mon-**u-it**,	*he advised, did advise, has advised.*
PL.—1.	mon-**u-imus**,	*we advised, did advise, have advised.*
2.	mon-**u-istis**,	*you advised, did advise, have advised.*
3.	mon-**u-ērunt** or mon-**u-ēre**,	*they advised, did advise, have advised.*

Observe:

1. That the personal endings are the same in all perfect tenses.

2. That **mon-u-ī** is for **monē-v-ī**, so that these verbs drop **e** in the perfect and change **v** to **u**.

3. **Dēleō**, *I destroy*, and compounds of **-pleō**, *I fill*, keep the **-v-**: e.g. **dēlēvī**, *I have destroyed;* **complēvī**, *I have filled.*

113. Examine the following:

1. Puer **patrem cultrum** rogat, *the boy asks his* FATHER FOR A KNIFE.

2. Magister **puerum litterās** docet, *the teacher teaches* THE BOY LITERATURE.

3. **Patrem sermōnem** cēlāvī, I *concealed* THE TALK FROM MY FATHER.

Observe:

1. That the expressions in heavy type are both in the *Accusative Case,* and that one denotes the *person,* the other the *thing.*

2. That in English a preposition is sometimes used.

114. Vocabulary.

Aeduus, -ī, m. *an Aeduan.*
sermō, -ōnis, m. *talk, conversation.*
littera, -ae, f. *letter* (of the alphabet): pl. *literature.*

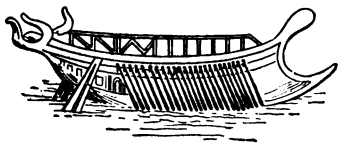
doce-ō,	**docē-re,**	**doc-uī,**	**doc-tum,**	*I teach.*
flāgit-ō,	**-āre,**	**-āvī,**	**-ātum,**	*I demand.*
d-ō,	**da-re,**	**ded-ī,**	**da-tum,**	*I give.*

EXERCISES.

115. I. 1. Magister puerum librum pōstulat. 2. Caesar Aeduōs frūmentum flāgitābat. 3. Līberōs līterās docuimus. 4. Frātrēs patrem sermōnem cēlāverant. 5. Caesar in castrīs equōs multōs habuerit. 6. Numerus mīlitum equitēs terrēbat. 7. Caesar nūntiō pecūniam dederat. 8. Cōnsul in castrīs hōrās multās mānserat. 9. Mūrus oppidī pedēs decem lātus est. 10. Agricolae cum cūrā ex agrīs in oppidum frūmentum portāverant.

II. 1. The teacher taught the girls the names of flowers. 2. Caesar asked the state for soldiers. 3. The soldiers had concealed their wounds from the general. 4. The horsemen of Caesar had put to flight the consul's soldiers. 5. The boy will ask the teacher for a book. 6. The queen had given many flowers to the chief's daughter. 7. We shall teach the pupils literature. 8. The number of the soldiers did not frighten Caesar. 9. The horsemen had fought (for) six hours. 10. The boy carries his books from the hut into the school.

116. RULE.—*Verbs meaning Ask, Demand, Teach, and Conceal take two Accusatives, one of the Person and the other of the Thing.*



NĀVIS.

LESSON XXV.

Third Declension Continued.

117. II. *I*-Stems.

1. The stem ends in **i** and is found by dropping the **-um** of the Gen. Plur.; e.g. **collium**: stem **colli-**.

2. The base, to which the case-endings are added, is found by dropping the **is** of the Gen. Sing.; e.g. **collis**: base **coll-**.

	collis, *hill*: stem **colli-**.	**turris**, *tower*: stem **turri-**.	**tussis**, *cough*: stem **tussi-**.	**vulpēs**, *fox*: stem **vulpi-**.
Sg.—Nom.	**collis**,	**turris**,	**tussis**,	**vulpēs**,
Gen.	**collis**,	**turris**,	**tussis**,	**vulpis**,
Dat.	**collī**,	**turrī**,	**tussī**,	**vulpī**,
Acc.	**collem**,	**turrim** (**em**),	**tussim**,	**vulpem**,
Voc.	**collis**,	**turris**,	**tussis**,	**vulpēs**,
Abl.	**colle**.	**turrī** (**e**).	**tussī**.	**vulpe**.
Pl.—Nom.	**collēs**,	**turrēs**,	**tussēs**,	**vulpēs**,
Gen.	**collium**,	**turrium**,	**tussium**,	**vulpium**,
Dat.	**collibus**,	**turribus**,	**tussibus**,	**vulpibus**,
Acc.	**collīs** (**ēs**),	**turrīs** (**ēs**),	**tussīs** (**ēs**),	**vulpīs** (**ēs**),
Voc.	**collēs**,	**turrēs**,	**tussēs**,	**vulpēs**,
Abl.	**collibus**.	**turribus**.	**tussibus**.	**vulpibus**.

Observe:

1. That the case-endings are the same as in the preceding paradigms.

2. That in the Acc. Plur. i-stems have either **-īs** or **-ēs**.

3. That **tussis** has **-im** in the Acc. Sing. and **-ī** in the Abl. Sing.

118. Vocabulary.

collis, **-is**, m. *hill*.
hostis, **-is**, m. *enemy*.
mēnsis, **-is**, m. *month*.
fīnis, **-is**, n. *end*; pl. *territory, boundary*.
virtūs, **-ūtis**, f. *valor, courage*.
vulpēs, **-is**, f. *fox*.
turris, **-is**, f. *tower*.
ignis, **-is**, m. *fire*.
avis, **-is**, f. *bird*.
nāvis, **-is**, f. *ship*.—p. 47.

EXERCISES.

119. I. 1. Hostēs collem tenuērunt. 2. Caesar in hostium fīnibus mēnsēs sex mānsit. 3. Puer in agrō vulpem vidēbit. 4. Dux mēnsēs multōs in oppidō parvō cōnsulem tenēbat. 5. In colle sunt turrēs multae. 6. In silvā avēs pulchrās vidēbāmus. 7. Caesar īgne hostium agrōs vāstāvit. 8. Hostēs nāvēs multās in aequore habent. 9. Nautae virtūte māgnā nāvēs servāverant. 10. Māter māgnā cum dīligentiā fīlium monuit.

II. 1. We shall see many foxes in the woods. 2. Caesar stormed the towers of the enemy. 3. The soldiers held the hill many hours. 4. Many ships are in the water. 5. The soldiers had stormed many towns in the boundaries of the Aeduans. 6. The bad boy killed the bird with a stone. 7. The enemy concealed the ships from Caesar. 8. We saw large fires in the forests. 9. The soldiers had carried many arms to the hill. 10. The boy chased the fox out of the woods.

LESSON XXVI.

Third Declension Continued. Ablative Case.

120. *I*-STEMS CONTINUED.

	mare, *sea*: stem **mari-**.	**animal**, *animal*: stem **animāli-**.	**calcar**, *spur*: stem **calcāri-**.
SING.—Nom.	**mare**,	animal,	calcar,
Gen.	**maris**,	animālis,	calcāris,
Dat.	**marī**,	animālī,	calcārī,
Acc.	**mare**,	animal,	calcar,
Voc.	**mare**,	animal,	calcar,
Abl.	**marī**.	animālī.	calcārī.
PLUR.—Nom.	**maria**,	animālia,	calcāria,
Gen.	**marum**,	animālium,	calcārium,
Dat.	**maribus**,	animālibus,	calcāribus,
Acc.	**maria**,	animālia,	calcāria,
Voc.	**maria**,	animālia,	calcāria,
Abl.	**maribus**.	animālibus.	calcāribus.

Observe:

1. That the case-endings here are the same as in foregoing paradigms.

2. That some stems in **-al** and **-ar** lose the **-e** in the Nom. Singular.

121. Vocabulary.

mare, -is, n. *sea.*
animal, -ālis, n. *animal, living being.*
calcar, -āris, n. *spur.*
cubīle, -is, n. *couch.*
nāvāle, -is, n. *dock-yard.*
ferrum, -i, n. *iron-sword.*

IDIOMS.

terrā marīque, *by land and sea.*
ferrō ignīque, *by fire and sword.*
mōre rēgis, *like a king.*

122. Examine the following:

1. Rex **cum comitibus** equitat, *the king rides* WITH HIS COMPANIONS,
2. Rēgīna **cum fīliā** ambulat, *the queen walks* WITH HER DAUGHTER.
3. Caesar **cum mīlitibus** mānsit, *Caesar remained* WITH THE SOLDIERS.

Observe carefully:

1. That the expressions in heavy type denote the persons by whom the king, queen, or Caesar is accompanied.

2. That the preposition **cum** is always used.

EXERCISES.

123. I. 1. Caesar terrā marīque hostēs fugāverat. 2. In rēgis hortō animālia multa vidēbimus. 3. Equitēs calcāria māgna habent. 4. Fīlia rēgīnae cubīlia ōrnābit. 5. Caesar in nāvālī nāvēs multās habet. 6. Hostēs ferrō ignīque Rōmānōrum agrōs vāstāverint. 7. Nauta puerīs fābulam grātam nārrāvit. 8. Caesar, mōre rēgis, Aeduōs frūmentum flāgitābat. 9. Dominus fīlios tubā vocat. 10. Fīlia agricolam rosās ōrāvit.

II. 1. Large animals are carrying grain into the town. 2. The king will lay waste the enemy's fields with fire and sword. 3. The consul conquered the enemy by land and

sea. 4. We saw many ships of the Romans in the dock-yards. 5. Horses dread sharp spurs. 6. The maidservant prepares the couch for the queen. 7. The tired horses are bringing the grain from the fields into the town. 8. The queen rides with her children into the fields. 9. We shall remain in the hut with the sons of the farmer. 10. The boy has wounded the horse with a stone.

124. RULE.—*Accompaniment is expressed by the Ablative with the preposition* **cum**.

LESSON XXVII.

Second Conjugation Continued.

125. PLUPERFECT TENSE of the verb **moneō**, *I advise:* stem **monē-**.

SING.— 1.	mon-u-era-m,	*I had advised.*
2.	mon-u-erā-s,	*you had advised.*
3.	mon-u-era-t,	*he had advised.*
PLUR.— 1.	mon-u-erā-mus,	*we had advised.*
2.	mon-u-erā-tis,	*you had advised.*
3.	mon-u-era-nt,	*they had advised.*

Observe:

That the Pluperfect tense is formed by means of the perfect stem **monu-**, with the tense-sign **-era-** and the personal endings (31, 2).

2. FUTURE PERFECT TENSE of the verb **moneō**, *I advise:* stem **monē-**.

SING.— 1.	mon-u-erō,	*I shall have advised.*
2.	mon-u-eri-s,	*you will have advised.*
3.	mon-u-eri-t,	*he will have advised.*
PLUR.— 1.	mon-u-eri-mus,	*we shall have advised.*
2.	mon-u-eri-tis,	*you will have advised.*
3.	mon-u-eri-nt,	*they will have advised.*

Observe:

That the Future Perfect tense is formed by means of the perfect stem **monu-**, with the tense-sign **-eri-** and the personal endings (31, 2).

126. Vocabulary.

hasta, -ae, f. *spear.*	**gaudium, -i,** n. *joy.*
poēta, -ae, m. *poet.*	**audācia, -ae,** f. *boldness.*
pōculum, -i, n. *cup.*—p. 54,	**praeda, -ae,** f. *booty.*
vīnum, -i, n. *wine.*	**aeger, aegra, aegrum,** *sick.*
ventus, -i, m. *wind.*	**aureus, -a, -um,** *golden, gold.*

report-ō,	**-āre,**	**-āvī,**	**-ātum,**	*I gain, win, bring back.*
exspect-ō,	**-āre,**	**-āvī,**	**-ātum,**	*I await, expect.*
administr-ō,	**-āre,**	**-āvī,**	**-ātum,**	*I manage, serve.*
appropinqu-ō,	**-āre,**	**-āvī,**	**-ātum,**	*I approach.*

EXERCISES.

127. I. 1. Mīlitēs in oppidum praedam multam reportant. 2. Caesar poētae pōculum aureum dederat. 3. Rōmānī pīlīs et hastīs pūgnāvērunt. 4. Ventus māgnus in mare nāvem portābat. 5. Caesar māgnā cum audāciā mīlitēs hostium dēlēverat. 6. Magister puerum līterās docuerit. 7. Homŏ aeger māgnō cum gaudiō vīnum exspectat. 8. Māter cum cūrā fīlium monuerat. 9. Taurī fīliās agricolae terruerint. 10. In oppidō hastās multās tenuerimus.

II. 1. The poet tells a pleasing tale to the sick king. 2. Caesar approached the town with many horsemen. 3. The consul had managed the war with great boldness. 4. The soldiers will have won much booty in the war. 5. The king had kept the soldiers in camp for many months. 6. You will have taught the children of the chief. 7. The golden cup delights the girl. 8. The sailor awaits the wind with joy. 9. We had advised the judge's sons. 10. Caesar had conquered the enemy by land and sea.

LESSON XXVIII.

Third Declension Continued. Ablative Case.

128. II. *I*-STEMS CONTINUED.

	urbs, *city*: stem **urbi-**.	**arx**, *citadel*: stem **arci-**.	**pars**, *part*: stem **parti-**.	**mōns**, *mountain*: stem **monti-**.
SING.—Nom.	urbs,	arx,	pars,	mōns,
Gen.	urbis,	arcis,	partis,	montis,
Dat.	urbī,	arcī,	partī,	montī,
Acc.	urbem,	arcem,	partem,	montem,
Voc.	urbs,	arx,	pars,	mōns,
Abl.	urbe.	arce.	parte.	monte.
PLUR.—Nom.	urbēs,	arcēs,	partēs,	montēs,
Gen.	urbium,	arcium,	partium,	montium,
Dat.	urbibus,	arcibus,	partibus,	montibus,
Acc.	urbēs (īs),	arcēs (īs),	partēs (īs),	montēs (īs),
Voc.	urbēs,	arcēs,	partēs,	montēs,
Abl.	urbibus.	arcibus.	partibus.	montibus.

Observe carefully:

1. The endings here are the same as in the foregoing pardigms.

2. That these words are monosyllables with stems in two consonants.

3. That such words and stems in **-ns** and **-rs** have **-ium** in the Gen. Plural.

129. Vocabulary.

urbs, urbis, f. *city*.
arx, arcis, f. *citadel*.
pars, partis, f. *part*.
mōns, montis, m. *mountain*.
aestās, aestātis, f. *summer*.
nox, noctis, f. *night*.
pāx, pācis, f. *peace*.
hiems, hiemis, f. *winter*.
lūx, lūcis, f. *light*.
piscis, -is, m. *fish*.

aedific-ō,	**-āre,**	**-āvī,**	**-ātum,**	*I build.*
proper-ō,	**-āre,**	**-āvī,**	**-ātum,**	*I hasten.*

130. Examine carefully the following :

1. **Hieme** in urbe habitāmus, IN WINTER, *we live in the city.*

2. **Prīmā lūce** urbem oppūgnābimus, AT DAYBREAK, *we shall storm the city.*

3. **Sex hōrīs** hostēs fugābit, WITHIN SIX HOURS, *he will rout the enemy.*

Observe :

That the expressions in heavy type denote *Time* and answer the questions *When? Within What time?*

EXERCISES.

131. I. 1. Rōmānī hieme et aestāte cum hostibus pūgnābant. 2. Prīmā lūce ex urbe properāvimus. 3. Mīlitēs Caesaris māgnam hostium partem in montibus necāverant. 4. Aeduī Caesarem pācem rogāverant. 5. Noctēs hieme sunt longae, aestāte nōn longae. 6. Piscēs in marī sunt. 7. In urbe arcem māgnam aedificāvērunt. 8. Rēx cum rēgīnā in hortō hōrās multās ambulābat. 9. Cōnsul ex urbe ad castra cum mīlitibus properāverit. 10. Magister māgnā cum cūrā puerōs līttерās docēbat.

II. 1. Men work in winter and in summer. 2. Caesar's soldiers held the mountain at daybreak. 3. The Romans had built a beautiful citadel. 4. A great part of the horsemen had hastened to the mountain. 5. They have built many cities in ten years. 6. The Romans fought with the Aeduans many hours. 7. The consul had asked the enemy for peace. 8. The tired horses were hastening from the fields to the town. 9. The soldiers of the consul fought with great valor. 10. Good wine is pleasing to the sick man.

132. RULE.—*Time When or Within Which is put in the Ablative.*

PŌCULUM.

LESSON XXIX.

Third Declension Continued. Rules of Gender. Questions.

133. 1. MASCULINE are nouns in **-ō** (save those in **-dō** and **-gō** and abstract and collective nouns in **-iō**), **-or**, **-ōs**, **-er**, and **-ĕs** increasing in the Genitive (i.e. **-ĕs**, **-itis**; **-ĕs**, **-idis**).

2. FEMININE are nouns in **-dō** and **-gō** and abstract and collective nouns in **-iō**, nouns in **-ās**, **-ēs** not increasing in the Genitive (i.e. **-ēs**, **-is**), in **-ūs**, **-s**, preceded by a consonant, and in **-x**.

3. NEUTER are nouns in **-a**, **-e**, **-ī**, **-y**, **-c**, **-l**, **-n**, **-t**, **-ar**, **-ur**, **-ŭs**.

134. 1. To ask a question in English, we place the Nominative after the verb and often use the auxiliary verb *do, did,* which must *not* be translated into Latin; e.g.:

Are you good?
Does the king hasten?
Did Caesar conquer?

2. In Latin, INTERROGATIVE WORDS are used; e.g.:

-ne (enclitic), expecting answer *yes* or *no*.
nōnne, expecting answer *yes*.
num, expecting answer *no*.

3. **-Ne** is joined to the first word in the sentence: **nōnne** and **num** stand at the head of the sentence, but are not joined to any word.

135. Examine the following:

1. **Sunt-ne puellae bonae?** *are the girls good?* (Asking simply for information. Answer may be yes or no.)
2. **Nōnne rēx festinat?** *does not the king hasten?* (Yes.)
3. **Num Caesar superāvit?** *did Caesar conquer?* (No.)

EXERCISES.

136. I. 1. Sunt-ne puerī in scholā? 2. Nōnne agricola equōs validōs habet? 3. Num dux Caesarem superāvit? 4. Vāstābunt-ne Rōmānī agrōs hostium ferrō īgnīque? 5. Nōnne rēx cum rēgīnā ambulābat? 6. Nūntius ad rēgem epistulam portāverat. 7. Labōrant-ne hominēs hieme et aestāte? 8. Rōmānī cum Aeduīs hōrās sex pūgnāverant. 9. Māter bona cum cūrā fīliōs monet. 10. Num Caesar, cum gaudiō oppidum dēlēvit?

II. 1. Are there many guards in the citadel? 2. Will a good boy wound the horse with a stone? 3. Did the horsemen hasten from the city by night? 4. The Aeduans have asked Caesar for peace. 5. Are many men in the fields in winter? 6. The soldiers had fought many hours with great valor. 7. Was the king walking in the garden with the queen? 8. The good slave prepared medicine for his sick master. 9. The good judge frightened the cruel men. 10. The maidens will celebrate the name of Caesar in song.

LESSON XXX.

Third Conjugation: Stems in a Consonant or ī.

137. 1. PRESENT INDICATIVE of **emō**, *I buy:* stem **emĕ-**.

SING. — 1.	em-**ō**,	*I buy, am buying,* or *do buy.*
2.	emi-**s**,	*you buy, are buying,* or *do buy.*
3.	emi-**t**,	*he buys, is buying,* or *does buy.*
PLUR. — 1.	emi-**mus**,	*we buy, are buying,* or *do buy.*
2.	emi-**tis**,	*you buy, are buying,* or *do buy.*
3.	emu-**nt**,	*they buy, are buying,* or *do buy.*

Observe:

1. That **e** of stem disappears and **-i-** is changed to **-u-** in the 3d Pers. Plural.

2. That the personal endings (31, 2) are the same here as in other verbs.

2. IMPERFECT INDICATIVE of **emō**, *I buy:* stem **emē-**.

SING. — 1. emē-**ba-m**, *I was buying, bought.*
2. emē-**bā-s**, *you were buying, bought.*
3. emē-**ba-t**, *he was buying, bought.*

PLUR. — 1. emē-**bā-mus**, *we were buying, bought.*
2. emē-**bā-tis**, *you were buying, bought.*
3. emē-**ba-nt**, *they were buying, bought.*

Observe:

That the Imperfect tense is formed by means of the lengthened stem **emē-**, with the tense-sign **-bā-** and the personal endings (31, 2).

138. Vocabulary.

cohors, -tis, f. *cohort.*
ōrdō, -inis, m. *order, rank, row.*
pedes, peditis, m. *foot-soldier.*
flūmen, -inis, n. *river.*
iter, itineris, n. *march, journey.*
legiō, -ōnis, f. *legion.*

em-ō,	**em-e-re,**	**ēm-ī,**	**ēm-p-tum,**	*I buy.*
reg-ō,	**reg-e-re,**	**rēx-ī,**	**rēct-um,**	*I rule.*
dūc-ō,	**dūc-e-re,**	**dūx-ī,**	**duct-um,**	*I lead.*
mitt-ō,	**mitt-e-re,**	**mīs-ī,**	**miss-um,**	*I send.*

EXERCISES.

139. I. 1. Caesar ad castra cohortēs sex mittit. 2. Aeduī frūmentum multum emēbant. 3. Regis-ne in rēgnō? 4. In urbem sex peditum ōrdinēs dūcimus. 5. Num ad flūmen peditēs dūcēbās? 6. Est-ne iter ad oppidum longum? 7. Cōnsulēs peditēs et equitēs dūcunt. 8. Rōmānī in hostium fīnēs legiōnēs multās mittēbant. 9. Mīlitēs legiōnis mittēbātis. 10. Hominem ad iūdicem dūcō.

II. 1. Is Caesar buying much grain? 2. He was leading ten cohorts into the territory of the enemy. 3. The consul hastened the march from the city to the camp. 4. The lieutenant sent a legion to Caesar. 5. Are you ruling the horses? 6. Were you buying corn in the fields? 7.

We lead many ranks of soldiers to war. 8. Caesar sent six legions with the lieutenant. 9. He was leading the cohorts with great care. 10. We have seen many fish in the river.

LESSON XXXI.

Adjectives of Three Terminations.

140. A few stems in **-i** preceded by **r** (**cr, tr, br**) have three terminations.

ācer, *sharp, keen, eager:* stem, **ācri-**.

	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Sing.—Nom.	ācer,	ācris,	ācre,
Gen.	ācris,	ācris,	ācris,
Dat.	ācrī,	ācrī,	ācrī,
Acc.	ācrem,	ācrem,	ācre,
Voc.	ācer,	ācris,	ācre,
Abl.	ācrī,	ācrī,	ācrī.
Plur.—Nom.	ācrēs,	ācrēs,	ācria,
Gen.	ācrium,	ācrium,	ācrium,
Dat.	ācribus,	ācribus,	ācribus,
Acc.	ācrēs (*or* ācrīs),	ācrēs (*or* acrīs),	ācria,
Voc.	ācrēs,	ācrēs,	ācria,
Abl.	ācribus,	ācribus,	ācribus.

Observe:

1. That the endings of adjectives of the third declension are the same as those of nouns.

2. That adjectives whose Nom. Sing. Neut. ends in **-e**, have **-ī** in the Abl. Singular.

141. Vocabulary.

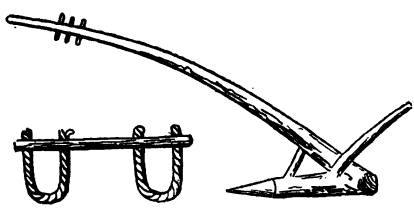
ācer, ācris, ācre, *sharp, keen, eager.*
celer, celeris, celere, *swift, quick.*
proelium, -ī, n. *battle.*
campester, -tris, -tre, *level, flat.*
equester, -tris, -tre, *of the cavalry, [equestrian.*
cīvis, -is, m. *citizen.*

pōn-ō,	**pōn-e-re,**	**pos-uī,**	**pos-itum,**	*I place, put.*
ag-ō,	**ag-e-re,**	**ēg-ī,**	**āc-tum,**	*I drive, lead.*
dēfend-ō,	**dēfend-er-e,**	**dēfend-ī,**	**dēfēn-sum,**	*I defend, ward off.*

EXERCISES.

142. I. 1. Hostēs ācrēs agrōs campestrēs vāstāvērunt. 2. Equitēs celerēs proelium equestre pūgnāverant. 3. Caesar in Aeduōrum fīnibus castra pōnēbat. 4. Rōmānī ab hostibus Aeduōrum fīnēs dēfendunt. 5. Hostēs terrā marīque fugābimus. 6. Agricolae ab leōnibus līberōs dēfendunt. 7. Cīvēs iūdicem bonum amant. 8. In Rōmānōrum templīs imāginēs deōrum multās vidēbimus. 9. Caesar ad lēgātum equitēs celerēs mittēbat. 10. Cōnsul in castrīs hostium lēgātōs nōn tenēbit.

II. 1. The chief is leading the soldiers to battle. 2. The soldiers are defending the town from the enemy. 3. Caesar conquered the enemy [in] a cavalry fight. 4. The leader pitched his camp in a level field. 5. The eager citizens hasten to war. 6. The soldiers were buying grain in the town. 7. Men labor in winter and in summer. 8. At daybreak, Caesar sends the lieutenant with the horsemen to the mountain. 9. The Aeduans were defending their temples from the Romans. 10. The consul leads his swift cohorts out of town at night.



ARĀTRUM ET IUGUM.

LESSON XXXII.

Adjectives of Two Terminations. Ablative.

143. Adjectives of two terminations have the same form for the masculine and feminine genders, but differ in the neuter in the Nom., Acc., and Voc. of the Singular and Plural.

facilis, *easy:* stem **facili-**.

	Singular.			Plural.		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N.	facilis,	facilis,	facile,	facilēs,	facilēs,	facilia,
G.	facilis,	facilis,	facilis,	facilium,	facilium,	facilium,
D.	facilī,	facilī,	facilī,	facilibus,	facilibus,	facilibus,
Ac.	facilem,	facilem,	facile,	facilēs,	facilēs,	facilia,
V.	facilis,	facilis,	facile,	facilēs,	facilēs,	facilia,
Ab.	facilī,	facilī,	facilī.	facilibus,	facilibus,	facilibus.

Observe :

1. That the endings of adjectives are the same as those of nouns.

2. That adjectives whose Nom. Sing. Neut. ends in **-e**, have **-ī** in the Ablative.

144. Vocabulary.

facilis, -is, -e, *easy.*	**omnis, -is, -e,** *every, all.*
brevis, -is, -e, *short.*	**fortis, -is, -e,** *brave.*
gravis, -is, -e, *heavy, severe.*	**lēx, lēgis,** f. *law.*

occup-ō,	**-āre,**	**-āvī,**	**-ātum,**	*I seize, take.*
iuv-ō,	**iuvā-re,**	**iūv-ī,**	**iū-tum,**	*I help, aid* (Acc.).
prae-cēd-ō,	**-ere,**	**-cēs-sī,**	**-cēs-sum,**	*I surpass, excel.*

145. Examine the following :

1. Omnēs **linguā** differunt, *all differ* IN SPEECH.

2. Helvētiī Gallōs **virtūte** praecēdunt, *the Helvetians surpass the Gauls* IN VALOR.

Observe :

That the expressions in black type denote *in what respect* and are in the *Ablative* Case.

EXERCISES.

146. I. 1. Hominēs omnēs amīcōs iuvant. 2. Mīlitēs fortēs oppidum occupāvērunt. 3. Brevī tempore Rōmānī bella gravia pūgnābunt. 4. Iter ad montem facile est. 5. Mūrus urbis decem pedēs altus est. 6. Caesar mīlitēs fortēs et validōs habuit. 7. Prīmā lūce lēgātus ad Caesarem nūntium mittit. 8. Oppidānī numerō et virtūte pīrātās praecēdunt. 9. Magister dīscipulō aquilam auream dederat. 10. Māter fīliōs fortēs lītterās facilēs docet.

II. 1. The townsmen honor the brave leader with songs. 2. The lieutenant sends all the legions to Caesar. 3. The horsemen will save the consul with great joy. 4. In every town we shall see many temples. 5. The farmer's horses carry the grain into the town by an easy road. 6. Do brave soldiers fear severe wars? 7. In a short time Caesar conquered all the pirates. 8. Soldiers are great and strong in war. 9. The boy wounded the head of his companion with a sharp stone. 10. Caesar surpasses all in courage.

147. RULE.—*The Ablative is used to denote in What Respect the meaning of a Verb, Adjective, or Noun is limited.*

LESSON XXXIII.

Third Conjugation Continued. Ablative.

148. FUTURE TENSE of the verb **emō**, *I buy:* stem **eme-**.

SING.—1. em**a-m**, *I shall buy* or *be buying.*
2. em**ē-s**, *you will buy* or *be buying.*
3. em**e-t**, *he will buy* or *be buying.*

PLUR.—1. em**ē-mus**, *we shall buy* or *be buying.*
2. em**ē-tis**, *you will buy* or *be buying.*
3. em**e-nt**, *they will buy* or *be buying.*

Observe:

1. That the future of the 3d conjugation is *not* formed with the sign **-bo-**.

2. That in the 1st pers. sing. the vowel is **-a-**, but elsewhere **-ē-**.

149. Examine the following:

1. Hominēs **dēlictō** dolent, *men are sorry* ON ACCOUNT OF SIN.
2. Caesar **victōriā** laetus est, *Caesar is glad* BECAUSE OF THE VICTORY.

Observe:

That the expressions in black type denote the *Cause* and answer the questions *Why? On account of What?*

150. **Vocabulary.**

victōria, -ae, f. *victory.*			**multitūdō, -inis,** f. *multitude.*	
amor, -ōris, m. *love.*			**salūs, -ūtis,** f. *safety.*	
fortūna, -ae, f. *fortune.*			**laus, laudis,** f. *praise.*	
doleō,	**-ēre,**	**dol-uī,**	——	*I am sorry, am pained, am hurt.*
cōnfīrmō,	**-āre,**	**-āvī,**	**-ātum,**	*I strengthen, establish.*
re-linquō,	**-ere,**	**-līq-uī,**	**-lic-tum,**	*I leave, leave behind.*

EXERCISES.

151. I. 1. Caesar in oppidō māgnam mīlitum multitūdinem relinquet. 2. Hominēs volneribus gravibus dolēbunt. 3. Mīlitēs Caesaris fortūnā bonā laetī sunt. 4. Amor patriae est salūs cīvitātis. 5. Laudēs cōnsulis oppidānōs dēlectābunt. 6. Dux in urbem equitēs fortēs mittet. 7. In agrīs frūmentum emēmus. 8. In urbem mīlitēs dūcēs. 9. In Aeduōrum agrīs castra pōnētis.

II. 1. The Romans made peace with the states. 2. I shall send a letter to the king. 3. The sailors will not leave the ship. 4. The soldiers were glad on account of Caesar's safety. 5. The Romans built many temples on account of their love for the gods (Gen.). 6. Brave men are not sorry for the praise of a great commander. 7. In winter, Caesar

will leave the soldiers in camp. 8. The consul hastened with the horsemen out of the town to the camp. 9. The good mother teaches her son with great care. 10. The Romans surpass the Aeduans in multitude of men.

152. RULE.—*Cause is expressed by the Ablative without a preposition.*

LESSON XXXIV.

Adjectives of One Termination.

153. Adjectives of one termination have the same forms for all genders save in the Neut. Acc. Sing. and Neut. Nom., Acc., and Voc. Plural.

	fēlix, *lucky*: stem **fēlīci-**.		**vetus**, *old*: stem **veteri-**.	
	M. AND F.	N.	M. AND F.	N.
SG.—N.	fēlix,	fēlix,	SG.—vetus,	vetus,
G.	fēlīcis,	fēlīcis,	veteris,	veteris,
D.	fēlīcī,	fēlīcī,	veterī,	veterī,
Ac.	fēlīcem,	fēlix,	veterem,	vetus,
V.	fēlix,	fēlix,	vetus,	vetus,
Ab.	fēlīcī (e),	fēlīcī (e).	vetere (ī),	vetere (ī).
PL.—N.	fēlīcēs,	fēlīcia,	PL.—veterēs,	vetera,
G.	fēlīcium,	fēlīcium,	veterum,	veterum,
D.	fēlīcibus,	fēlīcibus,	veteribus,	veteribus,
Ac.	fēlīcēs,	fēlīcia,	veterēs,	vetera,
V.	fēlīcēs,	fēlīcia,	veterēs,	vetera,
Ab.	fēlīcibus,	fēlīcibus.	veteribus,	veteribus.

prūdēns, *wise*: stem **prūdenti-**.

	M. AND F.	N.	M. AND F.	N.
SG.—N.	prūdēns,	prūdēns,	PL.—prūdentēs,	prūdentia,
G.	prūdentis,	prūdentis,	prūdentium,	prūdentium,
D.	prūdentī,	prūdentī,	prūdentibus,	prūdentibus,
Ac.	prūdentem,	prūdēns,	prūdentēs,	prūdentia,
V.	prūdēns,	prūdēns,	prūdentēs,	prūdentia,
Ab.	prūdentī (e),	prūdentī (e).	prūdentibus,	prūdentibus.

Observe:

1. That the case-endings are the same as those of nouns.

2. That adjectives usually have **-ī** in the Ablative Singular.

154. Vocabulary.

fēlīx, fēlīx, -īcis, *lucky, successful.*
prūdēns, prūdēns, -entis, *wise, prudent.*
pār, pār, paris, *equal (to).*
celeritās, -ātis, f. *swiftness.*
vetus, vetus, veteris, *old.*
vēlōx, vēlōx, -ōcis, *swift.*
potēns, potēns, -entis, *powerful.*
māgnitūdō, -inis, f. *size.*

curr-ō, -ere, cucurr-ī, cur-sum, *I run.*

EXERCISES.

155. I. 1. Populus prūdēns bellum parat. 2. Rōmānī cum Aeduīs proelium fēlīx pūgnāverant. 3. Equitēs vēlōcēs peditēs nōn relinquent. 4. Equī celeritāte taurōs superant. 5. Aeduī māgnitūdine Rōmānīs parēs sunt. 6. Rēgēs potentēs in perīculō amīcōs veterēs nōn relinquent. 7. Nūntius ē castrīs in oppidum curret. 8. Rōmānī bellīs prosperīs gaudēbant. 9. Fīlius patrī pār nōn est. 10. Puerī vēlōcēs ad flūmen currunt.

II. 1. We shall see the prudent and powerful consul in the city. 2. Lucky men have much money. 3. We shall run to the temple. 4. The swift horsemen will lay waste the fields with fire and sword. 5. The Romans are equal to the Aeduans in size. 6. The wise townsmen are preparing war with great diligence. 7. The size of the enemy and the swiftness of the horses frightened the Romans. 8. The soldiers were pained by many (and) severe wounds. 9. The city has a wall ten feet wide. 10. The king is walking with the swift messenger in the garden.

LESSON XXXV.

Third Conjugation Continued.

156. Many verbs of the third conjugation in **-iō** have stems in **-ie,** which becomes **e** before **-re** and **i** before **m, s,** and **t** in all tenses of the Present System except the FUTURE.

Otherwise they are conjugated like **emō.**

1. PRESENT TENSE of **capiō,** *I take.*

SING. — 1.	capi-ō,	*I take, am taking,* or *do take.*
2.	capi-s,	*you take, are taking,* or *do take.*
3.	capi-t,	*he takes, is taking,* or *does take.*
PLUR. — 1.	capi-mus,	*we take, are taking,* or *do take.*
2.	capi-tis,	*you take, are taking,* or *do take.*
3.	capiu-nt,	*they take, are taking,* or *do take.*

Observe:

That **capiō** differs from **emō** only in having an **i** before the ending in the 1st pers. sing. and in the 3d pers. plural.

2. IMPERFECT TENSE of **capiō,** *I take.*

SING. — 1.	capi-ē-ba-m,	*I was taking, did take,* or *took.*
2.	capi-ē-bā-s,	*you were taking, did take,* or *took.*
3.	capi-ē-ba-t,	*he was taking, did take,* or *took.*
PLUR. — 1.	capi-ē-bā-mus,	*we were taking, did take,* or *took.*
2.	capi-ē-bā-tis,	*you were taking, did take,* or *took.*
3.	capi-ē-ba-nt,	*they were taking, did take,* or *took.*

Observe:

That the Imperfect tense is formed by means of the lengthened stem **capiē-,** with the tense-sign **-ba-** and the personal endings (31, 2).

3. FUTURE TENSE of **capiō,** *I take.*

SING. — 1.	capia-m,	*I shall take* or *be taking.*
2.	capiē-s,	*you will take* or *be taking.*
3.	capie-t,	*he will take* or *be taking.*
PLUR. — 1.	capiē-mus,	*we shall take* or *be taking.*
2.	capiē-tis,	*you will take* or *be taking.*
3.	capie-nt,	*they will take* or *be taking.*

Observe :

That the Future tense of these verbs has **-ia-** in the first pers. sing., but **-ie-** elsewhere.

157. Vocabulary.

locus, -ī, m. *place, position.*
auxilium, -ī, n. *aid, help.*
dē (prep. with Abl.), *about, concerning.*
animus, -ī, m. *mind, courage.*
imperium, -ī, n. *command, sway.*
sub (prep. with Abl.), *under.*

faci-ō,	**face-re,**	**fēc-ī,**	**fac-tum,**	*I make, do.*
capi-ō,	**cape-re,**	**cēp-ī,**	**cap-tum,**	*I take, seize.*
ger-ō,	**gere-re,**	**gess-ī,**	**ges-tum,**	*I carry on, wage, manage.*
dīc-ō,	**dīce-re,**	**dīx-ī,**	**dic-tum,**	*I speak, say.*

EXERCISES.

158. I. Legiō locum nōn tenuit. 2. Helvētiī in Aeduōrum fīnēs iter facient. 3. Rōmānī cum Helvētiīs et Aeduīs bellum gerēbant. 4. Rōmānī ex hostibus agrum capiēbant. 5. Caesar ad lēgātum nūntiōs mittit. 6. Agricolae sub Rōmānōrum imperiō fēlīcēs sunt. 7. Caesar cum lēgātō dē auxiliō dīcet. 8. Dominus dīscipulōrum mōrēs reget. 9. Aestāte ad montem iter faciēmus. 10. In silvīs aprōs multōs capimus.

II. 1. You were speaking about Caesar's courage. 2. The Romans carry on wars with many peoples. 3. The horsemen will not leave the position on the hill. 4. Caesar, with the help of the soldiers, will seize the command of the city. 5. The townsmen are making many ships. 6. You will send aid to Caesar's lieutenant. 7. In winter and in summer, the king rides with his son. 8. The soldiers were hurt by many wounds. 9. The son of the farmer remained many months in the city. 10. You will send your sons to school.

LESSON XXXVI.

Comparison of Adjectives. Ablative Case.

159. 1. The Degrees of Comparison are: POSITIVE, COMPARATIVE, and SUPERLATIVE.

2. The POSITIVE is the simple form of the adjective; e.g. **altus**, *high*.

3. The COMPARATIVE denotes a higher or lower degree than the Positive and is formed by adding to consonant stems **-ior** for the Masc. and Fem. and **-ius** for the Neuter: **altior, altius**, *higher*.

4. The SUPERLATIVE denotes the highest or lowest degree and is formed by adding to the consonant stems **-issimus, -a, -um: altissimus, -a, -um**, *highest*.

5. Vowel stems drop the vowel before forming the Comparative and Superlative.

		M. AND F.	N.		
altus, -a, -um,	*high*,	altior,	altius,	altissimus,	-a, -um.
laetus, -a, -um,	*glad*,	laetior,	laetius,	laetissimus,	-a, -um.
fortis, -is, -e,	*brave*,	fortior,	fortius,	fortissimus,	-a, -um.
vēlōx,	*swift*,	vēlōcior,	vēlōcius,	vēlōcissimus,	-a, -um.
prūdēns,	*wise*,	prūdentior,	prūdentius,	prūdentissimus,	-a, -um.

160. The Comparative degree is declined according to the third declension:

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N.	altior,	altior,	altius,	altiōrēs,	altiōrēs,	altiōra,
G.	altiōris,	altiōris,	altiōris,	altiōrum,	altiōrum,	altiōrum,
D.	altiōrī,	altiōrī,	altiōrī,	altiōribus,	altiōribus,	altiōribus,
Ac.	altiōrem,	altiōrem,	altius,	altiōrēs,	altiōrēs,	altiōra,
V.	altior,	altior,	altius,	altiōrēs,	altiōrēs,	altiōra,
Ab.	altiōre,	altiōre,	altiōre.	altiōribus,	altiōribus,	altiōribus.

Observe :

That the Neut. differs from the Masc. and Fem. only in the Nom., Acc., and Voc. of both numbers, as in other adjectives of the third declension.

1. ALL COMPARATIVES (except **plūs**) are declined like **altior.**

2. ALL SUPERLATIVES are declined like **bonus, -a, -um** (55).

161. Examine the following :

A. 1. Collis **altior** est, *the hill is* RATHER (or TOO) HIGH.
2. Collis **altissimus** est, *the hill is* VERY HIGH.

Observe :

1. That the Comparative may be translated by *rather* or *too* with the Positive.

2. That the Superlative may be translated by *very* with the Positive.

B. 1. Collis est altior **quam mūrus,** *the hill is higher* THAN THE WALL.
2. Collis est altior **mūrō,** *the hill is higher* THAN THE WALL.

Observe :

1. That in the first sentence **quam** is used and **mūrus** is in the *Nominative* Case.

2. That in the second sentence **quam** is omitted and **mūrō** is in the *Ablative* Case.

EXERCISES.

162. I. 1. Bellum longissimum et saevissimum est. 2. Pāx est grātior bellō. 3. Mēnsēs scholae sunt longiōrēs. 4. Taurus est fortior quam equus. 5. Vīnum nōn est grātius aquā. 6. Servī sunt fīdissimī. 7. Urbs mūrum altiōrem habet. 8. Dux est fortior mīlitibus. 9. Equī sunt vēlōciōrēs quam taurī. 10. Puellae prūdentiōrēs puerīs sunt.

II. 1. Horsemen are swifter than foot-soldiers. 2. The journey to the camp is very long. 3. War is more pleasing to soldiers than peace. 4. Pleasure is most welcome to all.

5. The judge is more prudent than the chief. 6. The river is rather broad. 7. We have seen more horsemen than foot-soldiers. 8. The city has a rather high citadel. 9. School is very troublesome to boys. 10. The town is on a rather high hill.

163. RULE.—*The Ablative is used with the Comparative instead of* **quam**, than, *with the Nominative or Accusative.*

LESSON XXXVII.

Comparison of Adjectives Continued. Ablative.

164. 1. Adjectives in **-er** form the Comparative regularly by adding **-ior** to the Nom. Sing., but form the superlative by adding **-rimus** to the Nom. Singular.

POSITIVE.				COMPARATIVE.			SUPERLATIVE.		
M.	F.	N.		M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
miser,	**-a,**	**-um,**	*wretched,*	miserior,	**-ior,**	**-ius,**	miserrimus,	**-a,**	**-um.**
celer,	**-is,**	**-e,**	*swift,*	celerior,	**-ior,**	**-ius,**	celerrimus,	**-a,**	**-um.**
ācer,	**ācris,**	**ācre,**	*sharp,*	ācrior,	**-ior,**	**-ius,**	ācerrimus,	**-a,**	**-um.**

2. Six adjectives in **-ilis** drop **-i** and add **-limus** to the stem to form the Superlative. The Comparative is regular.

POSITIVE.				COMPARATIVE.			SUPERLATIVE.		
M.	F.	N.		M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
facilis,	**-is,**	**-e,**	*easy,*	facilior,	**-ior,**	**-ius,**	facillimus,	**-a,**	**-um.**
difficilis,	**-is,**	**-e,**	*difficult,*	difficilior,	**-ior,**	**-ius,**	difficillimus,	**-a,**	**-um.**
similis,	**-is,**	**-e,**	*like,*	similior,	**-ior,**	**-ius,**	simillimus,	**-a,**	**-um.**
dissimilis,	**-is,**	**-e,**	*unlike,*	dissimilior,	**-ior,**	**-ius,**	dissimillimus,	**-a,**	**-um.**
gracilis,	**-is,**	**-e,**	*slender,*	gracilior,	**-ior,**	**-ius,**	gracillimus,	**-a,**	**-um.**
humilis,	**-is,**	**-e,**	*low,*	humilior,	**-ior,**	**-ius,**	humillimus,	**-a,**	**-um.**

165. Examine the following:

1. Collis **sex pedibus** altior est quam mūrus, *the hill is* SIX FEET *higher* (i.e. *higher* BY SIX FEET) *than the wall.*

2. Sōl **multis partibus** māior est quam terra, *the sun is* MANY PARTS *larger* (*larger* BY MANY PARTS) *than the earth.*

Observe:

That the expressions in black type denote the *Measure of Difference* and answer the question *by how much?*

166. Vocabulary.

facilis, -is, -e, *easy.*
difficilis, -is, -e, *difficult.*
nōbilis, -is, -e, *noble, famous.*
similis, -is, -e, *like, similar* (to).
dissimilis, -is, -e, *unlike, dissimilar.*
humilis, -is, -e, *low: humble.*
ingēns, -entis, *huge, vast, great.*

cōnstitu-ō,	**-ere,**	**cōnstituī,**	**cōnstitūtum,**	*I place, fix, build.*
dēlig-ō,	**-ere,**	**dēlēgī,**	**dēlēctum,**	*I select, choose, pick out.*

EXERCISES.

167. I. 1. Caesar mūrum pedibus multīs altiōrem quam arcem cōnstituit. 2. Iter ad montem difficillimum est. 3. Puer simillimus est mātrī. 4. Mōrēs Aeduōrum et Rōmānōrum dissimillimī sunt. 5. Dux obsidēs nōbilissimōs dēliget. 6. Puer pede altior est quam soror. 7. Mīlitēs ex proeliō pecūniam ingentem reportāvērunt. 8. Liber puerō quam virō difficilior est. 9. Hominēs omnēs mōribus simillimī sunt. 10. Mūrus altior decem pedibus quam casa est.

II. 1. The leader strengthened the town with a very high wall. 2. Caesar demanded from the state the noblest children. 3. The boys were very unlike in respect to fortune. 4. In a very short time the consul will build an easier road. 5. The river is many feet broader than the ditch. 6. The queen's son is very unlike his companion. 7. A good leader will choose the easiest road for the soldiers. 8. The horsemen are swifter than the foot-soldiers. 9. The boy's book is easier than the man's. 10. The sailor is more wretched than the farmer.

168. RULE.—*Measure of Difference is put in the Ablative without a Preposition.*

LESSON XXXVIII.

Comparison of Adjectives Continued. Genitive Case.

169. 1. IRREGULAR COMPARISON.

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
bonus, -a, -um, *good,*	**melior, melior, melius,**	**optimus, -a, -um.**
malus, -a, -um, *bad,*	**pēior, pēior, pēius,**	**pessimus, -a, -um.**
māgnus, -a, -um, *great,*	**māior, māior, māius,**	**māximus, -a, -um.**
parvus, -a, -um, *small,*	**minor, minor, minus,**	**minimus, -a, -um.**
multus, -a, -um, *much,*	**——, ——, plūs,**	**plūrimus, -a, -um.**
multī, -ae, -a, *many,*	**plūrēs, plūrēs, plūra,**	**plūrimī, -ae, -a.**
vetus, -eris, *old,*	**vetustior, -ior, vetustius,**	**veterrimus, -a, -um.**
iuvenis, *young,*	**iūnior** (minor nātū),	**minimus** (nātū).
senex, *old,*	**senior** (māior nātū),	**māximus** (nātū).

2. The following have irregular superlatives:

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.	
exterus, -a, -um, *outward,*	**exterior, -ior, -ius,** *outer, exterior,*	**extrēmus, -a, -um,** **extimus, -a, -um,**	*outermost, last.*
īnferus, -a, -um, *low,*	**īnferior, -ior, -ius,** *lower,*	**īnfimus, -a, -um,** **īmus, -a, -um,**	*lowest.*
posterus, -a, -um, *following,*	**posterior, -ior, -ius,** *later,*	**postrēmus, -a, -um,** **postumus, -a, -um,**	*last.*
superus, -a, -um, *upper,*	**superior, -ior, -ius,** *higher,*	**suprēmus, -a, -um,** **summus, -a, -um,**	*highest.*

3. The following Comparatives and Superlatives lack the Positive, which is supplied from prepositions and adverbs:

POSITIVE.	COMPARATIVE.	SUPERLATIVE.
prae, prō, *before,*	**prior, prior, prius,** *former,*	**prīmus, -a, -um,** *first.*
prope, *near,*	**propior, propior, propius,** *nearer,*	**proximus, -a, -um,** *next, nearest.*
cis, citrā, *on this side,*	**citerior, citerior, citerius,** *hither,*	**citimus, -a, -um,** *hithermost.*
in, intrā, *in, within,*	**interior, interior, interius,** *inner,*	**intimus, -a, -um,** *inmost.*
ūltrā, *beyond,*	**ūlterior, ūlterior, ūlterius,** *further,*	**ūltimus, -a, -um,** *furthest, last.*

4. The following adjectives are compared by means of **magis**, *more*, and **māximē**, *most*:

Those in **-us**, preceded by a vowel, except those in **-quus**.

idōneus, magis idōneus, māximē idōneus.

170. Examine the following:

1. Prior **hōrum** in proeliō cecidit, *the former* OF THESE *fell in battle.*
2. Indus est **omnium flūminum** māximus, *the Indus is the largest* OF ALL RIVERS.
3. Multī **mīlitum** necātī sunt, *many* OF THE SOLDIERS *were killed.*
4. Centum **mīlitum** fūgērunt, *a hundred* OF THE SOLDIERS *fled.*

Observe:

That each word in the *Genitive* denotes the *Whole* of which the governing word denotes a *Part.*

171. **Vocabulary.**

Genāva, -ae, f. *Geneva.*	**extrēmus, -a, -um,** *furthest, last.*
Allobrogēs, -um, m. *the Allobroges.*	**prior, prior, prius,** *former.*
nātū (Abl. of respect of **nātus**), *by birth.*	**iuvenis, -is,** m. *young man.*
māior nātū, *older.*	**senex, senis,** m. *old man.*
minor nātū, *younger.*	**nihil** (indeclinable), n. *nothing.*

EXERCISES.

172. I. 1. Extrēmum oppidum Allobrogum est Genāva. 2. Gallōrum omnium fortissimī sunt Belgae. 3. Fīlius māior nātū est quam soror. 4. Prior frātrum sex avēs videt. 5. Puella decem annīs est minor nātū quam puer. 6. Iuvenis fēlīcior sene est. 7. Nihil melius est amīcō bonō. 8. Magister puerīs optimīs librōs plūrimōs dat. 9. Iniūria iūdicis pessima est. 10. Māter māximā cum dīligentiā fīliōs ēducat.

II. 1. The lieutenant hastens to Caesar with more soldiers. 2. Nothing is worse for boys than wine. 3. The leader praised most of the soldiers on account of their valor. 4. The girl is a head taller than her brother. 5.

The best fathers will send their children to school. 6. The soldiers had stormed the furthest town of the Allobroges. 7. Caesar demanded hostages from the first men of the state. 8. The very bad boy wounded the sailor with a stone. 9. The young man rides out of the town into the fields. 10. The soldiers will buy the best corn in the nearest town.

173. RULE.—*The Partitive Genitive denotes the Whole to which a Part belongs.*

LESSON XXXIX.

Third Conjugation Continued.

174. 1. PERFECT TENSE of **emō**, *I buy.*

SG.—1. ēm-**i**, *I bought, did buy, have bought.*
2. ēm-**isti**, *you bought, did buy, have bought.*
3. ēm-**it**, *he bought, did buy, has bought.*

PL.—1. ēm-**imus**, *we bought, did buy, have bought.*
2. ēm-**istis**, *you bought, did buy, have bought.*
3. ēm-**ērunt** or **-ēre**, *they bought, did buy, have bought.*

Observe:

1. That the personal endings are the same in all Perfect tenses.

2. That verbs of the third conjugation form the Perfect tense *without* **-v-**.

2. PLUPERFECT TENSE of **emō**, *I buy.*

SING.—1. ēm-**era-m**, *I had bought.*
2. ēm-**erā-s**, *you had bought.*
3. ēm-**era-t**, *he had bought.*

PLUR.—1. ēm-**erā-mus**, *we had bought.*
2. ēm-**erā-tis**, *you had bought.*
3. ēm-**era-nt**, *they had bought.*

Observe:

1. That the tense-sign **-era-** and personal endings are the same in all Pluperfect tenses.

2. That the Pluperfect is always formed on the Perfect stem.

3. FUTURE PERFECT of **emō**, *I buy*.

SG. — 1.	ēm-erō,	*I shall have bought.*
2.	ēm-eri-s,	*you will have bought.*
3.	ēm-eri-t,	*he will have bought.*
PL. — 1.	ēm-eri-mus,	*we shall have bought.*
2.	ēm-eri-tis,	*you will have bought.*
3.	ēm-eri-nt,	*they will have bought.*

Observe:

1. That the tense-sign **-eri-** and personal endings are the same in all Future Perfect tenses.

2. That the Future Perfect is always formed on the Perfect stem.

175. Vocabulary.

imperium, **-I**, n. *command, power.*
mūnītiō, **-ōnis**, f. *rampart, fortification.*
perīculum, **-I**, n. *danger, trial.*
praesidium, **-I**, n. *defence, guard.*
hīberna, **-ōrum**, n. (only pl.) *winter-quarters.*
impedīmentum, **-I**, n. *hindrance:* pl. *baggage.*

cōgnōsc-ō, **-ere**, **cōgnōv-I**, **cōgnĭ-tum**, *I learn, find out, know.*
cōg-ō, **-ere**, **coēg-I**, **coāc-tum**, *I drive together, collect, compel.*

EXERCISES.

176. I. 1. Caesar num[illegible]erum mīlitum cōgnōverat. 2. Lēgātus auxilia multa co[illegible]ors imperia exspectābat. 5. Caesar dūxerit. 4. Dux Caesaris [illegible]theuit. 6. Cōnsul turrīs praesidiīs mīlitēs mūnītiōne prohib[illegible]hea puellās terrēbunt. 8. Mīlitēs fīrmat. 7. Perīcula māgn[illegible]

in castrīs impedīmenta omnia relīquērunt. 9. Cōnsul hostēs impedīmenta cēlāvit. 10. Prīmā aestāte dux mīlitēs ex hībernīs dūxerat.

II. 1. The soldiers ran to the baggage and wagons. 2. Caesar held the highest command in the Roman state. 3. You have collected many soldiers. 4. We had learned the names of many flowers. 5. Caesar will have sent the horsemen to the mountain. 6. He had ruled many years. 7. I shall have sent aid to the consul. 8. You have seen many temples in the town. 9. They have led the soldiers out of winter-quarters into the camp. 10. The Romans built a large citadel in the city.

LESSON XL.

Formation and Comparison of Adverbs.

177. 1. Adverbs are formed from Adjectives in **-us** and **-er** of second declension by changing **-o** of the stem to **-ē**.

ADJECTIVE.	STEM.	ADVERB.
altus, *high,*	altō-,	altē, *high, on high.*
pulcher, *beautiful,*	pulchrō-,	pulchrē, *beautifully.*
miser, *wretched,*	miserō-,	miserē, *wretchedly.*

2. Adverbs are formed from Adjectives of the third declension by adding **-ter** to the stem: stems in **-nt-** drop **-t** and stems in **-c-** insert **-i-** before **-ter.**

ADJECTIVE.	STEM.	ADVERB.
fortis, *brave,*	forti-,	fortiter, *bravely.*
ferōx, *wild,*	ferōc-,	ferōciter, *wildly.*
prūdēns, *wise,*	prūdent-,	prūdenter, *wisely.*

3. The *Ablative Singular* of some Adjectives serves as an adverb.

tūtus, *safe,*	tūtō, *safely.*
prīmus, *first,*	prīmō, *at first.*

4. The *Neuter Accusative Singular* of many Adjectives is used as an Adverb.

multus,	*much,*	multum,	*much.*
dulcis,	*sweet,*	dulce,	*sweetly.*
trīstis,	*sad,*	trīste,	*sadly.*
postrēmus,	*last,*	postrēmum,	*finally.*

178. Comparison.

1. The comparative of the Adverb is the same as the Accusative Singular Neuter of the Comparative of the Adjective and ends in **-ius.**

2. The Superlative of the Adverb is formed by changing **-ō-** of the stem of the Superlative of the Adjective to **-ē.**

POSITIVE.		COMPARATIVE.		SUPERLATIVE.	
altē,	*loftily,*	altius,	*more loftily,*	altissimē,	*most loftily.*
pulchrē,	*beautifully,*	pulchrius,	*more beautifully,*	pulcherrimē,	*most beautifully.*
fortiter,	*bravely,*	fortius,	*more bravely,*	fortissimē,	*most bravely.*
tūtō,	*safely,*	tūtius,	*more safely,*	tūtissimē,	*most safely.*
bene,	*well,*	melius,	*better,*	optimē,	*best.*
male,	*ill,*	pēius,	*worse,*	pessimē,	*worst.*
[parvus],	*small,*	minus,	*less,*	minimē,	*least.*
[māgnus],	*great,*	magis,	*more,*	māximē,	*most.*
multum,	*much,*	plūs,	*more,*	plūrimum,	*most.*
diū,	*long* (of time),	diūtius,	*longer,*	diūtissimē,	*longest.*
saepe,	*often,*	saepius,	*oftener,*	saepissimē,	*oftenest.*

179. Vocabulary.

Gallus, -ī, m. *a Gaul.*
Belgae, -ārum, *the Belgians.*
facile, adv. *easily.*
celeriter, adv. *quickly.*
amplius, adv. *longer, more.*
dīligenter, adv. *diligently.*
ibi, adv. *there, in that place.*
multō, adv. *much, by much.*

EXERCISES.

180. I. 1. Puella in scholam fēstīnat multō celerius quam puer. 2. Mīlitēs amplius hōrīs sex pūgnāverant. 3. Dux mōrēs mīlitum facillimē cōgnōverat. 4. Mīlitēs Rōmānī cum Gallīs et Belgīs fortissimē pūgnābant. 5. Caesar iter dīligentissimē fēcit. 6. Rōmānī virtūte Gallōs facile praecēdunt. 7. Caesar in urbe mēnsibus decem amplius mānserat. 8. Ibi mīlitēs Rōmānī multō fortius pūgnābant quam Gallī. 9. Caesar in castra mīlitēs celerrimē dūxit. 10. Aestāte et hieme dīligentissimē labōrant hominēs.

II. 1. The Romans will fight much more bravely than the Gauls. 2. The teacher works most diligently. 3. There Caesar easily conquered the Belgians. 4. The consul remained in the city more than six hours. 5. The horsemen ran to camp very quickly. 6. The Romans will conquer the Belgians more easily than the Gauls. 7. The soldiers easily built a wall ten feet high. 8. The boy is older than the girl. 9. The daughter is very like her mother. 10. The messenger will run quickly from the town to the camp.

EQUES.

LESSON XLI.

Fourth Conjugation.

181. 1. PRESENT TENSE of **audiō**, *I hear:* stem **audī-**.

SING. — 1.	**audi-ō,**	*I hear, am hearing,* or *do hear.*
2.	**audi-s,**	*you hear, are hearing,* or *do hear.*
3.	**audi-t,**	*he hears, is hearing,* or *does hear.*
PLUR. — 1.	**audi-mus,**	*we hear, are hearing,* or *do hear.*
2.	**audi-tis,**	*you hear, are hearing,* or *do hear.*
3.	**audiu-nt,**	*they hear, are hearing,* or *do hear.*

Observe:

1. That the personal endings are the same in all Present tenses.

2. That the fourth conjugation has **-u-** in the third Pers. plural.

2. IMPERFECT TENSE of **audiō**, *I hear.*

SING. — 1.	**audiē-ba-m,**	*I was hearing, did hear,* or *heard.*
2.	**audiē-bā-s,**	*you were hearing, did hear,* or *heard.*
3.	**audiē-ba-t,**	*he was hearing, did hear,* or *heard.*
PLUR. — 1.	**audiē-bā-mus,**	*we were hearing, did hear,* or *heard.*
2.	**audiē-bā-tis,**	*you were hearing, did hear,* or *heard.*
3.	**audiē-ba-nt,**	*they were hearing, did hear,* or *heard.*

Observe.

That the Imperfect tense is formed by means of the lengthened stem **audiē-**, with the tense-sign **-ba-** and the personal endings (31, 2).

3. FUTURE TENSE of **audiō**, *I hear.*

SING. — 1.	**audia-m,**	*I shall hear* or *be hearing.*
2.	**audiē-s,**	*you will hear* or *be hearing.*
3.	**audie-t,**	*he will hear* or *be hearing.*
PLUR. — 1.	**audiē-mus,**	*we shall hear* or *be hearing.*
2.	**audiē-tis,**	*you will hear* or *be hearing.*
3.	**audie-nt,**	*they will hear* or *be hearing.*

Observe:

1. That, in the fourth as in the third conjugation, the Future tense is *not* formed with **-bo-**.

2. That the Future tense of the fourth conjugation has **-ia** in the 1st Pers., but **-iē** elsewhere.

182. Vocabulary.

prōvincia, -ae, f. *province.*
regiō, -ōnis, f. *region, territory.*
sīgnum, -ī, n. *sign: standard.*—p. 83.
āgmen, -inis, n. *column, troop: army.*
prīmum āgmen, prīmī āgminis, n. *the van, front.*
novissimum āgmen, novissimī āgminis, n. *the rear.*

veni-ō,	**venī-re,**	**vēn-ī,**	**ven-tum,**	*I come, arrive.*
mūni-ō,	**mūnī-re,**	**mūnī-vī,**	**mūnī-tum,**	*I fortify, protect.*
impedi-ō,	**impedī-re,**	**impedī-vī,**	**impedī-tum,**	*I hinder, impede.*

EXERCISES.

183. I. 1. Equitēs novissimum āgmen hostium impediēnt. 2. In hostium regiōnem veniēbāmus. 3. In prīmō āgmine sunt sīgna. 4. Caesar legiōnibus multīs prōvinciam mūniet. 5. Ad castra cum equitibus venītis. 6. Mīlitēs mūrō et fossā oppidum mūniunt. 7. Equitēs āgmen nōn impediēbant. 8. Ex agrīs in urbem veniēbātis. 9. Hostēs in prōvinciam celerrimē venient. 10. Peditēs multō facilius impedīmus quam equitēs.

II. 1. Caesar will impedē the enemy's rear. 2. The consul was fortifying the camp with a rampart and a ditch. 3. The Romans quickly came to the enemy's van. 4. We shall see many standards in Caesar's army. 5. The leader laid waste the enemy's territory with fire and sword. 6. The townsmen were fortifying the town. 7. We shall hinder the pirates on land and sea. 8. The soldiers of the van came much more quickly than the soldiers of the rear. 9. The horsemen are in the van, the footmen in the rear. 10. Are not the soldiers protecting the city with great care?

LESSON XLII.

Fourth Declension.

184. 1. The stem ends in **-u** and is found by dropping the **-um** of the Genitive Plural; e.g. **frūctuum**: stem **frūctu-**.

	frūctus, *fruit*: stem **frūctu-**.	**arcus**, *bow*: stem **arcu-**.	**domus**, *house*: stem **domu-**.	**cornū**, *horn*: stem **cornu-**.
SING.—Nom.	frūctus,	arcus,	domus,	cornū,
Gen.	frūctūs,	arcūs,	domūs,	cornūs,
Dat.	frūctuī (frūctū),	arcuī (arcū),	domuī,	cornū,
Acc.	frūctum,	arcum,	domum,	cornū,
Voc.	frūctus,	arcus,	domus,	cornū,
Abl.	frūctū.	arcū.	domō.	cornū.
PLUR.—Nom.	frūctūs,	arcūs,	domūs,	cornua,
Gen.	frūctuum,	arcuum,	domōrum,	cornuum,
Dat.	frūctibus,	arcubus,	domibus,	cornibus,
Acc.	frūctūs,	arcūs,	domūs, domōs,	cornua,
Voc.	frūctūs,	arcūs,	domūs,	cornua,
Abl.	frūctibus.	arcubus.	domibus.	cornibus.

Observe:

1. That the Nom. Sing. differs from the Gen. Sing. in that the **-us** is short.

2. That the Gen. Sing. and the Nom., Acc., and Voc. Plur. are alike and have **-ūs** long.

3. That the Dat. Sing. ends in **-uī** or **-ū**.

4. That **arcus** has **-ubus** in the Dat. and Abl. Plur. for **-ibus**.

5. That **domus** has the Abl. Sing. and Gen. Plur. formed from the second declension.

185. 1. Nouns in **-us** are masculine, those in **-ū**, neuter.

2. **Acus, domus, Idus, manus, porticus,** and **tribus** are FEMININE.

3. **Acus, arcus, quercus,** and **tribus** always have **-ubus** in Dat. and Abl. Plural.

186. Vocabulary.

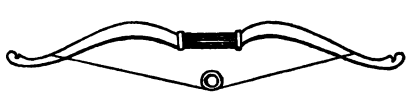
frūctus, -ūs, m. *fruit.*	**exercitus, -ūs,** m. *army.*
arcus, -ūs, m. *bow.*	**impetus, -ūs,** m. *attack, onset.*
cornū, -ūs, n. *horn; wing.*	**equitātus, -ūs,** m. *cavalry.*

discēd-ō,	**-ere,**	**discēs-sī,**	**discēs-sum,**	*I depart, go away.*
conveni-ō,	**-īre,**	**convēn-ī,**	**conven-tum,**	*I come together, assemble.*
comple-ō,	**-ēre,**	**complē-vī,**	**complē-tum,**	*I fill, finish.*

EXERCISES.

187. I. 1. Caesar montem hominibus complēvit. 2. Dux omnī cum equitātū ex oppidō discēssit. 3. Hostēs in Caesaris exercitum impetum fēcērunt. 4. Belgae arcubus pūgnant. 5. Peditēs et equitēs in urbem conveniunt. 6. Dux cornua exercitūs ad flūmen dūxit. 7. Frūctus hortī rēgī grātus est. 8. Equitātus Caesaris hostēs facillimē impediet. 9. Exercitū māgnō urbem oppūgnāverās. 10. Mīlitēs omnēs in ūnum (*one*) locum convenient.

II. 1. You will lead the cavalry to the wing of the army. 2. Children like fruit. 3. The Gauls fight with long bows. 4. Caesar departed from the town with the greatest diligence. 5. We quickly assembled into the city. 6. The enemy's cavalry made an attack on the town. 7. The leader filled the city with soldiers. 8. Caesar will protect the camp with a large army. 9. The cavalry very easily impeded the foot-soldiers. 10. The courage of the leader delights the army.



ARCUS.

LESSON XLIII.

Fifth Declension.

188. The stem ends in **-ē** and is found by dropping the **-rum** of the Genitive Plural; e.g. **diērum**: stem **diē-**.

	diēs, *day*: stem **diē-**.		**rēs**, *thing*: stem **rē-**.	
Sg.—Nom.	**diēs**,	Pl.—**diēs**,	Sg.—Nom. **rēs**,	Pl.—**rēs**,
Gen.	**diēī**,	**diērum**,	Gen. **reī**,	**rērum**,
Dat.	**diēī**,	**diēbus**,	Dat. **reī**,	**rēbus**,
Acc.	**diem**,	**diēs**,	Acc. **rem**,	**rēs**,
Voc.	**diēs**,	**diēs**,	Voc. **rēs**,	**rēs**,
Abl.	**diē**.	**diēbus**.	Abl. **rē**.	**rēbus**.

Observe:

1. That Nom. and Voc. Sing. and Nom., Acc., and Voc. Plur. are alike.
2. That Gen. and Dat. Sing. are alike.
3. That **e** of the ending **eī** is short after a consonant.

189. 1. All nouns of the fifth declension are FEMININE except **diēs**, which is usually masculine in the Singular and always so in the Plural.

2. Only **diēs** and **rēs** are declined throughout; other nouns have only Nom., Acc., and Voc. Plur. besides the regular Singular.

190. **Vocabulary.**

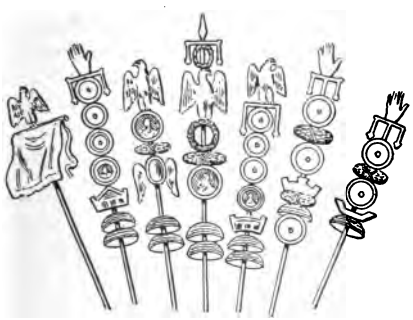
diēs, diēī, m. and f. *day.*
rēs, reī, f. *thing.*
aciēs, aciēī, f. *line of battle.*
posterus, -a, -um, *next, following.*
plānitiēs, plānitiēī, f. *plain.*
spēs, speī, f. *hope.*
circum (prep. with Acc.), *around.*
contrā (prep. with Acc.), *against.*

īnstru-ō, -ere, īnstrūx-ī, īnstrūc-tum, *I draw up, arrange.*
leg-ō, -ere, lēg-ī, lēc-tum, *I read.*

EXERCISES.

191. I. 1. Caesar māgnā in plānitiē aciem īnstrūxit. 2. Posterō diē castra mōvit. 3. In equitātū spem omnem posuit. 4. Caesaris epistulās legēmus. 5. Exercitus parvus contrā spem multās rēs fēcit. 6. Sex hōrās circum impedīmenta pūgnāvērunt. 7. Locus omnis plānitiēs erat. 8. Rōmānī contrā Belgās bellum gessērunt. 9. Spēs salūtis exercitum dēlectat. 10. Caesar cum Gallīs in aciē contendit.

II. 1. We saw many horsemen in the plain. 2. On the following night we shall pitch our camp near (**ad** *with Acc.*) the plain. 3. Many things frightened the enemy. 4. Caesar contended with the Belgians in line of battle. 5. The pirates had great hope of booty. 6. The army remained many days around the town. 7. We have read Caesar's books with pleasure. 8. The teacher gave many things to the pupils on the following day. 9. The enemy went away from the plain by night. 10. All hope of safety is in flight.



SIGNA.

LESSON XLIV.

Fourth Conjugation Continued.

192. 1. PERFECT TENSE of **audiō**, *I hear:* stem **audī-**.

SING. —1.	audī-**v-ī**,	*I heard, did hear, have heard.*
2.	audī-**v-istī**,	*you heard, did hear, have heard.*
3.	audī-**v-it**,	*he heard, did hear, has heard.*
PLUR.—1.	audī-**v-imus**,	*we heard, did hear, have heard.*
2.	audī-**v-istis**,	*you heard, did hear, have heard.*
3.	audī-**v-ērunt** or audī-**v-ēre**,	*they heard, did hear, have heard.*

Observe:

That the tense-sign **-v-** is added to the stem **audī-**, and to this Perfect stem **audīv-** the personal endings (91) are added.

2. PLUPERFECT TENSE of **audiō**, *I hear.*

SING. —1.	audī-**v-era-m**,	*I had heard.*
2.	audī-**v-erā-s**,	*you had heard.*
3.	audī-**v-era-t**,	*we had heard.*
PLUR. —1.	audī-**v-erā-mus**,	*we had heard.*
2.	audī-**v-erā-tis**,	*you had heard.*
3.	audī-**v-era-nt**,	*they had heard.*

Observe:

That the Pluperfect tense is formed on the perfect stem **audīv-** by adding the tense-sign **-era-** and the personal endings (31, 2).

3. FUTURE PERFECT TENSE of **audiō**, *I hear.*

SING. — 1.	audī-v-erō,	*I shall have heard.*
2.	audī-v-eri-s,	*you will have heard.*
3.	audī-v-eri-t,	*he will have heard.*
PLUR. — 1.	audī-v-eri-mus,	*we shall have heard.*
2.	audī-v-eri-tis,	*you will have heard.*
3.	audī-v-eri-nt,	*they will have heard.*

Observe :

That the Future Perfect tense is formed on the Perfect stem **audīv-** by adding the tense-sign **-eri-** (**-erō** in 1st sing.) and the personal endings (31, 2).

193. Vocabulary.

passus, -ūs, m. *pace, step.*
adventus, -ūs, m. *arrival.*
mīlle (indecl. in Sing.), *a thousand.*
mīlle passūs, *a thousand paces, one mile.*
dē (prep. with Abl.), *about, concerning.*
manus, -ūs, f. *hand : armed force, crowd.*
mīlia, mīlium, mīlibus, n. (Plur. of **mīlle**) *thousands.*
sex mīlia passuum, *six thousand* (of) *paces, six miles.*
domus, -ūs, f. *house.*—p. 106.

recipi-ō,	**-ere,**	**recēp-ī,**	**recep-tum,**	*I receive, get back, take back.*
prōcēd-ō,	**-ere,**	**prōcēs-sī,**	**prōcēs-sum,**	*I proceed, advance.*

EXERCISES.

194. I. 1. Hostēs dē Caesaris adventū audīverant. 2. Dux sex mīlia passuum prōcēssit. 3. Prīnceps mīlle mīlitēs hostium impedīverit. 4. Caesar manū parvā exercitum māgnum superāvit. 5. Adventū ducis rēs multās recipiēmus. 6. Caesar fossā lātā castra mūnīvit. 7. Hostēs decem mīlibus mīlitum oppidum oppūgnāverant. 8. Caesar ex oppidō ad castra nocte prōcēssit. 9. Dē hostium rēbus audīveris. 10. Equitātum in itinere impedīverātis.

II. 1. We shall build pretty houses in the city. 2. You

have not heard about Caesar's letter. 3. The cavalry had hindered the enemy on the march. 4. We advanced one mile from the town. 5. Six thousand (*of*) foot-soldiers stormed the town. 6. The hope of safety will have impeded the soldiers. 7. With a small crowd the leader conquered many thousands of men. 8. The messenger had told Caesar about the enemy's arrival. 9. We have read many letters of the Romans. 10. We shall see many books in the teacher's house.

LESSON XLV.

Conjugation of SUM, *I am.*

195. 1. PRESENT INDICATIVE.

SG.—1. sum, *I am.*	PL.—1. sumus, *we are.*
2. es, *you are.*	2. estis, *you are.*
3. est, *he is.*	3. sunt, *they are.*

2. IMPERFECT INDICATIVE.

SG.—1. eram, *I was.*	PL.—1. erāmus, *we were.*
2. erās, *you were.*	2. erātis, *you were.*
3. erat, *he was.*	3. erant, *they were.*

3. FUTURE INDICATIVE.

SG.—1. erō, *I shall be.*	PL.—1. erimus, *we shall be.*
2. eris, *you will be.*	2. eritis, *you will be.*
3. erit, *he will be.*	3. erunt, *they will be.*

4. PERFECT INDICATIVE.

SG.—1. fuī, *I was* or *have been.*	PL.—1. fuimus, *we were* or *have been.*
2. fuistī, *you were* or *have been.*	2. fuistis, *you were* or *have been.*
3. fuit, *he was* or *has been.*	3. fuērunt or fuēre, *they were* or *have been.*

5. PLUPERFECT INDICATIVE.

SG.—1. fueram, *I had been.*	PL.—1. fuerāmus, *we had been.*
2. fuerās, *you had been.*	2. fuerātis, *you had been.*
3. fuerat, *he had been.*	3. fuerant, *they had been.*

6. FUTURE PERFECT INDICATIVE.

SG.—1.	fuerō, *I shall have been.*	PL.—1.	fuerimus, *we shall have been.*
2.	fueris, *you will have been.*	2.	fueritis, *you will have been.*
3.	fuerit, *he will have been.*	3.	fuerint, *they will have been.*

196. Caution:

The *Predicate* Noun or Adjective is *always* in the *same Case* as the *Subject* (26).

197. **Vocabulary.**

ratiō, -ōnis, f. *account, plan.*	**pōns, pontis,** m. *bridge.*
porta, -ae, f. *gate, door.*	**ūsus, -ūs,** m. *use: skill, experience.*
dexter, -tra, -trum, *right.*	**sinister, -tra, -trum,** *left.*

sum, esse, fuī, futūrus, *I am.*

EXERCISES.

198. I. 1. Ratiō pūgnae fēlīcissima erat. 2. Mīlitēs Caesaris in ponte erunt. 3. In dextrō cornū fuērunt legiōnēs duo (*two*). 4. Rōmānī in bellō ūsum multum habuērunt. 5. Portae urbis clārae fuērunt. 6. Dōnum rēgis populō grātum erit. 7. In sinistrō cornū fuerat pūgna māgna. 8. Equī validī dēfessī sunt. 9. Nihil amīcō melius est. 10. Hieme in urbe erimus.

II. 1. The general's plan was good. 2. The bridges will be very long. 3. The right wing of the army had much experience in war. 4. You will have been very brave. 5. We had been in a great city. 6. The cavalry has been on the left wing. 7. The sword is in the king's right hand. 8. The camp was ten miles from the town. 9. The arrival of the king will be pleasing to the citizens. 10. We have been in the town many months.

LESSON XLVI.

199. Cardinal Numeral Adjectives.

CARDINAL NUMBERS.

1	I	**ūnus, ūna, ūnum**	50	L	**quīnquāgintā**
2	II	**duo, duae, duo**	60	LX	**sexāgintā**
3	III	**trēs, tria**	70	LXX	**septuāgintā**
4	IV	**quattuor**	80	LXXX	**octōgintā**
5	V	**quīnque**	90	XC	**nōnāgintā**
6	VI	**sex**	100	C	**centum**
7	VII	**septem**	101	CI	**centum et ūnus**
8	VIII	**octō**	200	CC	**ducentī, -ae, -a**
9	IX	**novem**	300	CCC	**trecentī**
10	X	**decem**	400	CCCC	**quadr*in*gentī**
11	XI	**ūndecim**	500	D(IↃ)	***quīn*gentī**
12	XII	**duodecim**	600	DC	***sēs*centī**
13	XIII	**tredecim**	700	DCC	**sept*in*gentī**
14	XIV	**quattuordecim**	800	DCCC	**oct*in*gentī**
15	XV	**quīndecim**	900	DCCCC	***nōn*gentī**
16	XVI	**sēdecim**	1000	M (CIↃ)	**mīlle**
17	XVII	**septendecim**	1001	MI	**mīlle et ūnus**
18	XVIII	**duodēvīgintī**	1101	MCI	**mīlle centum ūnus**
19	XIX	**ūndēvīgintī**			
20	XX	**vīgintī**	2000	MM	**duo mīlia**
21	XXI	**vīgintī ūnus** or **ūnus et vīgintī**	5000	IↃↃ	**quīnque mīlia**
			10,000	CCIↃↃ	**decem mīlia**
28	XXVIII	**duodētrīgintā**	21,000		**ūnum et vīgintī mīlia**
29	XXIX	**ūndētrīgintā**	100,000	CCCIↃↃↃ	**centum mīlia**
30	XXX	**trīgintā**			**centēna mīlia**
40	XL	**quadrāgintā**	1,000,000		**deciēs centēna mīlia**

200. Declension of **ūnus, duo, trēs,** and of **mīlle.**

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.		
Nom.	**ūnus,**	**ūna,**	**ūnum,**	**trēs,**	**tria,**
Gen.	**ūnīus,**	**ūnīus,**	**ūnīus,**	**trium,**	**trium,**
Dat.	**ūnī,**	**ūnī,**	**ūnī,**	**tribus,**	**tribus,**
Acc.	**ūnum,**	**ūnam,**	**ūnum,**	**trēs,**	**tria,**
Abl.	**ūnō,**	**ūnā,**	**ūnō.**	**tribus,**	**tribus.**

	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.	Sing.	Plur.
Nom.	**duo**, *two*,	**duae**,	**duo**,	**mīlle**,	**mīlia**,
Gen.	**duōrum**,	**duārum**,	**duōrum**,	**mīlle**,	**mīlium**,
Dat.	**duōbus**,	**duābus**,	**duōbus**,	**mīlle**,	**mīlibus**,
Acc.	**duōs**, **duo**,	**duās**,	**duo**,	**mīlle**,	**mīlia**,
Abl.	**duōbus**,	**duābus**,	**duōbus**.	**mīlle**,	**mīlibus**.

Like **duo** is declined **ambō**, **-ae**, **-ō**, *both*.

Observe :

1. That **ūnus** has **-īus** in the Gen. Sing. and **-ī** in the Dat. Sing. for *all genders*, but is otherwise declined like **bonus** (55).

2. That **mīlle** in the Singular is an *indeclinable adjective* and agrees with its noun ; in the Plural, it is a noun and is followed by the *Partitive Genitive*.

3. That the cardinal numbers from **quattuor** to **centum** inclusive are not declined.

4. That from **ducentī**, **-ae**, **-a** on, they are declined like the Plural of **bonus** (55), but have Gen. Pl. in **-um** instead of **-ōrum**.

5. That in combinations of two or more cardinals the declinable numeral retains its inflection ; e.g. **ūnum et vīgintī annōs nātus**, *twenty-one years old*.

EXERCISES.

201. I. 1. Puer quīnque annōs nātus erat. 2. Dux in hībernīs legiōnēs duās habuit. 3. Mūrus mīlia passuum tria longus et pedēs duodecim altus erat. 4. Mīlitēs hōrās sex cum hostibus pūgnābant. 5. In castrīs erant equitum mīlia sex. 6. Fīlia duōbus annīs est māior nātū quam frāter. 7. Mīlitēs legiōnis ūnīus in oppidō fuerant. 8. Rōmulus, Rōmānōrum rēx, trīgintā septem annōs rēgnāvit. 9. In urbe sunt mīlle mīlitēs : duo mīlia hostium urbem oppūgnant. 10. Mīlle octingentā nōnāgintā septem.

II. 1. We shall be in the city three years. 2. Caesar lived (**vīxit**) fifty-six years. 3. The general had ten thou-

sand soldiers in camp. 4. The queen is three years younger than the king. 5. The river is two hundred feet deep and two miles broad. 6. The king was sixty-one years old and had reigned thirty-two years. 7. Caesar hastened into the enemy's territory with three legions. 8. Caesar gave the standard to one of the soldiers. 9. The children of one mother are brothers and sisters.

LESSON XLVII.

Passive Voice of AMŌ, *I love*. Ablative Case.

202. PRESENT INDICATIVE PASSIVE of **amō**, *I love:* stem **amā-**.

SING.—1. amo-**r**, *I am loved* or *am being loved.*
2. amā-**ris** (or amā-**re**), *you are loved* or *are being loved.*
3. amā-**tur**, *he is loved* or *is being loved.*

PLUR.—1. amā-**mur**, *we are loved* or *are being loved.*
2. amā-**minī**, *you are loved* or *are being loved.*
3. ama-**ntur**, *they are loved* or *are being loved.*

Observe:

1. That **amo-r** is for **amā-o-r** (cf. 31, 1).

2. That the endings in black type are added to the stem **amā-** to form the passive voice and denote the persons and numbers, as follows (cf. 31, 2):

SING.—1. **-r**, *I.*	PLUR.—1. **-mur**, *we.*
2. **-ris** (or **-re**), *you* (*thou*).	2. **-minī**, *you.*
3. **-tur**, *he* (*she, it*).	3. **-ntur**, *they.*

203. Examine the following:

1. Amātur, HE OR SHE IS LOVED, OR IS BEING LOVED.
2. Pūgnātur, IT IS FOUGHT, or *a battle* IS FOUGHT.
3. Pyrrhus **lapide** necātur, *Pyrrhus is killed* BY A STONE.
4. Pyrrhus **ā muliere** necātur, *Pyrrhus is killed* BY A WOMAN.
5. Pyrrhus **ā muliere lapide** necātur, *Pyrrhus is killed* BY A WOMAN WITH A STONE.

Observe:

1. That in examples 1 and 2, *no subject is expressed*, and the pronouns *he, she,* or *it* must be used in English (cf. 35).

2. That in example 3, **lapide**, *by a stone*, denotes the *Means* or *Instrument*, and the Ablative is used *without a Preposition* (54).

3. That in example 4, **ā muliere**, *by a woman*, denotes the person *by whom* the killing is done (*Agent* or *Doer*) and is in the Ablative *with the Preposition* **ā** (206).

204. Vocabulary.

fidēs, -eī, f. *faith, trust, promise.*
aditus, -ūs, m. *approach, access.*
agger, -eris, m. *rampart, mound.*—p. 98.
captīvus, -ī, m. *captive.*
cāsus, -ūs, m. *chance, danger.*
centuriō, -ōnis, m. *centurion.*

colloc-ō,	**-āre,**	**-āvī,**	**-ātum,**	*I place, post, station.*
dēmōnstr-ō,	**-āre,**	**-āvī,**	**-ātum,**	*I point out, show, explain.*
compar-ō,	**-āre,**	**-āvī,**	**-ātum,**	*I prepare, get together, get.*

IDIOMS.

ā dextrō cornū, *on the right wing.* **ā sinistrō cornū,** *on the left wing.*

EXERCISES.

205. I. 1. Fidēs cum hostibus ā Rōmānīs servātur. 2. Aditus ad urbem ā mīlitibus multīs fīrmātur. 3. Mīlitēs ā dextrō cornū ā Caesare māximē laudantur. 4. Ā captīvīs miserīs laudāris. 5. Agger ā mīlitibus centuriōnis oppūgnātur. 6. Mīlitēs multī cāsū bellī comparantur. 7. Caesar ab omnibus dēmōnstrātur. 8. Legiōnēs in hībernīs mēnsēs quīnque collocantur. 9. Ā sinistrō cornū ācerrimē pūgnātur. 10. Librī puerīs bonīs ā magistrō dantur.

II. 1. Much money is given by the general to the soldiers. 2. The town is saved by the approach of Caesar. 3. Two legions of one general are placed in winter-quarters. 4. The city is strengthened by a rampart and a ditch. 5. I am praised by my teacher. 6. The soldiers on the left

wing are easily routed. 7. Much grain is got together by the centurion. 8. The chances of war are dreaded by all. 9. The thing is explained to Caesar by the captives. 10. We are loved by good friends.

206. RULE.—*The Agent or Doer of an action is put in the Ablative with the preposition* **ab** (*or* **ā**).

LESSON XLVIII.

207. Ordinal Numeral Adjectives.

ORDINAL NUMBERS.

1	**prīmus, -a, -um (prior)**	50	**quīnquāgēsimus**
2	**secundus (alter)**	60	**sexāgēsimus**
3	**tertius**	70	**septuāgēsimus**
4	**quārtus**	80	**octōgēsimus**
5	**quīntus**	90	**nōnāgēsimus**
6	**sextus**	100	**centēsimus**
7	**septimus**	101	**centēsimus prīmus**
8	**octāvus**	200	**ducentēsimus**
9	**nōnus**	300	**trecentēsimus**
10	**decimus**	400	**quadringentēsimus**
11	**ūndecimus**	500	**quīngentēsimus**
12	**duodecimus**	600	**sēscentēsimus**
13	**tertius decimus**	700	**septingentēsimus**
14	**quārtus decimus**	800	**octingentēsimus**
15	**quīntus decimus**	900	**nōngentēsimus**
16	**sextus decimus**	1,000	**mīllēsimus**
17	**septimus decimus**	1,001	**mīllēsimus prīmus**
18	**duodēvīcēsimus**	1,101	**mīllēsimus centēsimus prīmus**
19	**ūndēvīcēsimus**	2,000	**bis mīllēsimus**
20	**vīcēsimus**	5,000	**quīnquiēs mīllēsimus**
21	**vīcēsimus prīmus**	10,000	**deciēs mīllēsimus**
28	**duodētrīcēsimus**	21,000	**semel et vīciēs mīllēsimus**
29	**ūndētrīcēsimus**	100,000	**centiēs mīllēsimus**
30	**trīcēsimus**	1,000,000	**deciēs centiēs mīllēsimus**
40	**quadrāgēsimus**		

1. The ordinals are declined like **bonus** (55).

208. Vocabulary.

Cicerō, -ōnis, m. *Cicero.*
Augustus, -ī, m. *Augustus.*
tēstāmentum, -ī, n. *will.*
mors, mortis, f. *death.*
aetās, -ātis, f. *age.*
Dĭāna, -ae, f. *Diana.*
Ephesius, -a, -um, *Ephesian, of Ephesus.*
Tiberius, -ī, m. *Tiberius.*

vīv-ō,	**-ere,**	**vīx-ī,**	**vīc-tum,**	*I live.*
dēcēd-ō,	**-ere,**	**dēcēs-sī,**	**dēcēs-sum,**	*I depart : die.*

IDIOMS.

ante Chrīstum nātum, *before the birth of Christ = B.C.*
annō Dominī, *in the year of our Lord = A.D.*

EXERCISES.

209. I. 1. Annō dominī mīllēsimō octingentēsimō nōnāgēsimō sextō vīvimus. 2. Augustus sexāgēsimō tertiō annō ante Chrīstum nātum nātus est (*was born*). 3. Vīxit annōs septuāgintā sex, diēs quīnque et trīgintā. 4. Tēstāmentum annō et quattuor mēnsibus ante mortem fēcerat. 5. Tiberius tertiō et vīcēsimō annō imperī dēcēssit. 6. Templum Dĭānae Ephesiae quadringentōs quīnquāgintā pedēs longum, ducentōs vīgintī pedēs lātum fuit. 7. Cicerō annō aetātis tertiō et sexāgēsimō dēcēssit. 8. Caesar annō centēsimō ante Chrīstum nātum nātus est. 9. Imperātor tertiō diē castra mōvit. 10. Dux in urbe diēs quīnque mānserat.

II. 1. Cicero was born in the one hundred and sixth year before Christ. 2. Augustus died in the fourteenth year of our Lord. 3. He was in the seventy-sixth year of his age. 4. Caesar lived sixty-three years. 5. On the fifth day, the enemy moved their camp two miles. 6. The Romans were greatly grieved at the death of Caesar. 7. He gave the people much money by will. 8. The consul hastened from the city on the sixth day. 9. The battle is saved by the bravery of the tenth legion. 10. The city is strengthened by the general with a wall and a ditch.

LESSON XLIX.

Passive Voice of AMŌ Continued.

210. 1. IMPERFECT INDICATIVE PASSIVE of **amō**, *I love:* stem **amā-**.

SING. — 1.	amā-ba-r,	*I was loved* or *was being loved.*
2.	amā-bā-ris (-re),	*you were loved* or *were being loved.*
3.	amā-bā-tur,	*he was loved* or *was being loved.*
PLUR. — 1.	amā-bā-mur,	*we were loved* or *were being loved.*
2.	amā-bā-minī,	*you were loved* or *were being loved.*
3.	amā-ba-ntur,	*they were loved* or *were being loved.*

Observe:

That the Imperfect Indicative Passive is formed just like the active (42), except that the personal endings are *passive* (202, 2).

2. FUTURE INDICATIVE PASSIVE of **amō**, *I love:* stem **amā-**.

SING. — 1.	amā-bo-r,	*I shall be loved.*
2.	amā-be-ris (-re),	*you will be loved.*
3.	amā-bi-tur,	*he will be loved.*
PLUR. — 1.	amā-bi-mur,	*we shall be loved.*
2.	amā-bi-minī,	*you will be loved.*
3.	amā-bu-ntur,	*they will be loved.*

Observe:

That the Future Indicative Passive is formed just like the active (49), except that the personal endings are *passive* (200, 2).

211. Vocabulary.

auctōritās, -tātis, f. *authority.*
ēruptiō, -ōnis, f. *sally.*
commeātus, -ūs, m. *provisions, supplies.*
coniūrātiō, -ōnis, f. *conspiracy.*
explōrātor, -ōris, m. *scout.*
inopia, -ae, f. *want, need.*
adductus, -a, -um, *led on, induced.*
nōbilis, -e, *of high birth, noble.*

arm-ō,	**-āre,**	**-āvī,**	**-ātum,**	*I arm.*
excit-ō,	**-āre,**	**-āvī,**	**-ātum,**	*I arouse, excite.*

EXERCISES.

212. I. 1. Auctōritāte prīncipis adductī, coniūrātiōnem fēcērunt. 2. Ēruptiō Caesarī ab explōrātōribus nūntiābātur. 3. Aeduī, inopiā commeātūs adductī, ad arma excitābuntur. 4. Dux nōbilissimus ab omnibus hominibus laudābitur. 5. Mīlitēs multī ā dextrō cornū volnerābuntur. 6. Domūs multae in urbe ā cīvibus aedificābuntur. 7. Ā magistrō laudāberis. 8. Mare ā nautīs nōn formīdātur. 9. Brevī tempore cīvēs omnēs armābantur. 10. Ā magistrō optimō ēducābiminī.

II. 1. The soldiers, induced by the want of food, made a sally out of the town. 2. The noblest hostages were given to Caesar by the citizens. 3. The scouts will be wounded by the enemy. 4. We shall be aroused to arms in a short time. 5. You will be praised by all good men. 6. The pirates were armed with javelins and swords. 7. The chiefs of the state will be called together by Caesar. 8. The town was stormed by many thousand soldiers. 9. On the third day he moved his camp and came into the territory of the Helvetians. 10. The enemy were routed by our cavalry.

CORŌNA.

LESSON L.

213. Personal Pronouns and Possessive Adjectives.

		SUBSTANTIVE.	POSSESSIVE.
1.		FIRST PERSON.	
SG.—N.	**ego,**	*I,*	
G.	**meī,**	*of me,*	**meus, -a, -um,** *mine* or *my.* Voc. (masc.) **mī.**
D.	**mihĭ,**	*to, for me,*	
Ac.	**mē,**	*me,*	
Ab.	**mē,**	*from, with, by me.*	
PL.—N.	**nōs,**	*we,*	
G.	**nostrī, nostrum,**	*of us,*	**noster, nostra, nostrum,** *our* or *ours.*
D.	**nōbīs,**	*to, for us,*	
Ac.	**nōs,**	*us,*	
Ab.	**nōbīs,**	*from, with, by us.*	
2.		SECOND PERSON.	
SG.—N. V.	**tū,**	*thou,*	
G.	**tuī,**	*of thee,*	**tuus, -a, -um,** *your* or *yours* (sing.).
D.	**tibĭ,**	*to, for thee,*	
Ac.	**tē,**	*thee,*	
Ab.	**tē,**	*from, with, by thee.*	
PL.—N. V.	**vōs,**	*ye* or *you,*	
G.	**vestrī, vestrum,**	*of you,*	**vester, vestra, vestrum,** *your* or *yours* (plur.).
D.	**vōbīs,**	*to, for you,*	
Ac.	**vōs,**	*you,*	
Ab.	**vōbīs,**	*from, with, by you.*	
3.		THIRD PERSON (REFLEXIVE).	
SG.—N.	——		
G.	**suī,**	*of him, her, it(self),*	**suus, -a, -um,** *his, her(s), its (own).*
D.	**sibĭ,**	*to, for, him(self), her(self),*	
Ac.	**sē (sēsē),**	*him(self), her(self),*	
Ab.	**sē (sēsē),**	*from, with, him(self).*	

	SUBSTANTIVE.		POSSESSIVE.
PL.—N.	——		
G.	**suī,**	*of them(selves),*	**suus, -a, -um,** *their (own), theirs.*
D.	**sibĭ,**	*to, for them(selves),*	
Ac.	**sē (sēsē),**	*them(selves),*	
Ab.	**sē (sēsē),**	*from, with, by them(selves).*	

With the Personal and Reflexive Pronouns, **cum** is put after the Abl. and joined with it. So **mēcum, tēcum, sēcum, nōbīscum, vōbīscum.**

214. Examine the following :

1. **Ego** ambulō, **tū** equitās, I *walk*, YOU *ride.*
2. Amō patrem **meum** et mātrem **meam,** *I love* MY *father and* MY *mother.*
3. Equum **suum** laudat, *he praises* HIS *horse.*
4. Equum **eōrum** laudat, *he praises* THEIR *horse.*
5. Equum **ēius** laudant, *they praise* HIS *horse.*
6. Equōs **tuōs** laudās, *you* (Sing.) *praise* YOUR (Sing.) *horses* (Pl.).
7. Equum **vestrum** laudātis, *you* (Pl.) *praise* YOUR (Pl.) *horse* (Sg.).

Observe :

1. That the personal pronouns, as *subjects,* are used for *emphasis* or *contrast.*

2. That **meus, noster, tuus, vester,** and **suus** are *Adjectives* and *must agree* with their nouns in *Gender, Number,* and *Case.*

3. That **tuus** is *singular* in its reference to *one* person, but may be either *singular* or *plural* in its *agreement* (Ex. 6).

4. That **vester** is *plural* in its reference to *more* than one person, but may be either *singular* or *plural* in its *agreement* (Ex. 7).

5. That **suus** is used for *his, hers, its,* or *their,* when these refer to the *subject* of the sentence; but when they do not refer to the subject of the sentence, **ēius** must be used for *his, hers,* or *its,* and **eōrum** for *their,* referring to *masculines and neuters,* and **eārum,** referring to *feminines.*

215. Vocabulary.

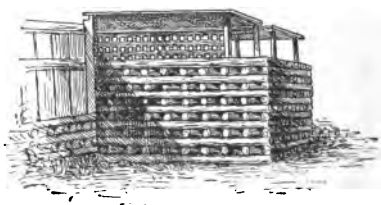
latus, -eris, n. *side, flank.*
magistrātus, -ūs, m. *magistrate, officer.*
insignis, -e, *noted, remarkable.*
beneficium, -ī, n. *kindness.*
calamitās, -ātis, f. *calamity, loss.*
Helvētius, -a -um, *Helvetian.*

īnfer-ō,	**īnfer-re,**	**intul-ī,**	**illā-tum,**	*I bring upon, inflict.*
scrīb-ō,	**-ere,**	**scrīp-sī,**	**scrīp-tum,**	*I write.*

EXERCISES.

216. I. 1. Amīcus meus ad mē epistulam longam scrīpsit. 2. Pars cīvitātis Helvētiae īnsīgnem calamitātem populō Rōmānō intulerat. 3. Ego tēcum in Caesaris hortō ambulābō. 4. Fīliae bonae sē nōn laudant. 5. Caesar ūnum latus castrōrum suōrum rīpīs flūminis mūniēbat. 6. Multitūdinem hominum ex agrīs magistrātūs coēgērunt. 7. Patrēs et mātrēs līberōs suōs amant. 8. Equōs eōrum laudāmus. 9. Rōmānī cīvitātem suam servāvērunt. 10. Fīliōs tuōs et fīliās tuās laudābis.

II. 1. We saw the girls and their horses. 2. You will be praised by your teacher. 3. The Helvetians, induced by the kindness of Caesar, departed from our province. 4. The Romans will make peace with us. 5. The teacher will give you many books. 6. The boy loves his sister and her friends. 7. I love my horse and I am loved by my horse. 8. Caesar saved the Romans and their state. 9. We shall walk with you with the greatest pleasure. 10. The king gave me much money.



AGGER.

LESSON LI.

Passive Voice of AMŌ Continued.

217. 1. PERFECT INDICATIVE PASSIVE of **amō**, *I love:* stem **amā-**.

SING.—1.	amā-t-us, -a, -um sum,	*I have been loved* or *was loved.*
2.	amā-t-us, -a, -um es,	*you have been loved* or *were loved.*
3.	amā-t-us, -a, -um est,	*he has been loved* or *was loved.*
PLUR.—1.	amā-t-ī, -ae, -a sumus,	*we have been loved* or *were loved.*
2.	amā-t-ī, -ae, -a estis,	*you have been loved* or *were loved.*
3.	amā-t-ī, -ae, -a sunt,	*they have been loved* or *were loved.*

2. PLUPERFECT INDICATIVE PASSIVE of **amō**, *I love.*

SING.—1.	amā-t-us, -a, -um eram,	*I had been loved.*
2.	amā-t-us, -a, -um erās,	*you had been loved.*
3.	amā-t-us, -a, -um erat,	*he had been loved.*
PLUR.—1.	amā-t-ī, -ae, -a erāmus,	*we had been loved.*
2.	amā-t-ī, -ae, -a erātis,	*you had been loved.*
3.	amā-t-ī, -ae, -a erant,	*they had been loved.*

3. FUTURE INDICATIVE PASSIVE of **amō**, *I love.*

SING.—1.	amā-t-us, -a, -um erō,	*I shall have been loved.*
2.	amā-t-us, -a, -um eris,	*you will have been loved.*
3.	amā-t-us, -a, -um erit,	*he will have been loved.*
PLUR.—1.	amā-t-ī, -ae, -a erimus,	*you shall have been loved.*
2.	amā-t-ī, -ae, -a eritis,	*you will have been loved.*
3.	amā-t-ī, -ae, -a erunt,	*they will have been loved.*

Observe:

That *all Perfect* tenses in the Passive are formed by means of the Perfect Passive Participle in **-us, -a, -um** and the verb **sum.**

218. Examine the following:

1. **Fīlius amātus** est, *the son was loved.*
2. **Fīlia amāta** est, *the daughter was loved.*
3. **Dōnum amātum** est, *the gift was loved.*
4. **Fīliī amātī** sunt, *the sons were loved.*
5. **Fīliae amātae** sunt, *the daughters were loved.*
6. **Dōna amāta** sunt, *the gifts were loved.*

Observe:

That the Participle, **amātus, -a, -um**, is inflected like any other adjective, and *must agree with its subject in Gender, Number, and Case.*

219. Vocabulary.

senātus, -ūs, m. *senate.*
socius, -i, m. *ally.*
studium, -i, n. *zeal.*
subsidium, -i, n. *help: support.*

perturb-ō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *I throw into confusion, disturb.*
ēvoc-ō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *I call out, summon.*

IDIOMS.

ā novissimō āgmine, *in the rear.*
ex locō inferiōre, *from a lower position.*
ā fronte, *in front.*
ex locō superiōre, *from a higher position: vantage ground.*

EXERCISES.

220. I. 1. Hostēs ā novissimō āgmine ā nostrīs equitibus perturbātī sunt. 2. Tēla ex superiōre locō in peditēs nostrōs iactāta erant. 3. Sorōrēs ā frātribus suīs amātae sunt. 4. Studium sociōrum ā senātū laudātum erit. 5. Mīlitēs plūrimī ā fronte volnerātī sunt. 6. Caesar ad omnēs cāsūs subsidia comparābat. 7. Māgna pars oppidānōrum ad bellum ēvocātā est. 8. Ā magistrō laudāta eris. 9. Proelium ācriter pūgnātum est. 10. Caesar volneribus multīs volnerātus est.

II. 1. Three legions had been called out of their winter-quarters. 2. The great zeal of the allies was announced to the senate. 3. The enemy were driven by the townsmen from a higher position. 4. The city had been strengthened by a wall and a ditch. 5. You will have been saved by your slaves. 6. The daughters of the king had been blamed. 7. The enemy had been conquered in front and in the rear. 8. The town was stormed by our men from a lower position. 9. We have been saved out of great danger. 10. Much money was brought back by the soldiers.

LESSON LII.

Irregular Adjectives.

221. The following six Adjectives in **-us** and three in **-er** have **-īus** in the Gen. Sing. and **-ī** in the Dat. Sing., but are otherwise like **bonus** (55).

alius, alia, aliud, *another.*
ūllus, ūlla, ūllum, *any.*
tōtus, tōta, tōtum, *whole, all.*
alter, altera, alterum, *the other (of two).*
sōlus, sōla, sōlum, *alone, sole.*
nūllus, nūlla, nūllum, *none, no one.*
ūnus, ūna, ūnum, *one.*
neuter, neutra, neutrum, *neither (of two).*
uter, utra, utrum, *which (of two)?*

222. Declension of **alius** and of **alter.**

	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	alius,	alia,	aliud,	alter,	altera,	alterum,
Gen.	alīus,	alīus,	alīus,	alterius,	alterius,	alterius,
Dat.	aliī,	aliī,	aliī,	alterī,	alterī,	alterī,
Acc.	alium,	aliam,	aliud,	alterum,	alteram,	alterum,
Abl.	aliō,	aliā,	aliō.	alterō,	alterā,	alterō.

The Plural of all these Adjectives is regular.

223. Examine the following combinations:

alius.... alius, *one.....another.*
aliī..... aliī, *some.....others.*
alius.... aliud, *one one thing...another another.*
aliī..... alia, *some one thing..others another.*
alter ... alter, / **ūnus.... alter,** } *the one.....the other.*

224. **Vocabulary.**

dum (temporal conj.), *while.*
undique (adv.), *on all sides, from all sides.*
iugum, -ī, n. *yoke.*
lībertās, -ātis, f. *liberty, freedom.*
pāgus, -ī, m. *canton, district.*
sub (prep. with Acc.), *under.*

IDIOMS.

aliī aliam in partem, *some in one direction, others in another.*
dum haec geruntur, *while these things were going on.*

EXERCISES.

225. I. 1. Lībertās Rōmānīs grātissima erat. 2. Alius aliud dīxit. 3. Pāgus ūnus cōnsulem interfēcerat et ēius exercitum sub iugum mīserat. 4. In alterā parte flūminis lēgātum relīquit. 5. Utrī puerōrum librum dedistī? 6. Alterī librum, alterī cultrum dedī. 7. Nōmen Caesaris urbī tōtī cārum fuit. 8. Līberī Divitiacī sōlīus obsidēs nōn fuērunt. 9. Dum haec geruntur, aliī aliam in partem fūgērunt. 10. Undique ab hōrā septimā ācriter pūgnātum est (*it was fought*).

II. 1. Caesar defended the liberty of the whole city. 2. You are dearer to no one than to me. 3. Some say one thing, others another. 4. The people of one canton destroyed the consul's army. 5. Of the two sons, one was a general, the other a poet. 6. While these things were going on, Caesar hastened from the city to the camp. 7. We have read the books of neither poet. 8. Soldiers are summoned from all sides. 9. We shall drive the enemy, some in one direction, others in another. 10. The enemy sent the army of one consul under the yoke.

LESSON LIII.

Passive Voice of MONEŌ. HĪC, HAEC, HŌC.

226. 1. PRESENT INDICATIVE PASSIVE of **moneō**, *I advise:* stem **monē-**.

SING. — 1.	mone-**o-r**,	*I am advised* or *am being advised.*
2.	monē-**ris** (or **-re**),	*you are advised* or *are being advised.*
3.	monē-**tur**,	*he is advised* or *is being advised.*
PLUR. — 1.	monē-**mur**,	*we are advised* or *are being advised.*
2.	monē-**minī**,	*you are advised* or *are being advised.*
3.	mone-**ntur**,	*they are advised* or *are being advised.*

2. IMPERFECT INDICATIVE PASSIVE of **moneō**, *I advise.*

SING. — 1.	monē-**ba-r**,	*I was advised* or *was being advised.*
2.	monē-**bā-ris** (or **-re**),	*you were advised* or *were being advised.*
3.	monē-**bā-tur**,	*he was advised* or *was being advised.*
PLUR. — 1.	monē-**bā-mur**,	*we were advised* or *were being advised.*
2.	monē-**bā-minī**,	*you were advised* or *were being advised.*
3.	monē-**ba-ntur**,	*they were advised* or *were being advised.*

3. FUTURE INDICATIVE PASSIVE of **moneō**, *I advise.*

SING. — 1.	monē-**bo-r**,	*I shall be advised.*
2.	monē-**be-ris** (or **-re**),	*you will be advised.*
3.	monē-**bi-tur**,	*he will be advised.*
PLUR. — 1.	monē-**bi-mur**,	*we shall be advised.*
2.	monē-**bi-minī**,	*you will be advised.*
3.	monē-**bu-ntur**,	*they will be advised.*

Observe:

That these tenses are formed just like the active, save that the personal endings are *Passive* (202, 2).

227. **hīc, haec, hōc,** *this (of mine).*

	M.	F.	N.		M.	F.	N.
SING. — Nom.	**hīc,**	**haec,**	**hōc,**	PLUR. —	**hī,**	**hae,**	**haec,**
Gen.	**hūius,**	**hūius,**	**hūius,**		**hōrum,**	**hārum,**	**hōrum,**
Dat.	**huīc,**	**huīc,**	**huīc,**		**hīs,**	**hīs,**	**hīs,**
Acc.	**hunc,**	**hanc,**	**hōc,**		**hōs,**	**hās,**	**haec,**
Abl.	**hōc,**	**hāc,**	**hōc.**		**hīs,**	**hīs,**	**hīs.**

228. 1. **Hīc**, *this*, is demonstrative Pronoun of the first person and refers to that which is nearer the speaker.

2. When used alone, **hīc** is a *Pronoun;* when used with a noun, it is an *Adjective* and *must agree* with its Noun.

229. **Vocabulary.**

initium, -ī, n. *beginning.*	**vīcus, -ī,** m. *village.*
fuga, -ae, f. *flight.*	**adversus, -a, -um,** *unsuccessful.*
mulier, -eris, f. *woman.*	**secundus, -a, -um,** *prosperous.*
stīpendium, -ī, n. *tribute.*	**mātūrus, -a, -um,** *ripe.*

comple-ō, -plēre, -plē-vī, -plē-tum, *I fill completely, fill.*
contine-ō, -tin-ēre, -tin-uī, -ten-tum, *I hold together, contain, bound.*

EXERCISES.

230. I. 1. Undique locī nātūrā Helvētiī continentur. 2. Equitēs hūius fugae initium fēcērunt. 3. Helvētiī vīcōs omnēs incendunt. 4. Frūmenta in hīs agrīs mātūra nōn sunt. 5. Hōc stīpendium populum dolēbit. 6. Dīscipulī ā magistrō monentur. 7. Tōtus mōns mīlitibus complēbātur. 8. Līberī huīc mulierī cārī sunt. 9. Multī hominēs rēbus secundīs dēlectābuntur. 10. Oppidum adversō proeliō dēlēbitur.

II. 1. You will be warned by your teacher. 2. The ripe corn was destroyed by the enemy. 3. These soldiers were held together in the camp. 4. The Helvetians, induced by these things, remained in the village. 5. These women will be frightened. 6. The houses in this city will be filled with soldiers. 7. The unsuccessful battle of these horsemen had been blamed by the leader. 8. The affairs of this state were very prosperous. 9. By the arrival of these (men), the baseness of the flight was wiped out (**dēleō**). 10. The camp of the enemy is being moved from this place.

LESSON LIV.

231. Demonstrative Pronouns Continued.

	iste, *that (of yours)*.			ille, *that (of his)*.		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
SING. — Nom.	iste,	ista,	istud,	ille,	illa,	illud,
Gen.	istīus,	istīus,	istīus,	illīus,	illīus,	illīus,
Dat.	istī,	istī,	istī,	illī,	illī,	illī,
Acc.	istum,	istam,	istud,	illum,	illam,	illud,
Abl.	istō,	istā,	istō.	illō,	illā,	illō.
PLUR. — Nom.	istī,	istae,	ista,	illī,	illae,	illa,
Gen.	istōrum,	istārum,	istōrum,	illōrum,	illārum,	illōrum,
Dat.	istīs,	istīs,	istīs,	illīs,	illīs,	illīs,
Acc.	istōs,	istās,	ista,	illōs,	illās,	illa,
Abl.	istīs,	istīs,	istīs.	illīs,	illīs,	illīs.

232. 1. **Iste** refers to that which belongs more peculiarly to the second person.

2. **Ille** refers to that which is more remote from the speaker and is often used in contrast to **hīc**.

3. **Hīc** and **ille** are sometimes used in contrast: **hīc**, *the latter*; **ille**, *the former*.

4. **Iste** and **ille**, when used alone, are *Pronouns:* when used with Nouns, they are *Adjectives* and *must agree* with the Nouns.

233. Vocabulary.

Horātius, -ī, m. *Horace.*
Gallus, -ī, m. *a Gaul.*
Aquītānus, -ī, m. *an Aquitanian.*
lingua, -ae, f. *language, tongue.*
inter sē differre, *to differ among themselves.*
cultus, -ūs, m. *cultivation, civilization.*
hūmānitās, -ātis, f. *humanity, refinement.*
īnstitūtum, -ī, n. *custom, usage.*

absum, abesse, āfuī, āfutūrus, *I am distant, absent.*
differ-ō, differ-re, distul-ī, dīlā-tum, *I differ.*

EXERCISES.

234. I. 1. Horātius et Caesar erant Rōmānī. 2. Ille poēta erat, hīc dux. 3. Aquītānī nostrā linguā Gallī appellantur. 4. Hī omnēs linguā, īnstitūtīs, lēgibus inter sē differunt. 5. Hōrum omnium fortissimī sunt Belgae. 6. Ā cultū et hūmanitāte prōvinciae absunt. 7. Illō diē Caesar ad castra vēnit. 8. Iste equus validissimus est. 9. In illō oppidō multī mīlitēs fuērunt. 10. Equitēs omnēs ad illud oppidum fēstīnābant.

II. 1. We shall see those soldiers (*of yours*) in the camp. 2. These men differ among themselves in customs. 3. The Aquitanians were conquered by the Romans. 4. The former dwelt in Gaul, the latter in Italy. 5. The leader will blame those soldiers of yours. 6. On that day Caesar moved his camp. 7. These horsemen saved that city. 8. This boy is good, that (one) is bad. 9. These soldiers were fleeing, some in one direction, others in another. 10. The queen gave money to that good maid-servant.

DOMUS.

LESSON LV.

Passive Voice of MONEŌ Continued. Determinative Pronouns.

235. 1. PERFECT INDIC. PASS. of **moneō**, *I advise:* stem **monē-**.

SG.—1. moni-t-**us, -a, -um sum**, *I have been advised* or *was advised.*
2. moni-t-**us, -a, -um es**, *you have been advised* or *were advised.*
3. moni-t-**us, -a, -um est**, *he has been advised* or *was advised.*

PL.—1. moni-t-**I, -ae, -a sumus**, *we have been advised* or *were advised.*
2. moni-t-**I, -ae, -a estis**, *you have been advised* or *were advised.*
3. moni-t-**I, -ae, -a sunt**, *they have been advised* or *were advised.*

2. PLUPERFECT INDIC. PASS. of **moneō**, *I advise.*

SG.— 1. moni-t-**us, -a, -um eram**, *I had been advised.*
2. moni-t-**us, -a, -um erās**, *you had been advised.*
3. moni-t-**us, -a, -um erat**, *they had been advised.*

PL.—1. moni-t-**I, -ae, -a erāmus**, *we had been advised.*
2. moni-t-**I, -ae, -a erātis**, *you had been advised.*
3. moni-t-**I, -ae, -a erant**, *they had been advised.*

3. FUTURE PERFECT INDIC. PASS. of **moneō**, *I advise.*

SG.— 1. moni-t-**us, -a, -um erō**, *I shall have been advised.*
2. moni-t-**us, -a, -um eris**, *you will have been advised.*
3. moni-t-**us, -a, -um erit**, *he will have been advised.*

PL.—1. moni-t-**I, -ae, -a erimus**, *we shall have been advised.*
2. moni-t-**I, -ae, -a eritis**, *you will have been advised.*
3. moni-t-**I, -ae, -a erunt**, *they will have been advised.*

Observe:

That all Perfect tenses in the Passive are formed by means of the Perf. Passive Participle in **-us, -a, -um** and the verb **sum.**

236. ipse, *he, -self (myself, himself, herself, themselves)*.

	Singular.			Plural.		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	ipse,	ipsa,	ipsum,	ipsī,	ipsae,	ipsa,
Gen.	ipsīus,	ipsīus,	ipsīus,	ipsōrum,	ipsārum,	ipsōrum,
Dat.	ipsī,	ipsī,	ipsī,	ipsīs,	ipsīs,	ipsīs,
Acc.	ipsum,	ipsam,	ipsum,	ipsōs,	ipsās,	ipsa,
Abl.	ipsō,	ipsā,	ipsō.	ipsīs,	ipsīs,	ipsīs.

237. **Ipse** is a distinctive Pronoun and separates a subject or an object from all others. It is used for emphasis and must be carefully distinguished from the reflexive **sē**, *self*.

238. Examine the following:

1. **Ipse fēcit**, *he himself did it* (emphatic).
2. **Sē amat**, *he loves himself* (reflexive).
3. **Ipse sē amat**, *he himself loves himself* (emphatic and reflexive).

239. **Vocabulary.**

longē (adv.), *by far, far.*
cupiditās, -ātis, f. *desire.*
Germānus, -ī, m. *a German.*
apud (prep. with Acc.), *among, at.*
prō (prep. with Abl.), *for, in proportion to.*
angustus, -a, -um, *narrow.*
dīvid-ō, -ere, -vīs-ī, -vīs-um, *I divide, separate.*

EXERCISES.

240. I. 1. Apud Helvētiōs longē nōbilissimus fuit Orgetorīx. 2. Ipse rēgnī cupiditāte adductus coniūrātiōnem fēcit. 3. Ūnā ex parte flūmen Helvētiōs ā Germānīs dīvidit. 4. Prō multitūdine hominum fīnēs angustōs habent. 5. Puerī ā magistrō māximā cum dīligentiā monitī sunt. 6. Puellae ā mīlitibus territae erant. 7. Oppida multa ā pīrātīs dēlēta erunt. 8. Montēs altissimī hominibus complētī sunt. 9. Ā patre et mātre monitus es. 10. Rēx puellae ipsī equum validum dabit.

II. 1. The king himself had conquered the enemy. 2. The boys have been advised by the teacher himself. 3.

Good boys do not praise themselves. 4. The judge himself praises himself. 5. Caesar was by far the best leader among the Romans. 6. The Germans themselves had been frightened by the army of Caesar. 7. The Germans were held together by narrow boundaries. 8. Is he himself praising himself? 9. The enemy had been seen in the town. 10. The soldiers will have been kept in camp many months.

LESSON LVI.

Determinative Pronouns Continued.

241. **is**, *this, that, he.*

	Singular.			Plural.		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	is,	ea,	id,	eī (iī),	eae,	ea,
Gen.	ēius,	ēius,	ēius,	eōrum,	eārum,	eōrum,
Dat.	eī,	eī,	eī,	eīs (iīs),	eīs (iīs),	eīs (iīs),
Acc.	eum,	eam,	id,	eōs,	eās,	ea,
Abl.	eō,	eā,	eō.	eīs (iīs),	eīs (iīs),	eīs (iīs).

īdem (**is** + **dem**), *the same.*

	Singular.			Plural.		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	īdem,	eadem,	idem,	eīdem (iīdem),	eaedem,	eadam,
Gen.	ēiusdem,	ēiusdem,	ēiusdem,	eōrundem,	eārundem,	eōrundem,
Dat.	eīdem,	eīdem,	eīdem,	eīsdem (iīsdem),	eīsdem (iīsdem),	eīsdem (iīsdem),
Acc.	eundem,	eandem,	idem,	eōsdem,	eāsdem,	eadem,
Abl.	eōdem,	eādem,	eōdem.	eīsdem (iīsdem),	eīsdem (iīsdem),	eīsdem (iīsdem).

242. 1. **Is** is a Determinative Pronoun and serves as the lacking Pronoun of the third person.

2. When used without a noun, **is** is a *Pronoun:* when used with a noun, it is an *Adjective* and *must agree* with its Noun.

3. The Genitive Case of **is** is used as a possessive when reference is *not* made to the subject of the sentence: **ēius** is used for *his, hers, its;* **eōrum** for *their,* referring to *masculine* and *neuter* nouns; **eārum** for *their,* referring to *feminine* nouns (214, 5).

243. Vocabulary.

ōrātiō, -ōnis, f. *oration.*
indicium, -I, n. *information.*
iudicium, -I, n. *trial.*
per (prep. with Acc.), *through, by.*
post (prep. with Acc.), *after.*
parātus, -a, -um, *ready, prepared.*
ēnūnti-ō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, *I announce.*

IDIOMS.

in mātrimōnium dare, *give in marriage.*
per indicium, *by informers.*
inter sē dare, *exchange.*
causam dīcere, *plead one's cause.*

EXERCISES.

244. I. 1. Eā ōrātiōne adductī coniūrātiōnem fēcērunt. 2. Eōdem diē Caesar castra mōvit. 3. Ea rēs est Helvētiīs per indicium ēnūntiāta. 4. Eī fīliam suam in mātrimōnium dat. 5. Aeduī et Helvētiī inter sē fidem dant. 6. Post ēius mortem Helvētiī id (*this thing*) faciunt. 7. Ad iūdicium hominum mīlia decem coēgit. 8. In eōdem locō diū et ācriter pūgnātum est. 9. Orgetorīx ex vinculīs causam dīxit. 10. Ipsī in eōrum fīnibus bellum gerunt; ipsī in suīs fīnibus bellum gerunt.

II. 1. The same ambassadors came to Caesar. 2. They were pleading their cause and were ready for all things. 3. This thing will be announced to the same man. 4. His daughter was given in marriage to Caesar. 5. Induced by these things, they exchange faith. 6. The general was held in great honor among them. 7. After that battle Caesar led his forces into camp. 8. Through him the city had been preserved. 9. But by the same man, freedom was destroyed. 10. And he was killed by the senators in the senate-house.

LESSON LVII.

Relative Pronouns.

245. **quī**, *who, which, that, what.*

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	**quī,**	**quae,**	**quod,**	**quī,**	**quae,**	**quae,**
Gen.	**cūius,**	**cūius,**	**cūius,**	**quōrum,**	**quārum,**	**quōrum,**
Dat.	**cuī,**	**cuī,**	**cuī,**	**quibus,**	**quibus,**	**quibus,**
Acc.	**quem,**	**quam,**	**quod,**	**quōs,**	**quās,**	**quae,**
Abl.	**quō,**	**quā,**	**quō.**	**quibus,**	**quibus,**	**quibus.**

246. Examine the following:

1. **Ego, quī haec faciō, sum tuus pater,** *I, who do this, am your father.*

2. **Tū, quī haec facis, es meus pater,** *you, who do this, are my father.*

3. **Is, quī haec dīcit, Rōmānus est,** *he, who says this, is a Roman.*

4. **Urbs, quam vidēs, Rōma est,** *the city, which you see, is Rome.*

5. **Equōs, quī in agrīs sunt, amō,** *I love the horses which are in the fields.*

6. **Calamitātēs, quās tulērunt, grāvēs erant,** *the disasters that they bore were severe.*

7. **Puer, cuī magister librum dedit, bonus est,** *the boy, to whom the teacher gave the book, is good.*

8. **Caesar, cūius mīlitēs vidēs, adest,** *Caesar, whose soldiers you see, is present.*

Observe:

1. That the Relative Pronoun refers back to some word, and the word to which it refers is called its *Antecedent.*

2. That the relative pronoun *agrees* with its *antecedent* in *Gender, Number,* and *Person.*

3. That the Case of the Relative Pronoun is often not the same as that of the antecedent, but depends upon its relation in the clause in which it stands.

247. Vocabulary.

lēgātiō, -ōnis, f. *embassy.* **quā dē causā,** *for which cause, wherefore.*
Rhēnus, -ī, m. *Rhine.* **oceānus, -ī,** m. *ocean.*
ad (prep. with Acc.), *near, at.* **trāns** (prep. with Acc.), *across.*

incol-ō,	**-ere,**	**-col-uī,**	——	*I dwell, inhabit.*
pertine-ō,	**-ēre,**	**-tin-uī,**	——	*I pertain, stretch.*
rescind-ō,	**-ere,**	**-sci-dī,**	**-scis-sum,**	*I cut down.*
obtine-ō,	**-ēre,**	**-tin-uī,**	**-ten-tum,**	*I hold, obtain.*

EXERCISES.

248. I. 1. Caesar pontem, quī erat ad Genāvam, rescidit. 2. Galliae omnis sunt partēs trēs, quārum ūnam incolunt Belgae. 3. Gallī cum Germānīs, quī trāns Rhēnum incolunt, bellum gerunt. 4. Quā dē causā Helvētiī reliquōs (*rest of*) Gallōs virtūte praecēdunt. 5. Aquītānia ā Garumnā flūmine ad eam partem oceānī, quae est ad Hispāniam, pertinet. 6. Helvētiī lēgātōs ad eum mittunt, cūius lēgātiōnis Nammēius prīncipem locum obtinēbat. 7. Eā legiōne, quam habet, mātūrat ab urbe. 8. Ad montem Iūram, quī fīnēs Sēquanōrum ab Helvētiīs dīvidit, vēnit. 9. Tū, quī monitus es, fīlius meus es. 10. Ea, quae monita erat, fīlia mea est.

II. 1. The same men, who came to Caesar, were the ambassadors. 2. We have many letters which Cicero wrote. 3. The soldiers, who fight bravely, are loved by the generals. 4. The girl, who was praised, is the farmer's daughter. 5. I, who write this letter, am your friend. 6. The horse, which you gave me, is strong. 7. The wars, which the Romans fought, were severe. 8. The enemy had seized the bridge which is near Geneva. 9. The soldiers, whom you saw, were Romans. 10. Those, who dwell across the Rhine, are called Germans.

249. RULE.—*The Relative agrees with its Antecedent in Gender, Number, and Person, but its Case depends upon its relation in the clause in which it stands.*

LESSON LVIII.

Passive Voice of **emō**, *I buy*.

250. 1. PRESENT INDIC. PASS. of **emō**, *I buy:* stem **eme-**.

SING. — 1.	em-**o-r**,	*I am bought* or *being bought.*
2.	eme-**ris** (or **-re**),	*you are bought* or *being bought.*
3.	emi-**tur**,	*he is bought* or *being bought.*
PLUR. — 1.	emi-**mur**,	*we are bought* or *being bought.*
2.	emi-**minī**,	*you are bought* or *being bought.*
3.	emu-**ntur**,	*he is bought* or *being bought.*

2. IMPERFECT INDIC. PASS. of **emō**, *I buy.*

SING. — 1.	emē-**ba-r**,	*I was bought* or *being bought.*
2.	emē-**bā-ris** (or **-re**),	*you were bought* or *being bought.*
3.	emē-**bā-tur**,	*he was bought* or *being bought.*
PLUR. — 1.	emē-**bā-mur**,	*we were bought* or *being bought.*
2.	emē-**bā-minī**,	*you were bought* or *being bought.*
3.	emē-**ba-ntur**,	*they were bought* or *being bought.*

3. FUTURE INDIC. PASS. of **emō**, *I buy.*

SING. — 1.	ema-**r**,	*I shall be bought.*
2.	emē-**ris** (or **-re**),	*you will be bought.*
3.	emē-**tur**,	*he will be bought.*
PLUR. — 1.	emē-**mur**,	*we shall be bought.*
2.	emē-**minī**,	*you will be bought.*
3.	eme-**ntur**,	*they will be bought.*

Observe:

That the Future of the third Conjugation is *not* formed with **-b-o-r**, as in the first and second.

251. Vocabulary.

praesidium, -ī, n. *guard, garrison.*
castellum, -ī, n. *fort.*
complūrēs, -ia (gen. **-ium**), adj. *many, a great many.*
altitūdō, -inis, f. *height, depth.*
nāvis, -is, f. *ship.*
vadum, -ī, n. *ford.*
mūnītiō, -ōnis, f. *fortification, defences.*
Rhodanus, -ī, m. *the Rhone.*

perfici-ō,	**-fic-ere,**	**-fēc-ī,**	**-fec-tum,**	*I finish, accomplish.*
dispōn-ō,	**-pōn-ere,**	**-pos-uī,**	**-posi-tum,**	*I station, place, post.*
commūni-ō,	**-mūn-ire,**	**-mūn-īvī,**	**-mūn-ītum,**	*I fortify.*
iung-ō,	**iung-ere,**	**iūnx-ī,**	**iūnc-tum,**	*I join, join together.*
repell-ō,	**repell-ere,**	**reppul-ī,**	**repul-sum,**	*I drive back, repulse.*

EXERCISES.

252. I. 1. Id opus perficitur et praesidia dispōnuntur. 2. Hīc lacus in flūmen Rhodanum īnfluit. 3. Fīnēs Sēquanōrum ab Helvētiīs monte Iūrā dīvidunturr. 4. Eōdem diē castella commūnit. 5. Proximō diē lēgātī ad eum mittentur. 6. Nūllī iter per prōvinciam dedit. 7. Complūrēs nāvēs iungēbantur. 8. Altitūdō flūminis minima erat. 9. Helvētiī aliī vadīs flūmen trānseunt (*cross*). 10. Hī mūnītiōne operis repellēbantur.

CASTELLUM.

II. 1. We shall be ruled by a good king. 2. This work was quickly finished by the Roman people. 3. The guards

were placed on the walls of the town. 4. You will be repulsed by the Helvetians. 5. The depth of the Rhone was very great. 6. Many rafts were joined together. 7. On the same day, the soldiers had come together from the province. 8. I was left behind by my friends. 9. Caesar fortifies the camp with a rampart and a ditch. 10. You are sent to Caesar.

LESSON LIX.

Passive of EMŌ Continued. Interrogative Pronouns.

253. 1. PERFECT INDIC. PASS. of **emō**, *I buy.*

SG.— 1. ēmp-t-**us, -a, -um sum,** *I have been bought* or *was bought.*
2. ēmp-t-**us, -a, -um es,** *you have been bought* or *were bought.*
3. ēmp-t-**us, -a, -um est,** *he has been bought* or *was bought.*

PL.— 1. ēmp-t-**I, -ae, -a sumus,** *we have been bought* or *were bought.*
2. ēmp-t-**I, -ae, -a estis,** *you have been bought* or *were bought.*
3. ēmp-t-**I, -ae, -a sunt,** *they have been bought* or *were bought.*

2. PLUPERFECT INDIC. PASS. of **emō**, *I buy.*

SG.— 1. ēmp-t-**us, -a, -um eram,** *I had been bought.*
2. ēmp-t-**us, -a, -um erās,** *you had been bought.*
3. ēmp-t-**us, -a, -um erat,** *he had been bought.*

PL.— 1. ēmp-t-**I, -ae, -a erāmus,** *we had been bought.*
2. ēmp-t-**I, -ae, -a erātis,** *you had been bought.*
3. ēmp-t-**I, -ae, -a erant,** *they had been bought.*

3. FUTURE PERFECT INDIC. PASS. of **emō**, *I buy.*

SG.— 1. ēmp-t-**us, -a, -um erō,** *I shall have been bought.*
2. ēmp-t-**us, -a, -um eris,** *you will have been bought.*
3. ēmp-t-**us, -a, -um erit,** *he will have been bought.*

PL.— 1. ēmp-t-**I, -ae, -a erimus,** *we shall have been bought.*
2. ēmp-t-**I, -ae, -a eritis,** *you will have been bought.*
3. ēmp-t-**I, -ae, -a erunt,** *they will have been bought.*

Observe:

That all Perfect tenses in the Passive are formed by means of the Perf. Pass. Participle in **-us, -a, -um** and the verb **sum.**

254. **quis, quid?** *who? which? what?*

SINGULAR.

	MASC. AND FEM.	NEUT.
Nom.	**quis?** *who?*	**quid?** *what?*
Gen.	**cūius?** *whose? of whom?*	**cūius?** *whose? of what?*
Dat.	**cuī?** *to* or *for whom?*	**cuī?** *to* or *for what?*
Acc.	**quem?** *whom?*	**quid?** *what?*
Abl.	**quō?** *by, with, from whom?*	**quō?** *by, with, from what?*

PLURAL.

	MASC.	FEM.	NEUT.
Nom.	**quī?** *who?*	**quae?** *who?*	**quae?** *what?*
Gen.	**quōrum?** *whose? of whom?*	**quārum?** *whose? of whom?*	**quōrum?** *whose? of what?*
Dat.	**quibus?** *to* or *for whom?*	**quibus?** *to* or *for whom?*	**quibus?** *to* or *for what!*
Acc.	**quōs?** *whom?*	**quās?** *whom?*	**quae?** *what?*
Abl.	**quibus?** *by, with, from whom?*	**quibus?** *by, with, from whom?*	**quibus?** *by, with, from what?*

255. When the interrogative stands alone, it is a Pronoun and has the above-given forms: when it agrees with a Noun, it is an Adjective and has the forms of the Relative (245).

256. Examine the following:

1. **Quis hōc fēcit?** *who did this?* (Sing.)
2. **Quī hōc fēcērunt?** *who did this?* (Plur.)
3. **Quid fēcistī?** *what did you do?* (Sing.)
4. **Quae fēcistī?** *what did you do?* (Plur.)

} All interrogative pronouns.

5. **Quī homō hōc fēcit?** *what man did this?* (Sing.)
6. **Quī hominēs hōc fēcērunt?** *what men did this?* (Plur.)
7. **Quem librum habēs?** *what book have you?*
8. **Quās puellās vīdistī?** *what girls have you seen?*
9. **Quae animālia in agrō sunt?** *what animals are in the field?*

} All interrogative adjectives.

EXERCISES.

257. I. 1. Per quōs relinquēbātur ūna via? 2. Quī lēgātōs ad Dumnorigem Aeduum mittunt? 3. Cūius reī cupiditāte adductus coniūrātiōnem fēcit? 4. Ex quā cīvitāte Orgetorigis fīliam in mātrimōnium dūxerat? 5. Quis Helvētiīs erat amīcus? 6. Ā quō haec rēs perficitur? 7. Cuī Helvētiī iter per prōvinciam dedērunt? 8. Quod opus ā Caesare perficiētur? 9. Quid pōstulās? 10. Quōrum fīnēs Helvētiī vāstāvērunt?

II. 1. Who saw this man in the fields? 2. Whose daughter did Dumnorix marry? 3. By whom had ambassadors been sent to Dumnorix? 4. For whom will these things have been accomplished? 5. From what state had the daughter of Orgetorix been married? 6. By whom have you been ruled? 7. For whom has this garden been bought? 8. In whose house had we been left? 9. To whom had you been sent? 10. In what school were you educated?

LESSON LX.

Passive Voice of CAPIŌ.

258. 1. PRESENT INDIC. PASS. of **capiō**, *I take.*

SING. — 1.	capi-**o-r**,	*I am taken* or *being taken.*
2.	cape-**ris** (or **-re**),	*you are taken* or *being taken.*
3.	capi-**tur**,	*he is taken* or *being taken.*
PLUR. — 1.	capi-**mur**,	*we are taken* or *being taken.*
2.	capi-**minī**,	*you are taken* or *being taken.*
3.	capi-**u-ntur**,	*he is taken* or *being taken.*

2. IMPERFECT INDIC. PASS. of **capiō**, *I take.*

SING. — 1.	capi-ē-**ba-r**,	*I was taken* or *being taken.*
2.	capi-ē-**bā-ris** (or **-re**),	*you were taken* or *being taken.*
3.	capi-ē-**bā-tur**,	*he was taken* or *being taken.*
PLUR. — 1.	capi-ē-**bā-mur**,	*we were taken* or *being taken.*
2.	capi-ē-**bā-minī**,	*you were taken* or *being taker.*
3.	capi-ē-**ba-ntur**,	*they were taken* or *being taken.*

3. FUTURE INDIC. PASS. of **capiō**, *I take.*

SING. — 1.	**capia-r,**	*I shall be taken.*
2.	**capiē-ris** (or **-re**),	*you will be taken.*
3.	**capiē-tur,**	*he will be taken.*
PLUR. — 1.	**capiē-mur,**	*we shall be taken.*
2.	**capiē-minī,**	*you will be taken.*
3.	**capie-ntur,**	*they will be taken.*

259. Vocabulary.

bellicōsus, -a, -um, *warlike.*
extrā (prep. with Acc.), *without, beyond.*
cōnspectus, -ūs, m. *sight, view.*
paene, adv. *almost, nearly.*
circum (prep. with Acc.), *around, near.*
angustiae, -ārum, f. *narrows, defile.*
servitūs, -ūtis, f. *slavery, servitude.*
proelium, -ī, n. *battle.*

absum,	**abesse,**	**abfuī,**	——	*I am away, am distant.*
cōnscrīb-ō,	**-scrīb-ere,**	**-scrīp-sī,**	**-scrīp-tum,**	*I enroll, levy.*
ēdūc-ō,	**-dūc-ere,**	**-dūx-ī,**	**-duc-tum,**	*I lead out, lead forth.*

EXERCISES.

260. I. 1. Hīc locus ab hostibus capiēbātur. 2. Ea mūnītiō, quae perficitur, ā Labiēnō tenētur. 3. Duae legiōnēs, quae circum Aquilēiam erant, ex hībernīs ēdūcuntur. 4. Hominēs bellicōsī nōn longē ā prōvinciā aberant. 5. Hī sunt extrā prōvinciam trāns Rhodanum. 6. Paene in cōnspectū exercitūs nostrī līberī eōrum in servitūtem dūcentur. 7. Per angustiās in Aeduōrum fīnēs vēnerant et ā Caesare recipiēbantur. 8. Exercitus in oppidum, quod est citeriōris prōvinciae extrēmum, dūcētur. 9. Hōc iter in ūlteriōrem Galliam proximum erat. 10. Ipse in Ītaliam māgnīs itineribus contendit.

II. 1. You will be taken by the enemy. 2. These things are being accomplished. 3. Many legions will be enrolled. 4. Warlike men will not be received into the province. 5. The Romans were six miles distant from the town. 6. Almost all the townsmen were killed in that battle. 7. The

children of the noblest (men) of the state are being led into slavery. 8. What legions were near Aquileia? 9. Gaul is divided into three parts, one of which the Belgians inhabit. 10. You are taken: you will be taken: we were taken.

LESSON LXI.

Passive Voice of AUDIŌ.

261. 1. PRESENT INDIC. PASS. of **audiō**, *I hear.*

SING. — 1.	audi-**o-r**,	*I am heard* or *being heard.*
2.	audi-**ris** (or **-re**),	*you are heard* or *being heard.*
3.	audi-**tur**,	*he is heard* or *being heard.*
PLUR. — 1.	audi-**mur**,	*we are heard* or *being heard.*
2.	audi-**minī**,	*you are heard* or *being heard.*
3.	audi-u-**ntur**,	*they are heard* or *being heard.*

2. IMPERFECT INDIC. PASS. of **audiō**, *I hear.*

SING. — 1.	audiē-**ba-r**,	*I was heard* or *was being heard.*
2.	audiē-**bā-ris** (or **-re**),	*you were heard* or *were being heard.*
3.	audiē-**bā-tur**,	*he was heard* or *was being heard.*
PLUR. — 1.	audiē-**bā-mur**,	*we were heard* or *were being heard.*
2.	audiē-**bā-minī**,	*you were heard* or *were being heard.*
3.	audiē-**ba-ntur**,	*they were heard* or *were being heard.*

3. FUTURE INDIC. PASS. of **audiō**, *I hear.*

SING. — 1.	audia-**r**,	*I shall be heard.*
2.	audiē-**ris** (or **-re**),	*you will be heard.*
3.	audiē-**tur**,	*he will be heard.*
PLUR. — 1.	audiē-**mur**,	*we shall be heard.*
2.	audiē-**minī**,	*you will be heard.*
3.	audie-**ntur**,	*they will be heard.*

4. PERFECT INDIC. PASS. of **audiō**, *I hear.*

SING. — 1.	audī-t-**us, -a, -um sum**,	*I have been heard* or *was heard.*
2.	audī-t-**us, -a, -um es**,	*you have been heard* or *were heard.*
3.	audī-t-**us, -a, -um est**,	*he has been heard* or *was heard.*
PLUR. — 1.	audī-t-**ī, -ae, -a sumus**,	*we have been heard* or *were heard.*
2.	audī-t-**ī, -ae, -a estis**,	*you have been heard* or *were heard.*
3.	audī-t-**ī, -ae, -a sunt**,	*they have been heard* or *were heard.*

5. PLUPERFECT INDIC. PASS. of **audiō**, *I hear.*

SING. — 1.	audī-t-us, -a, -um	eram,	*I had been heard.*
2.	audī-t-us, -a, -um	erās,	*you had been heard.*
3.	audī-t-us, -a, -um	erat,	*he had been heard.*
PLUR. — 1.	audī-t-ī, -ae, -a	erāmus,	*we had been heard.*
2.	audī-t-ī, -ae, -a	erātis,	*you had been heard.*
3.	audī-t-ī, -ae, -a	erant,	*they had been heard.*

6. FUTURE PERFECT INDIC. PASS. of **audiō**, *I hear.*

SING. — 1.	audī-t-us, -a, -um	erō,	*I shall have been heard.*
2.	audī-t-us, -a, -um	eris,	*you will have been heard.*
3.	audī-t-us, -a, -um	erit,	*he will have been heard.*
PLUR. — 1.	audī-t-ī, -ae, -a	erimus,	*we shall have been heard.*
2.	audī-t-ī, -ae, -a	eritis,	*you will have been heard.*
3.	audī-t-ī, -ae, -a	erunt,	*they will have been heard.*

262. Vocabulary.

captīvus, -ī, m. *captive.*
mercātor, -ōris, m. *merchant.*
colloquium, -ī, n. *conference.*
aciēs, -ēī, f. *line of battle.*

sci-ō,	**sci-re,**	**sci-vī,**	**sci-tum,**	*I know.*
impedi-ō,	**-pedī-re,**	**-pedī-vī,**	**-pedī-tum,**	*I hinder, prevent.*

EXERCISES.

263. I. 1. Nihil dē bellō māgnō scītum erat. 2. Rēs multae ā captīvīs audientur. 3. Mercātōrēs ā Gallīs impediēbantur. 4. Castra ā prīmā aciē mūnīta erunt. 5. Ad colloquium ā Caesare ventum est. 6. Sermōnēs hominum clārōrum lībenter (*gladly*) audiuntur. 7. Iūre nostrō nōn impediēmur. 8. Castella multa mūnīta erunt. 9. Lēgātī dē hāc rē audītī sunt. 10. Vōs ā mīlitibus nostrīs impedīminī.

II. 1. You are being heard: you were being heard: we shall be heard. 2. Nothing is known about these captives. 3. The city was fortified by the soldiers of the third

legion. 4. Many merchants were coming to the town. 5. He was not hindered in (the exercise of) his right. 6. What had been known by the captives? 7. By whom will you be prevented? 8. Our plans were known by the enemy. 9. I was not and shall not be prevented. 10. The oration, which Cicero delivered (**habeō**), was heard by many.

LESSON LXII.

264. **Infinitive Mood.**

	ACTIVE.	PASSIVE.
	FIRST CONJUGATION.	
PRES.—	amā-**re**, *to love.*	amā-**rī**, *to be loved.*
	SECOND CONJUGATION.	
PRES.—	monē-**re**, *to advise.*	monē-**rī**, *to be advised.*
	THIRD CONJUGATION.	
PRES.—	em-**e**re, *to buy.*	em-**ī**, *to be bought.*
	FOURTH CONJUGATION.	
PRES.—	audī-**re**, *to hear.*	audī-**rī**, *to be heard.*

Observe:

1. That *all* Present Active Infinitives are formed by adding **-re** to the stem.

2. That all Present Passive Infinitives change final **e** to **ī**, except in the Third Conjugation, in which **-re** is dropped and *only* **-ī** is added.

265. Examine the following:

1. Dulce est prō patriā **morī**, *it is sweet* TO DIE *for one's country.*
2. **Vincere** scīs, Hannibal, *you know how* TO CONQUER, *Hannibal.*
3. Dēbuit **patī**, *he ought* TO SUFFER.
4. Parātus **abīre**, *ready* TO DEPART.
5. **Pūgnāre** coepit, *he began* TO FIGHT.

Observe:

1. That in the first example **morī** is used as a noun in the *neuter gender* and hence **dulce** must be neuter to agree with it.

2. That in the other examples the Infinitives **vincere, patī, abīre, pūgnāre** are objects of the verbs.

266. Vocabulary.

socius, -ī, m. *ally.*
dēditiō, -ōnis, f. *surrender.*
sine (prep. with Abl.), *without.*
impedīmenta, -ōrum, n. *baggage.*
inopia, -ae, f. *want.*
ob (prep. with Acc.), *on account of.*

dēbe-ō,	**dēbē-re,**	**deb-uī,**	**dēb-itum,**	*I ought, owe.*
——	**coepi-sse,**	**coep-ī,**	——	*began* (used only in the Perf. tenses).
iube-ō,	**iubē-re,**	**iūs-sī,**	**iūs-sum,**	*I order.*

EXERCISES.

267. I. 1. Rōmānī cum sociīs pūgnāre nōn dēbuērunt. 2. Helvētiī lēgātōs dē dēditiōne ad Caesarem mittere parātī sunt. 3. Cōpiae sociōrum sine perīculō discēdere coepērunt. 4. Ob eās rēs ad impedīmenta equitēs mittere properāvit. 5. Helvētiī, omnium rērum inopiā adductī, pācem facere coāctī sunt. 6. Difficile est hominēs bellicōsōs superāre. 7. Caesar Helvētiōs suum adventum exspectāre iūssit. 8. Līberī eōrum in servitūtem ducī nōn dēbuērunt. 9. Dulce est māgnā cum virtūte pūgnāre. 10. Ōrātiōnēs Cicerōnis legere grātum est.

1. We ought to save money. 2. Caesar was prepared to defend the Aeduans. 3. It is pleasant to run in the fields. 4. The Helvetians had been compelled to leave their baggage. 5. Induced by the want of all things, they began to flee without their baggage. 6. On account of this thing, Caesar ordered the allies to hasten from the city. 7. They arrived at daybreak and began to fortify the camp. 8. It was difficult to hold back the soldiers. 9. It is best to hasten to the province across the Rhone. 10. They began to wage war with the Romans.

268. RULE.—*The Infinitive, as a neuter Noun, may be used as a Subject.*

269. RULE.—*The Infinitive may be used as the Object of verbs denoting Will, Power, Duty, Habit, Inclination, Continuance, End, and the like, with their opposites.*

Reading Lessons.

1. Ītalia.

Ītalia ab Alpibus ūsque ad fretum Siculum pertinet, inter mare Tuscum [1] et Adriāticum.[2] Multō [3] longior est quam lātior.[4] Nōbilissima regiō ob fertilitātem solī [5] caelīque salūbritātem. Plūrimōs habet portūs; neque [6] ūlla regiō tam pulchrās urbēs habet, inter quās Rōma longē praeclārissima est. Fēlīcissima in Ītaliā regiō est Campānia. Multī ibi vītiferī [7] collēs, ubi nōbilissima sunt vīna.

NOTES.

1. *Tuscan*, or *Etruscan;* also called *Tyrrhenian*, as in modern times. 2. *Adriatic.* 3. **Multō**: *much, by much*, Abl. of Diff. (165; 168). 4. **lātior**: *broad*, here translated like the positive. 5. From **solum**, which is to be distinguished from **sōlum**. 6. **neque ūlla**: *and no*, but the Latin idiom is *nor any*. 7. *vine-bearing;* Nom. **vītifer, -era, -erum**, adj.

2. Prōserpina.

Prōserpina, Cereris [1] fīlia, in Siciliā ad [2] urbem Hennam in campīs flōrēs carpēbat [3] lūdēbatque cum comitibus. Nam campī ibi flōribus pulchrīs sparsī [4] sunt. Subitō terra concussa [5] est atque Plūtō, īnferōrum [6] deus, ē terrā ēmersit [7]; ēius currum equī ātrī vehēbant. Deus Prōserpinam abdūxit āc clāmōrem puellae compressit.[8] Nunc uxor Plūtōnis atque īnferōrum rēgīna facta est.[9]

NOTES.

1. **Cereris**: *Ceres* was the goddess of Agriculture. 2. *near.* 3. *was plucking.* 4. *were strewn:* Perf. Part. from **spargō, -ere, sparsī, sparsum** (with **sunt**, Perf. Indic. Pass.); it is followed by the Abl. of Means. 5. *was shaken*, Perf. Part. from **concutiō, -ere, -cussī, -cussum** (with **est**, Perf. Indic. Pass.). 6. **īnferōrum**: *of the lower (world).* 7. *emerged:* Perf. Indic. from **ēmergō**. 8. *restrained.* 9. *was made*, i.e. *became.*

LESSON LXIII.

Indefinite Pronouns.

270. The most important indefinite Pronouns are the following:

1. *Substantive.*	**aliquis,**	**aliqua** (rare),	**aliquid,**	*somebody, someone or other.*
	quis,	**qua,**	**quid,**	
Adjective.	**aliquī,**	**aliqua,**	**aliquod,**	*some, any.*
	quī,	**quae** (or **qua**),	**quod,**	

Quis and **quī** are properly used after **sī, nisi, nē,** and **num**: elsewhere **aliquis** and **aliquī.**

2. *Substantive.*	**quĭdam,**	**quaedam,**	**quiddam,**	*a certain one.*
Adjective.	**quĭdam,**	**quaedam,**	**quoddam,**	*a certain.*
3. *Substantive.*	**quisquam,**		**quicquam,**	*any one* (at all), no Pl.
Adjective.	**ūllus,**	**ūlla,**	**ūllum,**	*any.*

Quisquam and **ūllus** are chiefly used in *Negative* sentences.

4. *Substantive.*	**quīvis,**	**quaevis,**	**quidvis,**	*anyone you please, anyone you like.*
	quīlibet,	**quaelibet,**	**quidlibet,**	
Adjective.	**quīvis,**	**quaevis,**	**quodvis,**	*any you please, any you like.*
	quīlibet,	**quaelibet,**	**quodlibet,**	
5. *Substantive.*	**quisque,**	**quaeque,**	**quidque,**	*each one.*
Adjective.	**quisque,**	**quaeque,**	**quodque,**	*each.*

Observe:

That in the indefinite Pronouns, the forms in **quis** and **quid** are *Substantive* (i.e. used alone as nouns), while those in **quī** and **quod** are *Adjective* (i.e. agree with some Noun expressed or understood).

271. Declension of **ALIQUIS** and **QUĬDAM.**

	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Sing.—Nom.	**aliquis,**	**aliqua,**	**aliquid** (adj. **aliquod**),
Gen.	**alicūius,**	**alicūius,**	**alicūius,**
Dat.	**alicuī,**	**alicuī,**	**alicuī,**
Acc.	**aliquem,**	**aliquam,**	**aliquid** (adj. **aliquod**),
Abl.	**aliquō,**	**aliquā,**	**aliquō.**

	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Plur.—Nom.	**aliquī,**	**aliquae,**	**aliqua,**
Gen.	**aliquōrum,**	**aliquārum,**	**aliquōrum,**
Dat.	**aliquibus,**	**aliquibus,**	**aliquibus,**
Acc.	**aliquōs,**	**aliquās,**	**aliqua,**
Abl.	**aliquibus,**	**aliquibus,**	**aliquibus.**
Sing.—Nom.	**quīdam,**	**quaedam,**	**quiddam (adj. quoddam),**
Gen.	**cūiusdam,**	**cūiusdam,**	**cūiusdam,**
Dat.	**cuīdam,**	**cuīdam,**	**cuīdam,**
Acc.	**quendam,**	**quandam,**	**quiddam (adj. quoddam),**
Abl.	**quōdam,**	**quādam,**	**quōdam.**
Plur.—Nom.	**quīdam,**	**quaedam,**	**quaedam,**
Gen.	**quōrundam,**	**quārundam,**	**quōrundam,**
Dat.	**quibusdam,**	**quibusdam,**	**quibusdam,**
Acc.	**quōsdam,**	**quāsdam,**	**quaedam,**
Abl.	**quibusdam,**	**quibusdam,**	**quibusdam.**

Observe:

1. That these words are compounds of **quis** or **quī.**

2. That *only* the **quis** or **quī** *part* is declined.

3. That Adjective and Substantive forms are *alike* save that the forms with **quod** are *adjective,* while those with **quid** are *substantive.*

4. That **quendam, quandam, quōrundam,** and **quārundam** change **m** to **n** before **d.**

EXERCISES.

272. I. 1. Mulier quaedam ad hunc locum vēnit. 2. Ex hōc populō dīligitur aliquī dux. 3. Neque (*nor*) ex castrīs Catilīnae quisquam omnium discēsserat. 4. Quodvīs animal cor habet. 5. Nōnne quisque sēsē dēfendit? 6. Quīdam ex Gallīs ad Caesarem fēstīnāvērunt. 7. Locum aliquem colloquiō dīligent. 8. Quemque causam dīcere nōn iūssit. 9. Nec mīlitēs quemque relinquere dēbent. 10. Cōnsilium alicūius māximē optō.

II. 1. Some place (or other) will be fortified. 2. Everyone praises himself. 3. Life is dear to every living being. 4. Nor was anyone ordered to flee. 5. Caesar sent a certain one of the horsemen. 6. War is pleasing to certain men. 7. He will not be ruled by anyone (at all). 8. You will not be blamed by anyone (you please). 9. The leader was saved by some soldier or other. 10. Caesar ordered the soldiers to come.

LESSON LXIV.

Deponent Verbs.

273. 1. Deponent Verbs have PASSIVE FORMS with ACTIVE MEANINGS.

2. The following exceptions, however, occur:

a. ACTIVE FORMS: *Future Infinitive, Present* and *Future Participles, Gerund* and *Supine.*

b. PASSIVE MEANINGS: *Always* in the *Gerundive* and *often* in the *Perfect Passive Participle.*

3. The Principal Parts of a deponent verb are:

	PRES. IND. PASS.	PRES. INF. PASS.	PERF. IND. PASS.	
1st conj.	**hort-or,**	**hortā-rī,**	**hortā-tus sum,**	*I exhort.*
2d conj.	**vere-o-r,**	**verē-rī,**	**veri-tus sum,**	*I fear.*
3d conj.	**loqu-or,**	**loqu-ī,**	**locū-tus sum,**	*I speak.*
4th conj.	**menti-or,**	**mentī-ri,**	**mentī-tus sum,**	*I tell a lie, lie.*

274. CONJUGATION OF **hortor,** *I exhort.*

1. PRESENT INDICATIVE.

SG.—1.	hort-**o-r,**	*I exhort, do exhort, am exhorting.*
2.	hortā-**ris** (**-re**),	*you exhort, do exhort, are exhorting.*
3.	hortā-**tur,**	*he exhorts, does exhort, is exhorting.*
PL.—1.	hortā-**mur,**	*we exhort, do exhort, are exhorting.*
2.	hortā-**minī,**	*you exhort, do exhort, are exhorting.*
3.	horta-**ntur,**	*they exhort, do exhort, are exhorting.*

2. Imperfect Indicative.

Sg.—1. hortā-ba-r, *I was exhorting, exhorted.*
2. hortā-bā-ris (-re), *you were exhorting, exhorted.*
3. hortā-bā-tur, *he was exhorting, exhorted.*

Pl.—1. hortā-bā-mur, *we were exhorting, exhorted.*
2. hortā-bā-minī, *you were exhorting, exhorted.*
3. hortā-ba-ntur, *they were exhorting, exhorted.*

3. Future Indicative.

Sg.—1. hortā-bo-r, *I shall exhort, shall be exhorting.*
2. hortā-be-ris (-re), *you will exhort, will be exhorting.*
3. hortā-bi-tur, *he will exhort, will be exhorting.*

Pl.—1. hortā-bi-mur, *we shall exhort, shall be exhorting.*
2. hortā-bi-minī, *you will exhort, will be exhorting.*
3. hortā-bu-ntur, *they will exhort, will be exhorting.*

4. Perfect Indicative.

Sg.—1. hortā-t-us, -a, -um sum, *I have exhorted.*
2. hortā-t-us, -a, -um es, *you have exhorted.*
3. hortā-t-us, -a, -um est, *he has exhorted.*

Pl.—1. hortā-t-ī, -ae, -a sumus, *we have exhorted.*
2. hortā-t-ī, -ae, -a estis, *you have exhorted.*
3. hortā-t-ī, -ae, -a sunt, *they have exhorted.*

5. Pluperfect Indicative.

Sg.—1. hortā-t-us, -a, -um eram, *I had exhorted.*
2. hortā-t-us, -a, -um erās, *you had exhorted.*
3. hortā-t-us, -a, -um erat, *he had exhorted.*

Pl.—1. hortā-t-ī, -ae, -a erāmus, *we had exhorted.*
2. hortā-t-ī, -ae, -a erātis, *you had exhorted.*
3. hortā-t-ī, -ae, -a erant, *they had exhorted.*

6. Future Perfect Indicative.

Sg.—1. hortā-t-us, -a, -um erō, *I shall have exhorted.*
2. hortā-t-us, -a, -um eris, *you will have exhorted.*
3. hortā-t-us, -a, -um erit, *he will have exhorted.*

Pl.—1. hortā-t-ī, -ae, -a erimus, *we shall have exhorted.*
2. hortā-t-ī, -ae, -a eritis, *you will have exhorted.*
3. hortā-t-ī, -ae, -a erunt, *they will have exhorted.*

275. Vocabulary.

cervus, -ī, m. *stag.*
rīvulus, -ī, m. *brook.*
subitō, adv. *suddenly.*
prope, adv. *near.*
canis, -is, m. and f. *dog.*
latrātus, -ūs, m. *barking.*
viātor, -ōris, m. *traveller.*
sōlitūdō, -inis, f. *solitude, wilderness.*

toll-ō,	**-ere,**	**sustul-ī,**	**subl-ātum,** *I raise, lift.*
contempl-or,	**-ārī,**	**-ātus sum,**	*I gaze at, contemplate.*
cōnspic-or,	**-ārī,**	**-ātus sum,**	*I catch sight of, see.*
arbitr-or,	**-ārī,**	**-ātus sum,**	*I think, judge, suppose.*
admīr-or,	**-ārī,**	**-ātus sum,**	*I wonder at, admire.*

EXERCISES.

276. I. 1. Dum cervus imāginem suam contemplātur in rīvulō, subitō prope canēs tollunt latrātum. 2. Duo viātōrēs asinum in sōlitūdine cōnspicātī sunt. 3. Caesar mīlitēs suōs māximē hortābitur. 4. Locī nātūram ab omnī parte contemplābantur. 5. Eadem loca nōn tūta sibī arbitrātī fuerant. 6. Tum cālōnēs perterritōs hostēs cōnspicātī sunt. 7. Quis nōn admīrātur opera Deī? 8. Nautae sīdera contemplābuntur. 9. Puerī animālium māgnitūdinem admīrātī sunt. 10. In Caesaris hortō leōnēs cōnspicābimur.

II. 1. The general was exhorting his soldiers. 2. The stag will gaze at his likeness in the brook. 3. You will admire the beautiful flowers. 4. We shall see many asses in the woods. 5. Caesar's soldiers wonder at the great size of the Germans. 6. We judge these things too difficult for us. 7. The dogs will raise a great barking. 8. By whom was this thing accomplished? 9. The travellers were gazing at the stars. 10. We see the works of God with great joy.

Reading Lesson.

Rōmānī Imperī Exōrdium.—I.

Proca, rēx Albānōrum, Numitōrem et Amūlium fīliōs habuit. Numitōrī,[1] quī nātū māior erat, rēgnum relīquit[2]: sed Amūlius frātrem pepulit[3] et rēgnāvit; eum quoque subole[4] prīvāre cōnātus est, nam Rhēam Silviam,[5] ēius fīliam, Vestae sacerdōtem fēcit, quae tamen Rōmulum et Remum geminōs ēdidit. Ubi ea rēs cōgnita est,[6] Amūlius ipsam[7] in vinculā coniēcit. Parvulōs alveō imposuit[8] āc abiēcit in Tiberim, quī tunc forte super rīpās erat effūsus[9]: sed ubi flūmen est relāpsum, eōs[10] aqua in siccō relīquit.

NOTES.

1. **Numitōrī**: Dat. after **relīquit**, placed first because the most important word in the sentence. 2. **relīquit**: remember that when no subject is expressed in Latin, we supply *he*, *she*, or *it*, or *they* in English. 3. **pepulit**: from **pellō**. 4. **subole**: *of offspring*, Abl. of Separation. 5. **Rhēam Silviam**: object Acc. of **fēcit**, while **sacerdōtem** is Pred. Acc. 6. **cōgnita est**: *had been found out;* the Perf. after **ubi**, &c., is translated by our Plupf. 7. **ipsam**: *her*. 8. From **impōnō**. 9. From **effundō**. 10. **eōs**: *them*. The object is emphatic, and hence placed before the subject **aqua**.

VESTAE SACERDŌS.

LESSON LXV.

277. Conjugation of VEREOR; LOQUOR; MENTIOR.

1. Present Indicative.

	I fear, do fear, or am fearing.	*I speak, do speak, or am speaking.*	*I lie, do lie, or am lying.*
Sg. — 1.	vere-**o-r**,	loqu-**o-r**,	menti-**o-r**,
2.	verē-**ris** (-re),	loque-**ris** (-re),	mentī-**ris** (-re),
3.	verē-**tur**.	loqui-**tur**.	mentī-**tur**.
Pl. — 1.	verē-**mur**,	loqui-**mur**,	mentī-**mur**,
2.	verē-**minĭ**,	loqui-**minĭ**,	mentī-**minĭ**,
3.	vere-**ntur**.	loquu-**ntur**.	menti-u-**ntur**.

2. Imperfect Indicative.

	I was fearing, or *feared*.	*I was speaking*, or *spoke*.	*I was lying*, or *lied*.
Sg. — 1.	verē-**ba-r**,	loquē-**ba-r**,	mentiē-**ba-r**,
2.	verē-**bă-ris** (-re),	loquē-**bă-ris** (-re),	mentiē-**bă-ris** (-re),
3.	verē-**bă-tur**.	loquē-**bă-tur**.	mentiē-**bă-tur**.
Pl. — 1.	verē-**bă-mur**,	loquē-**bă-mur**,	mentiē-**bă-mur**,
2.	verē-**bă-minĭ**,	loquē-**bă-minĭ**,	mentiē-**bă-minĭ**,
3.	verē-**ba-ntur**.	loquē-**ba-ntur**.	mentiē-**ba-ntur**.

3. Future Indicative.

	I shall fear or be fearing.	*I shall speak or be speaking.*	*I shall lie or be lying.*
Sg. — 1.	verē-**bo-r**,	loqua-**r**,	mentia-**r**,
2.	verē-**be-ris** (-re),	loquē-**ris** (-re),	mentiē-**ris** (-re),
3.	verē-**bi-tur**.	loquē-**tur**.	mentiē-**tur**.
Pl. — 1.	verē-**bi-mur**,	loquē-**mur**,	mentiē-**mur**,
2.	verē-**bi-minĭ**,	loquē-**minĭ**,	mentiē-**minĭ**,
3.	verē-**bu-ntur**.	loque-**ntur**.	mentie-**ntur**.

4. PERFECT INDICATIVE.

	I feared, did fear, or *have feared.*	*I spoke, did speak,* or *have spoken.*	*I lied, did lie,* or *have lied.*
SG.— 1.	veri-t-us **sum,**	locū-t-us **sum,**	mentī-t-us **sum,**
2.	veri-t-us **es,**	locū-t-us **es,**	mentī-t-us **es,**
3.	veri-t-us **est.**	locū-t-us **est.**	mentī-t-us **est.**
PL.— 1.	veri-t-I **sumus,**	locū-t-I **sumus,**	mentī-t-I **sumus,**
2.	veri-t-I **estis,**	locū-t-I **estis,**	mentī-t-I **estis,**
3.	veri-t-I **sunt.**	locū-t-I **sunt.**	mentī-t-I **sunt.**

5. PLUPERFECT INDICATIVE.

	I had feared.	*I had spoken.*	*I had lied.*
SG.— 1.	veri-t-us **eram,**	locū-t-us **eram,**	mentī-t-us **eram,**
2.	veri-t-us **erās,**	locū-t-us **erās,**	mentī-t-us **erās,**
3.	veri-t-us **erat.**	locū-t-us **erat.**	mentī-t-us **erat.**
PL.— 1.	veri-t-I **erāmus,**	locū-t-I **erāmus,**	mentī-t-I **erāmus,**
2.	veri-t-I **erātis,**	locū-t-I **erātis,**	mentī-t-I **erātis,**
3.	veri-t-I **erant.**	locū-t-I **erant.**	mentī-t-I **erant.**

6. FUTURE PERFECT INDICATIVE.

	I shall have feared.	*I shall have spoken.*	*I shall have lied.*
SG.— 1.	veri-t-us **erō,**	locū-t-us **erō,**	mentī-t-us **erō,**
2.	veri-t-us **eris,**	locū-t-us **eris,**	mentī-t-us **eris,**
3.	veri-t-us **erit.**	locū-t-us **erit.**	mentī-t-us **erit.**
PL.— 1.	veri-t-I **erimus,**	locū-t-I **erimus,**	mentī-t-I **erimus,**
2.	veri-t-I **eritis,**	locū-t-I **eritis,**	mentī-t-I **eritis,**
3.	veri-t-I **erunt.**	locū-t-I **erunt.**	mentī-t-I **erunt.**

278. Examine the following :

1. Quŏ ūsque abūtēre **patientiā nostrā**? *how long will you abuse* OUR PATIENCE ?

2. **Lūx, quā** fruimur, ā Deŏ nōbīs datur, *the light,* WHICH *we enjoy, is given to us by God.*

3. Funguntur **officiō,** *they acquit themselves* OF A DUTY.

Observe :

That the words in black type are in the Ablative in Latin, though the direct object of the verb in English.

279. Vocabulary.

patientia, -ae, f. *patience.*
officium, -i, n. *duty.*
rēs frūmentāria, reī frūmentāriae, f. *provisions.*
lūx, lūcis, f. *light* (no Gen. Plur.).

ūtor,	**ūt-ī,**	**ūs-us sum,**	*I use.*
fruor,	**fru-ī,**	**frūct-us sum,**	*I enjoy.*
fungor,	**fung-ī,**	**func-tus sum,**	*I perform, acquit myself of.*
potior,	**pot-īrī,**	**pot-ītus sum,**	*I get possession of.*
vescor,	**vesc-ī,**	———	*I eat.*
proficiscor,	**proficīs-cī,**	**profec-tus sum,**	*I set out.*

EXERCISES.

280. I. 1. Patientiā tuā non abūtēmur. 2. Fīlius cōnsulis officiō suō nōn fūnctus erat. 3. Numidae lacte vescēbantur. 4. Mīlitēs nōn hostem verēbantur, sed angustiās itineris et māgnitūdinem silvārum. 5. Sine ūllō volnere victōriā potītī sunt. 6. Nostrī impedīmentīs hostium potītī sunt. 7. Caesar multīs cum mīlitibus ad prōvinciam profectus est. 8. Reī frūmentāriae causā in urbe diēs multōs mānsērunt. 9. Eō frūmentō nōn ūtentur. 10. Omnibus in vītā commodīs ūnā cum aliquō fruimur.

II. 1. We enjoy the light of day. 2. Soldiers do not always perform their duty. 3. Caesar's soldiers set out on the sixth day. 4. They greatly feared the journey through the enemy's country. 5. The merchants admired the large stature of the Germans. 6. We shall not use the provisions which the Aeduans sent. 7. Divitiacus spoke in behalf of (**prō** *with Abl.*) these. 8. Good boys do not lie. 9. The enemy will not get possession of our camp. 10. It is not easy to use victory rightly.

281. RULE.—*The Deponent Verbs* **ūtor, abūtor, fruor, fungor, potior,** *and* **vescor** *take the Ablative.*

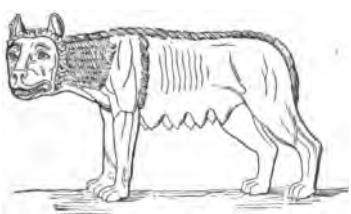
Reading Lesson.

Rōmānī Imperī Exōrdium.—II.

Vāstae tum in eīs locīs sōlitūdinēs erant. Lupa, ut fāmā trāditum est,[1] ad vāgītum accurrit, īnfantēs linguā lambit, ūbera eōrum ōrī[2] admōvit, mātremque sē[3] gessit. Ubi lupa saepius[4] ad parvulōs velutī[5] ad catulōs revertēbātur, Faustulus, pāstor rēgius, rem animadvertit, āc eōs tulit in casam et Accae Lārentiae, cōniugī, dedit ēducandōs.[6] Adultī[7] deinde hī inter pāstōrēs prīmō lūdicrīs certāminibus virēs[8] auxēre, deinde vēnandō[9] saltūs peragrāre et latrōnēs[10] ā rapīnā pecorum arcēre coepērunt.

NOTES.

1. **ut ... trāditum est**: *as it is handed down by tradition;* **ut** with the Indic. is translated by *as, how,* or *when.* 2. **ōrī,** Dat. after **admōvit**: *brought her dugs near to their mouth.* 3. **sē**: object of **gessit,** while **mātrem** is Pred. Acc.; transl. *played the part of a mother.* 4. **saepius**: *again and again.* 5. **velutī**: *as if.* 6. **ēducandōs**: *to be educated,* Gerundive (404), agreeing with **eōs.** 7. **Adultī** (Perf. Pass. Part. from **adolēscō**): *when grown,* agrees with **hī,** *these.* 8. **virēs**: object of **auxēre** (= **auxērunt**). 9. **vēnandō**: *while hunting.* 10. **latrōnēs**: object of **arcēre.**



LUPA.

LESSON LXVI.

Semi-Deponent Verbs. Genitive Case.

282. 1. Four verbs form their Perfect tenses only as deponents.

aude-ō,	**audē-re,**	**au-sus sum,**	*I dare.*
fīd-ō,	**fīd-ere,**	**fī-sus sum,**	*I trust.*
gaude-ō,	**gaudē-re,**	**gāv-īsus sum,**	*I rejoice, am glad.*
sole-ō,	**solē-re,**	**sol-itus sum,**	*I am accustomed, am used.*

2. Semi-deponents, so called because they are half active and half passive in form, but only active in meaning, are conjugated like any other verb of the second or third conjugation.

283. Examine the following:

1. Vir **māgnae auctōritātis,** *a man* OF GREAT INFLUENCE.
2. Puer **sēdecim annōrum,** *a boy* OF SIXTEEN YEARS, i.e. *sixteen years old.*
3. Fossa **quīndecim pedum,** *a ditch* OF FIFTEEN FEET, i.e. *fifteen feet wide.*
4. Nōmen **māgnā glōriā,** *a name* OF GREAT GLORY, i.e. *a glorious name.*
5. **Statūrā** fuit **humilī,** *he was* (a man) OF LOW STATURE.

Observe:

That the expressions in black type denote a quality or description and are either in the Ablative or Genitive, and are always with an attribute.

284. Vocabulary.

audācia, -ae, f. *boldness, audacity.*
grātia, -ae, f. *influence.*
incrēdibilis, -e, *incredible.*
arrogantia, -ae, f. *arrogance.*
mōrēs, mōrum, m. *character* (Pl. of **mōs**).
ingēns, -entis, *huge, vast, large.*

pertine-ō, pertinē-re, pertin-uī, ——, *I reach, extend.*

EXERCISES.

285. I. 1. Mīlitēs cōnsulis proficīscī nōn ausī sunt. 2. Caesar, virtūtis summae vir, nēminem veritus est. 3. Hostēs mīlitēs Rōmānōs vidēre nōn gaudent. 4. Dumnorīx māgnā apud plēbem grātiā erat. 5. Puerī mōribus bonīs ā magistrō laudārī solent. 6. Ariovistus fuit audāciae summae. 7. Germānī māgnitūdine corporum incrēdibilī fuērunt. 8. Bellum ingēns apud Helvētiōs oritur. 9. Hominēs arrogantiae māgnae amārī nōn solent. 10. Caesar fossam quīndecim pedum dūxit.

II. 1. Caesar's name was glorious. 2. We rejoice to see men of good character. 3. Ariovistus, a man of the greatest arrogance, was accustomed to act cruelly. 4. The Belgians extend to the lower part of the Rhine. 5. The Germans were accustomed to contend with the Gauls in almost daily battles. 6. The enemy did not dare to storm the city. 7. The boy was sixteen years old, but of low stature. 8. Cicero was of very great influence among the common people. 9. The Romans rejoiced to wage great wars. 10. It is pleasant to get possession of much power.

286. RULE.—*Quality is expressed by the Genitive or Ablative, but always with an Attribute.*

LESSON LXVII.

Conjugation of AMŌ Continued. Final Subjunctive.

287. SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD OF **amō**.

	ACTIVE.		PASSIVE.	
	PRESENT TENSE.			
SG.—1.	**ame-m,**	*I may love.*	**ame-r,**	*I may be loved.*
2.	**amē-s,**	*you may love.*	**amē-ris (-re),**	*you may be loved.*
3.	**ame-t,**	*he may love.*	**amē-tur,**	*he may be loved.*
PL.—1.	**amē-mus,**	*we may love.*	**amē-mur,**	*we may be loved.*
2.	**amē-tis,**	*you may love.*	**amē-minī,**	*you may be loved.*
3.	**ame-nt,**	*they may love.*	**ame-ntur,**	*they may be loved.*

	ACTIVE.	PASSIVE.
	Imperfect Tense.	
Sg.—1.	amā-re-m, *I might love.*	amā-re-r, *I might be loved.*
2.	amā-rē-s, *you might love.*	amā-rē-ris (-re), *you might be loved.*
3.	amā-re-t, *he might love.*	amā-rē-tur, *he might be loved.*
Pl.—1.	amā-rē-mus, *we might love.*	amā-rē-mur, *we might be loved.*
2.	amā-rē-tis, *you might love.*	amā-rē-minī, *you might be loved.*
3.	amā-re-nt, *they might love.*	amā-re-ntur, *they might be loved.*
	Perfect Tense.	
Sg.—1.	amā-v-eri-m, *I may have loved.*	amā-t-us, -a, -um sim, *I may have been loved.*
2.	amā-v-eri-s, *you may have loved.*	amā-t-us, -a, -um sīs, *you may have been loved.*
3.	amā-v-eri-t, *he may have loved.*	amā-t-us, -a, -um sit, *he may have been loved.*
Pl.—1.	amā-v-eri-mus, *we may have loved.*	amā-t-ī, -ae, -a sīmus, *we may have been loved.*
2.	amā-v-eri-tis, *you may have loved.*	amā-t-ī, -ae, -a sītis, *you may have been loved.*
3.	amā-v-eri-nt, *they may have loved.*	amā-t-ī, -ae, -a sint, *they may have been loved.*
	Pluperfect Tense.	
Sg.—1.	amā-v-isse-m, *I might have loved.*	amā-t-us, -a, -um essem, *I might have been loved.*
2.	amā-v-issē-s, *you might have loved.*	amā-t-us, -a, -um essēs, *you might have been loved.*
3.	amā-v-isse-t, *he might have loved.*	amā-t-us, -a, -um esset, *he might have been loved.*
Pl.—1.	amā-v-issē-mus, *we might have loved.*	amā-t-ī, -ae, -a essēmus, *we might have been loved.*
2.	amā-v-issē-tis, *you might have loved.*	amā-t-ī, -ae, -a essētis, *you might have been loved.*
3.	amā-v-isse-nt, *they might have loved.*	amā-t-ī, -ae, -a essent, *they might have been loved.*

288. Examine the following:

1. PRINCIPAL TENSES.

Pres.	**veniunt,**	*they come,*	**ut rogent,** *that (in order that) they may ask* or TO ASK.
Pure Perf.	**vēnērunt,**	*they* HAVE *come,*	
Fut.	**venient,**	*they will come,*	**nē pūgnent,** *that (in order that) they may* NOT *fight,* NOT TO FIGHT.
Fut. Perf.	**vēnerint,**	*they will have come,*	

2. HISTORICAL TENSES.

Imperf.	**veniēbant,**	*they were coming,*	**ut rogārent,** *that (in order that) they might ask,* TO ASK.
Pluperf.	**vēnerant,**	*they had come,*	
Hist. Perf.	**vēnērunt,**	*they came* or *did come,*	**nē pūgnārent,** *that (in order that) they might* NOT *fight,* NOT TO FIGHT.

Observe:

1. That **ut rogent** denotes the *Purpose* of coming and is the *Present Subjunctive* after the *Principal tenses.*

2. That **ut rogārent** denotes the *Purpose* of coming and is the *Imperfect Subjunctive* after the *Historical tenses.*

3. That when the *Latin Perfect* is translated by *have,* it is a Principal tense.

4. That a *positive* sentence of *Purpose* is introduced by **ut,** *that,* and a *negative* sentence by **nē,** *that not, lest.*

5. That the Subjunctive in a Purpose sentence may be translated by our Infinitive, *but the Latin Infinitive cannot denote Purpose.*

289. **Vocabulary.**

ut (final conj.), *that, in order that.*
nē (final conj.), *that not, in order that not, lest.*
perfacilis, -e, *easy.*
prō (prep. with Abl.), *in proportion to, in behalf of.*

persuāde-ō,	**-ēre,**	**-suās-ī,**	**-suā-sum,**	*I persuade* (with Dat.).
praest-ō,	**-āre,**	**-stit-ī,**	**-sti-tum,**	*I excel, surpass* (with Dat.).
bell-ō,	**-āre,**	**-āvī,**	**-ātum,**	*I wage war.*

EXERCISES.

290. I. 1. Mīlitēs imperātōrī persuādent ut pūgnet. 2. Imperātor mīlitibus persuāsit nē pūgnārent. 3. Magister dīscipulīs suīs persuādēbat ut omnibus praestārent. 4. Helvētiī Rōmānōs rogāvērunt nē bellārent. 5. Mīlitēs omnēs semper optāvērunt ut ā ducibus amentur. 6. Perfacile est hōc facere. 7. Prō multitūdine hominum et glōriā bellī angustōs fīnēs habent. 8. Orgetorīx cīvitātī persuādēbit ut pūgnet. 9. Oppidānī eum prohibuerint nē oppidum oppūgnet. 10. Dux fūgerat ne volnerārētur.

II. 1. The soldiers have persuaded the generals to fight. 2. The Helvetians begged us not to storm the town. 3. The master wishes his pupils to excel all in virtue. 4. Caesar exhorted his soldiers to fight bravely. 5. The soldiers desired to ride into the town. 6. The soldiers had fought in order that their country might be saved. 7. We desire to be praised. 8. You asked to be free. 9. I remained in order that I might not be conquered. 10. They came in order that they might be praised.

291. RULE.—*Purpose is expressed by the Subjunctive with* **ut** *or* **nē**, *the Present Subjunctive being used after Principal tenses, the Imperfect after Historical tenses.*

Reading Lesson.

Rōmānī Imperī Exōrdium.—III.

Quā rē[1] ubi eīs īnsidiātī sunt latrōnēs, Remus captus est, Rōmulus vī sē dēfendit. Tum Faustulus necessitāte compulsus[2] indicāvit Rōmulō[3] omnia.[4] Rōmulus statim pāstōrēs armāvit āc Albam[5] properāvit.

Intereā Remum[6] latrōnēs ad Amūlium rēgem perdūxērunt quod,[7] ut accūsant, Numitōris agrōs īnfēstāre solitus

est: itaque Remus ā rēge Numitōrī ad [8] supplicium trāditus est; at ubi Numitor, adulēscentis vultum cōnsīderāns,[9] aetātem minimēque [10] servīlem indolem comparābat, statim nepōtem āgnōvit. Nam Remus ōris līneāmentīs [11] erat mātrī [12] simillimus, aetāsque expositiōnis temporibus [13] congruēbat. Ea rēs dum Numitōris animum anxium [14] tenet, repente Rōmulus supervenit,[15] frātrem līberat,[15] interēmit [15] Amūlium, avum Numitōrem in rēgnum restituit.[15]

NOTES.

1. **Quā rē**: *wherefore.* 2. **necessitāte compulsus**: *driven by necessity;* **compulsus** (from **compel-lō**) is Perf. Pass. Part. agreeing with **Faustulus.** 3. **Rōmulō**: Dat. after **indicāvit.** 4. **omnia**: *all things;* the neuter adj. is often used as a noun instead of **rēs** with an adjective. 5. **Albam**: *to Alba,* Acc. of Place Whither. With names of Towns and Small Islands no Preposition is used to denote Motion. 6. **Remum**: note the position of the object **Remum** before the subject **latrōnēs.** 7. **quod . . . solitus est**: *because he was accustomed.* 8. **ad**: *for.* 9. **cōnsīderāns**: *considering,* Pres. Part. 10. **minimēque servīlem**: *and not at all servile.* 11. **ōris līneāmentīs**: *in the outlines of his face.* 12. **mātrī**: Dat. after **simillimus,** Superl. of **similis.** 13. **temporibus**: *with the time,* Dat. after **con** in **congruēbat.** 14. **anxium**: Pred. Acc. after **tenet** and agreeing with **animum.** 15. Note the frequent omission of the conjunction in Latin.

AUSPICIA.

LESSON LXVIII.

Conjugation of MONEŌ Continued. Consecutive Subjunctive.

292. SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD OF **moneō**, *I advise.*

	ACTIVE.	PASSIVE.
	PRESENT TENSE.	
SG.—1.	monea-m, *I may advise.*	monea-r, *I may be advised.*
2.	monēā-s, *you may advise.*	monēā-ris (-re), *you may be advised.*
3.	monea-t, *he may advise.*	monēā-tur, *he may be advised.*
PL.—1.	monēā-mus, *we may advise.*	monēā-mur, *we may be advised.*
2.	monēā-tis, *you may advise.*	monēā-minī, *you may be advised.*
3.	monea-nt, *they may advise.*	monea-ntur, *they may be advised.*
	IMPERFECT TENSE.	
SG.—1.	monē-re-m, *I might advise.*	monē-re-r, *I might be advised.*
2.	monē-rē-s, *you might advise.*	monē-rē-ris (-re), *you might be advised.*
3.	monē-re-t, *he might advise.*	monē-rē-tur, *he might be advised.*
PL.—1.	monē-rē-mus, *we might advise.*	monē-rē-mur, *we might be advised.*
2.	monē-rē-tis, *you might advise.*	monē-rē-minī, *you might be advised.*
3.	monē-re-nt, *they might advise.*	monē-re-ntur, *they might be advised.*
	PERFECT TENSE.	
SG.—1.	mon-u-eri-m, *I may have advised.*	moni-t-us, -a, -um sim, *I may have been advised.*
2.	mon-u-eri-s, *you may have advised.*	moni-t-us, -a, -um sīs, *you may have been advised.*
3.	mon-u-eri-t, *he may have advised.*	moni-t-us, -a, -um sit, *he may have been advised.*

	ACTIVE.	PASSIVE.
PL.—1.	**mon-u-eri-mus,** *we may have advised.*	**moni-t-I, -ae, -a sīmus,** *we may have been advised.*
2.	**mon-u-eri-tis,** *you may have advised.*	**moni-t-I, -ae, -a sītis,** *you may have been advised.*
3.	**mon-u-eri-nt,** *they may have advised.*	**moni-t-I, -ae, -a sint,** *they may have been advised.*

PLUPERFECT TENSE.

SG.—1.	**mon-u-isse-m,** *I might have advised.*	**moni-t-us, -a, -um essem,** *I might have been advised.*
2.	**mon-u-issē-s,** *you might have advised.*	**moni-t-us, -a, -um essēs,** *you might have been advised.*
3.	**mon-u-isse-t,** *he might have advised.*	**moni-t-us, -a, -um esset,** *he might have been advised.*
PL.—1.	**mon-u-issē-mus,** *we might have advised.*	**moni-t-I, -ae, -a essēmus,** *we might have been advised.*
2.	**mon-u-issē-tis,** *you might have advised.*	**moni-t-I, -ae, -a essētis,** *you might have been advised.*
3.	**mon-u-isse-nt,** *they might have advised.*	**moni-t-I, -ae, -a essent,** *they might have been advised.*

293. Examine the following:

1. PRINCIPAL TENSES.

Pres.	**tam bonus est,**	*he is so good,*	**ut eum amem,** *that I am loving* or *love him.*
Pure Perf.	**tam bonus fuit,**	*he has been so good,*	**ut eum diū amāverim,** *that I have long loved him.*

2. HISTORICAL TENSES.

Impf.	**tam bonus erat,**	*he was so good,*	**ut eum amārem,** *that I was loving* or *loved him.*
Hist. Perf.	**tam bonus fuit,**	*he was so good,*	**ut eum diū amāvissem,** *that I had long loved him.*
Plupf.	**tam bonus fuerat,**	*he had been so good,*	

Observe:

1. That **ut amem** and **ut amāverim** denote the *Result* of the goodness, and that after *Principal tenses* the *Present Subjunctive* is used for *Continued action* and the *Perfect Subjunctive* for *Completed action.*

2. That **ut amārem** and **ut amāvissem** denote the *Result* of the goodness, and that after *Historical tenses* the *Imperfect Subjunctive* is used for *Continued action* and the *Pluperfect Subjunctive* for *Completed action.*

3. That the Latin Subjunctive in a Consecutive sentence is usually translated by the English Indicative.

294. Vocabulary.

ut (positive consecutive conj.), *that, so that.*
contentiō, -ōnis, f. *contest, strife.*
auspicium, -i, n. *augury* (from birds).—p. 139.
tam, adv. *so.*
ut nōn (negative consecutive conj.), *that not, so that not.*
novus, -a, -um, *new.*
voltur, -uris, m. *vulture.*
tantus, -a, -um, *so great.*

adhibe-ō,	**-ēre,**	**-hib-uī,**	**-hib-itum,**	*I consult* (of auspices).
inrīde-ō,	**-ēre,**	**-rīs-i,**	**-rī-sum,**	*I laugh at, ridicule.*

EXERCISES.

295. I. 1. Accidit ut Rōmulus et Remus auspicia adhibērent. 2. Tanta inter eōs erat contentiō ut Remus frātrem suum inrīdēret. 3. Puer tam malus est ut magister eum nōn laudāverit. 4. Mīlitēs tam fortiter pūgnant ut oppidum dēleant. 5. Rōmulus duodecim volturēs vīdit ut nōmen novae urbī daret. 6. Puella tam bonīs mōribus est ut ab omnibus magistrīs laudāta sit. 7. Accidit ut nepōtem nōn videat. 8. Nōmen Rōmulī tam clārum est ut id memoriā semper teneāmus. 9. Caesar tantae virtūtis erat ut hostēs eum timērent. 10. Cōnsul rem pūblicam tam sapienter administrāvit ut ea servāta sit.

II. 1. Caesar's soldiers fought so bravely that they took the town by storm. 2. It happened that the auguries had not been consulted. 3. So great is the strength of virtue that we praise it in an enemy. 4. Caesar ordered the soldiers not to hurl any darts. 5. The journey was so difficult that the general recalled the soldiers. 6. The citizens

fought so fiercely that the town was saved. 7. I am not such a one (**is**) as to use this money. 8. So great fear seized the army that it terrified the minds of all. 9. So great was the storm that many ships were destroyed. 10. They came in order to see.

296. RULE.—*Result is expressed by the Subjunctive with* **ut**, that, *or* **ut nōn**, that not.

LESSON LXIX.

Conjugation of EMŌ Continued. CUM Historical and CUM Causal.

297. SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD OF **emō**, *I buy.*

	ACTIVE.	PASSIVE.
	PRESENT TENSE.	
SG.—1.	ema-m, *I may buy.*	ema-r, *I may be bought.*
2.	emā-s, *you may buy.*	emā-ris (-re), *you may be bought.*
3.	ema-t, *he may buy.*	emā-tur, *he may be bought.*
PL.—1.	emā-mus, *we may buy.*	emā-mur, *we may be bought.*
2.	emā-tis, *you may buy.*	emā-minī, *you may be bought.*
3.	ema-nt, *they may buy.*	ema-ntur, *they may be bought.*
	IMPERFECT TENSE.	
SG.—1.	eme-re-m, *I might buy.*	eme-re-r, *I might be bought.*
2.	eme-rē-s, *you might buy.*	eme-rē-ris(-re), *you might be bought.*
3.	eme-re-t, *he might buy.*	eme-rē-tur, *he might be bought.*
PL.—1.	eme-rē-mus, *we might buy.*	eme-rē-mur, *we might be bought.*
2.	eme-rē-tis, *you might buy.*	eme-rē-minī, *you might be bought.*
3.	eme-re-nt, *they might buy.*	eme-re-ntur, *they might be bought.*
	PERFECT TENSE.	
SG.—1.	ēm-eri-m, *I may have bought.*	ēmp-t-us, -a, -um sim, *I may have been bought.*
2.	ēm-eri-s, *you may have bought.*	ēmp-t-us, -a, -um sīs, *you may have been bought.*
3.	ēm-eri-t, *he may have bought.*	ēmp-t-us, -a, -um sit, *he may have been bought.*

	ACTIVE.	PASSIVE.
PL.—1.	ēm-**eri-mus**, *we may have bought.*	ēmp-t-**I, -ae, -a sīmus**, *we may have been bought.*
2.	ēm-**eri-tis**, *you may have bought.*	ēmp-t-**I, -ae, -a sītis**, *you may have been bought.*
3.	ēm-**eri-nt**, *they may have bought.*	ēmp-t-**I, -ae, -a sint**, *they may have been bought.*

PLUPERFECT TENSE.

SG.—1.	ēm-**isse-m**, *I might have bought.*	ēmp-t-**us, -a, -um essem**, *I might have been bought.*
2.	ēm-**issē-s**, *you might have bought.*	ēmp-t-**us, -a, -um essēs**, *you might have been bought.*
3.	ēm-**isse-t**, *he might have bought.*	ēmp-t-**us, -a, -um esset**, *he might have been bought.*
PL.—1.	ēm-**issē-mus**, *we might have bought.*	ēmp-t-**I, -ae, -a essēmus**, *we might have been bought.*
2.	ēm-**issē-tis**, *you might have bought.*	ēmp-t-**I, -ae, -a essētis**, *you might have been bought.*
3.	ēm-**isse-nt**, *they might have bought.*	ēmp-t-**I, -ae, -a essent**, *he might have been bought.*

298. Examine the following:

1. Agēsilāus, **cum** ex Aegyptō **reverterētur**, dēcessit, *Agesilaus died,* AS he WAS RETURNING *from Egypt.*

2. **Cum** Caesar Ancōnam **occupāvisset**, urbem relīquimus, WHEN *Caesar* HAD OCCUPIED *Ancōna, I (we) left the city.*

Observe:

That the clauses with **cum** (called *Historical*) characterize the circumstances under which the actions took place, and that only the *Imperfect and Pluperfect Subjunctive* are used, and that the Subjv. is translated like the Indic.

299. Examine the following:

1. Quae **cum** ita **sint**, veniam, SINCE *these things* ARE *so, I shall come.*

2. Quae **cum** ita **essent**, vēnī, SINCE *these things* WERE *so, I came.*

3. Aeduōs accūsat, **cum** bellum **suscēperint**, *he blames the Aeduans,* SINCE (*because*) *they* HAVE UNDERTAKEN *the war.*

4. **Cum** haec **fēcisset**, interfectus est, SINCE *he* HAD DONE *this, he was killed.*

Observe :

That the clauses with **cum** (called *Causal*) denote the cause of the action, and that here *any tense* of the Subjunctive may be used, and that the Subjunctive is translated like the Indicative.

300. Vocabulary.

prior, -ōris (comp. of **prae**), *first (of two), former.*
saltus, -ūs, m. *leap, jump.*
moenia, -um, n. pl. *walls, city walls.*
tūtēla, -ae, f. *defence, protection.*
īrātus, -a, -um, *angry, in anger.*
ubi (adv. of Place and Time), *where, when.*

expōn-ō,	**-ere,**	**-pos-uī,**	**-pos-itum,**	*I expose.*
cond-ō,	**-ere,**	**-did-ī,**	**-di-tum,**	*I build.*
ori-or,	**or-īrī,**	**or-tus sum,**		*I arise, start, begin.*
dēcern-ō,	**-ere,**	**-crēv-ī,**	**-crē-tum,**	*I decide, determine.*
suffici-ō,	**-ere,**	**-fēc-ī,**	**-fec-tum,**	*I suffice.*
vide-or,	**-ērī,**	**vī-sus sum,**		*I seem, appear.*
trāici-ō,	**-ere,**	**-iēc-ī,**	**-iec-tum,**	*I throw across, cross over.*
trānsili-ō,	**-īre,**	**sil-uī,**	———	*I leap across, jump over.*

EXERCISES.

301. I. 1. Cum Rōmulus et Remus urbem conderent, Rōmulus īrātus Remum interfēcit. 2. Cum Remus prior sex volturēs vīdisset, ad Rōmulum vēnit. 3. Cum contentiō orta esset, auspicia dēcrēvērunt adhibēre. 4. Rōmulus īrātus esse vidēbātur, cum Remus saltū moenia trāiēcisset. 5. Urbs ā Rōmulō et Remō in eīsdem locīs, ubi expositī erant, condita est. 6. Rōmulus tam īrātus erat, ut nēmŏ alius ēius moenia trānsilīret. 7. Frātrēs mūrum condunt ut ad novae urbis tūtēlam sufficiat. 8. Rōmulus cum pāstōrēs armāvisset, ad suum frātrem fēstīnāvit. 9. Amūlius, cum frātrem pepulisset, rēgnāvit. 10. Cum Rhēam Silviam in vincula coniēcisset, parvulōs abiēcit in Tiberim.

II. 1. When Romulus had built a city, he called it Rome. 2. Romulus was angry, since Remus had laughed at him. 3. So angry was Romulus that he killed Remus, his brother. 4. When Faustulus saw the boys, he took them into his

hut. 5. His wife brought them up in order that they might defend the flocks. 6. The boys were so strong that, when Remus was captured, Romulus freed him. 7. Since the wall seems to be so strong, it will suffice. 8. As we were coming into the city, we saw many soldiers. 9. Since you have come, I shall remain. 10. Romulus slew Remus, that he might get possession of the city alone.

302. RULE.—**Cum** (*Historical*), when *or* as, *defining the circumstances of an action, takes the Subjunctive, Imperfect or Pluperfect tense; but* **Cum** (*Temporal*), when, *defining the time of an action, takes the Indicative.*

303. RULE.—**Cum** (*Causal*), as *or* since, *takes the Subjunctive* (*any tense*).

Reading Lesson.

Rōmānī Imperī Exōrdium.—IV.

Deinde Rōmulus et Remus urbem[1] in eīsdem locīs, ubi expositī[2] ubique ēducātī erant, condidērunt; sed, cum[3] esset orta inter eōs contentiō dē nōmine atque imperiō novae urbis, auspicia dēcrēvērunt adhibēre. Remus prior sex volturēs, Rōmulus posteā duodecim vīdit. Sīc Rōmulus, victor auguriō, urbem Rōmam[4] vocāvit. Ad[5] novae urbis tūtēlam sufficere vāllum[6] vidēbātur. Cūius[7] angustiās inrīdēns[8] cum Remus saltū id trāiēcisset, eum īrātus Rōmulus interfēcit, hīs[9] increpāns[10] verbīs: "Sīc deinde, quīcumque alius[11] trānsiliet moenia mea." Ita sōlus potītus est imperiō Rōmulus.

NOTES.

1. **urbem**: object of **condidērunt**. Note the position of the verb, for relative and adverbial clauses are frequently thus inserted in the principal clause. 2. **expositī**: **erant** belongs with this verb also. 3. **cum . . . contentiō**: *since dispute had arisen, &c.*; **cum** Causal, §§ 299 and 303.

4. **Rōmam**: Pred. Acc., while **urbem** is Object Acc. 5. **Ad**: *for.* 6. **vāllum**: subject of **vidēbātur.** 7. **Cūius . . . trānīcisset**: *And when Remus, laughing at its narrowness, had crossed it with a bound.* **Cūius**: Gen. of **quī**, which at the beginning of a sentence is translated by **et** and a Dem. or Pers. Pron. **cum**: Causal, though translated by *when;* see note 3. 8. **inrīdēns**: Pres. Part. from **inrīdeō** (294). 9. **hīs . . . verbīs**: *upbraiding him with these words.* 10. **increpāns**: Pres. Part. from **increpō.** 11. **quīcumque alius**: *whoever else.*

LESSON LXX.

Conjugation of CAPIŌ Continued. Indirect Question.

304. SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD OF **capiō**, *I take.*

	ACTIVE.		PASSIVE.	
	PRESENT TENSE.			
SG.—1.	capi**a-m**,	*I may take.*	capi**a-r**,	*I may be taken.*
2.	capi**ā-s**,	*you may take.*	capi**ā-ris** (**-re**),	*you may be taken.*
3.	capi**a-t**,	*he may take.*	capi**ā-tur**,	*he may be taken.*
PL.—1.	capi**ā-mus**,	*we may take.*	capi**ā-mur**,	*we may be taken.*
2.	capi**ā-tis**,	*you may take.*	capi**ā-minī**,	*you may be taken.*
3.	capi**a-nt**,	*they may take.*	capi**a-ntur**,	*they may be taken.*
	IMPERFECT TENSE.			
SG.—1.	cap**-e-re-m**,	*I might take.*	cap**-e-re-r**,	*I might be taken.*
2.	cap**-e-rē-s**,	*you might take.*	cap**-e-rē-ris** (**-re**),	*you might be taken.*
3.	cap**-e-re-t**,	*he might take.*	cap**-e-rē-tur**,	*he might be taken.*
PL.—1.	cap**-e-rē-mus**,	*we might take.*	cap**-e-rē-mur**,	*we might be taken.*
2.	cap**-e-rē-tis**,	*you might take.*	cap**-e-rē-minī**,	*you might be taken.*
3.	cap**-e-re-nt**,	*they might take.*	cap**-e-re-ntur**,	*they might be taken.*

The other Subjunctive tenses of **capiō** are regular.

305. Examine the following:

1. PRINCIPAL TENSES.

Pres.	**rogat,**	*he asks,*	**quid faciās,** *what you do* or *are doing.*
Pure Perf.	**rogāvit,**	*he* HAS *asked,*	**quid fēceris,** *what you have done, have been doing, were doing, did.*
Fut.	**rogābit,**	*he will ask,*	
Fut. Perf.	**rogāverit,**	*he will have asked,*	

2. HISTORICAL TENSES.

Impf.	**rogābat,**	*he was asking,*	**quid facerēs,** *what you were doing* or *did.*
Plupf.	**rogāverat,**	*he had asked,*	**quid fēcissēs,** *what you had done* or *had been doing.*
Hist. Perf.	**rogāvit,**	*he asked,*	

Observe:

1. That **quid faciās, quid fēceris, quid facerēs,** and **quid fēcissēs** denote a question that is dependent upon some verb: e.g. **quid facis?** *what are you doing?* (Direct Question); **rogat quid faciās,** *he asks what you are doing* (Indirect Question).

2. That after *Principal tenses* the *Present Subjunctive* is used for *Continued action* and the *Perfect Subjunctive* for *Completed action.* Cf. 293, 1.

3. That after *Historical tenses* the *Imperfect Subjunctive* is used for *Continued action* and the *Pluperfect Subjunctive* for *Completed action.* Cf. 293, 2.

4. That the Subjunctive is translated by the English Indicative.

306. Vocabulary.

lūcus, -ī, m. *a wood, grove.*
statim, adv. *immediately, forthwith.*
vērō, adv. (post-positive), *in truth:* conj. *but, however.*
societās, -ātis, f. *alliance.*
asylum, -ī, n. *place of refuge, asylum.*
mīrus, -a, -um, *wonderful, amazing.*
vīcīnus, -a, -um, *neighboring, near.*
cōnūbium, -ī, n. *marriage, right of marriage.*

dēsum,	**dēesse,**	**dēfuī,**		*I want, lack.*
cōnfugi-ō,	**-ere,**	**-fūg-ī,**	——	*I flee, take refuge.*
aperi-ō,	**-īre,**	**-er-uī,**	**-ertum,**	*I open, disclose.*

EXERCISES.

307. I. 1. Urbī Rōmulī dēerant incolae, ut lūcum asȳlum faceret. 2. Multī rogāvērunt ubi Rōmulus asȳlum fēcisset. 3. Gentēs vīcīnae statim rogāvērunt cūr ipse populusque uxōrēs nōn habērent. 4. Rōmulus ab eīs petit ut societātem cōnūbiumque cum novō populō faciant. 5. Cum hōc recūsātum esset, mīra vīs hominum ad asȳlum cōnfūgit. 6. Rōmulus nunc indicat cūr asȳlum aperuerit. 7. Multī veniunt ut videant quid incolae faciant. 8. Hī vērō societātem cōnūbiumque nōn facient. 9. Rōmulus ā Remō quaerit cur moenia trānsiluerit. 10. Contentiō inter eōs orta est uter nōmen novae urbī daret.

II. 1. The people asked Romulus why he had not opened an asylum for women. 2. You see why Romulus sought the right of marriage with the neighboring tribes. 3. They will come to see what you are doing. 4. Since Romulus had opened an asylum, many men fled to it. 5. We all know why Romulus called the city Rome. 6. It is easy to see why the soldiers are storming the town. 7. When Remus had been captured, Romulus defended himself. 8. We often wonder why Remus laughed at his brother. 9. They consult the auguries in order to see who shall give his name to the new city. 10. Everyone knows with what design an alliance was sought.

308. RULE.—*The Indirect Question is always in the Subjunctive.*

LESSON LXXI.

Conjugation of AUDIŌ Continued. Final and Consecutive Subjunctive Continued.

309. SUBJUNCTIVE OF **audiō**, *I hear.*

	ACTIVE.		PASSIVE.	
	PRESENT TENSE.			
SG.—1.	audia-m,	*I may hear.*	audia-r,	*I may be heard.*
2.	audiā-s,	*you may hear.*	audiā-ris (-re),	*you may be heard.*
3.	audia-t,	*he may hear.*	audiā-tur,	*he may be heard.*

	ACTIVE.	PASSIVE.
PL.—1.	audiā-mus, *we may hear.*	audiā-mur, *we may be heard.*
2.	audiā-tis, *you may hear.*	audiā-minī, *you may be heard.*
3.	audia-nt, *they may hear.*	audia-ntur, *they may be heard.*

IMPERFECT TENSE.

SG.—1.	audī-re-m, *I might hear.*	audī-re-r, *I might be heard.*
2.	audī-rē-s, *you might hear.*	audī-rē-ris (-re), *you might be heard.*
3.	audī-re-t, *he might hear.*	audī-rē-tur, *he might be heard.*
PL.—1.	audī-rē-mus, *we might hear.*	audī-rē-mur, *we might be heard.*
2.	audī-rē-tis, *you might hear.*	audī-rē-minī, *you might be heard.*
3.	audī-re-nt, *they might hear.*	audī-re-ntur, *they might be heard.*

PERFECT TENSE.

SG.—1.	audī-v-eri-m, *I may have heard.*	audī-t-us, -a, -um sim, *I may have been heard.*
2.	audī-v-eri-s, *you may have heard.*	audī-t-us, -a, -um sīs, *you may have been heard.*
3.	audī-v-eri-t, *he may have heard.*	audī-t-us, -a, -um sit, *he may have been heard.*
PL.—1.	audī-v-eri-mus, *we may have heard.*	audī-t-ī, -ae, -a sīmus, *we may have been heard.*
2.	audī-v-eri-tis, *you may have heard.*	audī-t-ī, -ae, -a sītis, *you may have been heard.*
3.	audī-v-eri-nt, *they may have heard.*	audī-t-ī, -ae, -a sint, *they may have been heard.*

PLUPERFECT TENSE.

SG.—1.	audī-v-isse-m, *I might have heard.*	audī-t-us, -a, -um essem, *I might have been heard.*
2.	audī-v-issē-s, *you might have heard.*	audī-t-us, -a, -um essēs, *you might have been heard.*
3.	audī-v-isse-t, *he might have heard.*	audī-t-us, -a, -um esset, *he might have been heard.*

	ACTIVE.	PASSIVE.
PL.—1.	audī-v-issē-mus, *we might have heard.*	audī-t-ī, -ae, -a essēmus, *we might have been heard.*
2.	audī-v-issē-tis, *you might have heard.*	audī-t-ī, -ae, -a essētis, *you might have been heard.*
3.	audī-v-isse-nt, *they might have heard.*	audī-t-ī, -ae, -a essent, *they might have been heard.*

310. Examine the following:

1. Vereor nē hostis **veniat,** *I fear* LEST the *enemy* COME, OR THAT *he* IS COMING.

2. Vereor nē hostis **vēnerit,** *I fear* LEST *the enemy* HAVE COME, OR *that he* HAS COME.

3. Vereor **ut** amīcus **veniat,** *I fear* LEST *my friend* COME NOT, THAT *he* IS NOT COMING OR WILL NOT COME.

4. Vereor **ut** amīcus **vēnerit,** *I fear* LEST *my friend* HAVE NOT COME, OR THAT *he* HAS NOT COME.

Observe:

1. That after verbs of *fearing* **nē** = *that,* and **ut** = *that not.*

2. That the Subjunctive may be translated by the Future.

311. Examine the following:

1. Nōn dubium est **quīn veniat,** *there is no doubt* THAT HE IS COMING, OR OF HIS COMING.

2. Nōn dubium erat **quīn venīret,** *there was no doubt* THAT HE WAS COMING, OR OF HIS COMING.

3. Nōn dubium est **quīn fuerint** ante Homērum poētae, *there is no doubt* THAT THERE WERE *poets before Homer,* OR OF THERE BEING *poets before Homer.*

Observe:

1. That **quīn** is used for *that* after verbs of *Doubt* and *Uncertainty.*

2. That the *Subjunctive* is always used and the *Tenses* are the *same* as in the *Interrogative Sentence* (305).

312. Vocabulary.

lūdibrium, -ī, n. *derision, mockery.*
lūdus, -ī, m. *game, play.*
studium, -ī, n. *zeal.*
spectāculum, -ī, n. *show, spectacle.*
aegritūdō, -inis, f. *vexation, sickness.*
cōniunx or **cōniux, cōniugis,** m. and f. *married person, husband, wife.*

add-ō,	**-ere,**	**-did-ī,**	**-di-tum,**	*I add.*
dissimul-ō,	**-āre,**	**-āvī,**	**-ātum,**	*I hide, conceal.*
indic-ō,	**-ere,**	**-dix-ī,**	**-dic-tum,**	*I point out, show, inform, announce.*
conveni-ō,	**-īre,**	**-vēn-ī,**	**-ven-tum,**	*I come together, assemble.*
discurr-ō,	**-ere,**	**-cur-rī,** or **-cucur-rī,**	**-cur-sum,**	*I run different ways, run to and fro, wander.*

EXERCISES.

313. I. 1. Populus veritus est ut Rōmulus aegritūdinem dissimulāret. 2. Nōn dubium est quīn lūdibrium additum sit. 3. Nōn dubium erat quīn multī convenīrent ut lūdōs vidērent. 4. Verentur nē virginēs discurrant. 5. Rōmulus fīnitimīs spectāculum indīcī iūssit ut cum līberīs et cōniugibus venīrent. 6. Rōmānī timent ut lēgātī mittantur. 7. Nōn dubium est quīn virginēs raptae sint. 8. Tantum erat studium Rōmānōrum ut virginēs multās raperent. 9. Cum spectāculī tempus vēnisset, omnēs in urbe erant. 10. Nōn dubium est quīn Rōmulus lūdōs paret.

II. 1. There is no doubt that Romulus has prepared games. 2. We fear that the people have not come together. 3. We fear that the people have come together. 4. There was no doubt that Romulus concealed his vexation. 5. When the games had been prepared, Romulus ordered the show to be announced to the neighbors. 6. The Romans ran in different ways in order to seize the maidens. 7. The virgins asked why they had been seized. 8. Since the Romans had no wives, they seized the virgins. 9. The Romans feared that the neighboring tribes would not come. 10. We fear that we may be wounded.

314. RULE.—*Verbs of Fearing are followed by the Subjunctive with* **nē** = that *and* **ut** = that not.

315. RULE.—*Verbs of Doubt and Uncertainty are followed by the Subjunctive with* **quīn.**

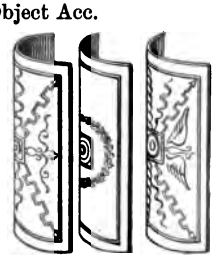
Reading Lesson.

Rōmulus, Rōmānōrum Prīmus Rēx.—I.

Rōmulus imāginem urbis magis quam urbem fēcerat; incolae dēerant. Erat in proximō[1] lūcus: hunc[2] asȳlum fēcit. Et statim eō[3] mīra vīs latrōnum pāstōrumque cōnfūgit. Cum vērō[4] uxōrēs ipse populusque nōn habērent,[5] lēgātōs circā vīcīnās gentēs mīsit, quī[6] societātem cōnūbiumque novō[7] populō peterent. Nūsquam benīgnē audīta[8] lēgātiō est: lūdibrium etiam additum[9]: "Cūr nōn fēminīs quoque asȳlum aperuistis? Id[10] enim compār foret cōnūbium." Rōmulus aegritūdinem animī dissimulāns[11] lūdōs parat; indīcī[12] deinde fīnitimīs spectāculum iubet.

NOTES.

1. **in proximō**: *near by.* 2. **hunc**: object, while **asȳlum** is predicate. 3. **eō**: *thither,* adv. 4. **vērō**: usually placed second in the sentence, i.e. postpositive. 5. **habērent**: Subjv. with Causal **cum** (303). 6. **quī... peterent**: *to seek.* The relative **quī** (= **ut is**) is often used in sentences of Purpose and Result (426). 7. **novō populō**: *for the new people.* 8. **audīta**: goes with **est.** 9. **additum**: supply **est.** 10. **Id... cōnūbium**: *for this would be a right of marriage on equal terms.* **foret** is an old form for **esset,** Impf. Subjv. of **sum.** 11. **dissimulāns**: *concealing,* Pres. Part. 12. **indīcī**: Pres. Inf. pass. and second Acc. after **iubet, spectāculum** being the Object Acc.



SCŪTA.

LESSON LXXII.

Conjugation of sum Continued. Wishes.

316. SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD OF **sum.**

1. PRESENT TENSE.

SING. — 1. **sim,** *I be.*
2. **sīs,** *you be.*
3. **sit,** *he be.*

PLUR. — 1. **sīmus,** *we be.*
2. **sītis,** *you be.*
3. **sint,** *they be.*

2. IMPERFECT TENSE.

SING. — 1. **essem,** *I were.*
2. **essēs,** *you were.*
3. **esset,** *he were.*

PLUR. — 1. **essēmus,** *we were.*
2. **essētis,** *you were.*
3. **essent,** *they were.*

3. PERFECT TENSE.

SING. — 1. **fuerim,** *I have* or *may have been.*
2. **fueris,** *you have* or *may have been.*
3. **fuerit,** *he have* or *may have been.*

PLUR. — 1. **fuerimus,** *we have* or *may have been.*
2. **fueritis,** *you have* or *may have been.*
3. **fuerint,** *they have* or *may have been.*

4. PLUPERFECT TENSE.

SING. — 1. **fuissem,** *I had* or *might have been.*
2. **fuissēs,** *you had* or *might have been.*
3. **fuisset,** *he had* or *might have been.*

PLUR. — 1. **fuissēmus,** *we had* or *might have been.*
2. **fuissētis,** *you had* or *might have been.*
3. **fuissent,** *they had* or *might have been.*

317. Examine the following :

1. **Stet** haec urbs, MAY *this city* CONTINUE TO STAND !
2. **Utinam** haec urbs **stāret,** WOULD THAT *this city* WERE STANDING !
3. **Utinam** haec urbs **stetisset,** WOULD THAT *this city* HAD STOOD !
4. **Utinam nē vēnisset,** WOULD THAT HE HAD NOT COME !

Observe :

1. That in wishes the Present Subjunctive is used with or without **utinam,** but the **utinam** must be used with the *Imperfect* and *Pluperfect.*

2. That the *Pres. Subjv.* refers to the *Future,* the *Impf. Subjv.* to the *Present,* and the *Plupf. Subjv.* to the *Past.*

3. That the negative is **nē.**

318. Vocabulary.

ob (prep. with Acc.), *on account of.* **adversus** (prep. with Acc.), *against.*
Sabīnī, -ōrum, m. *the Sabines.* **optiō, -ōnis,** f. *choice.* [156.
mūnus, -eris, n. *gift.* **ānulus, -ī,** m. *finger-ring, ring.*—p.

sūm-ō,	**-ere,**	**sūmp-sī,**	**sūmp-tum,**	*I take, begin, get.*
nancīsc-or,	**nancīsc-ī,**	**nac-tus** or **nanc-tus sum,**		*I get, meet with, find.*
praesum,	**-esse,**	**-fuī,**		*I am over, have charge of* (with Dat.).
perdūc-ō,	**-ere,**	**-dūx-ī,**	**-duc-tum,**	*I lead through, lead.*

EXERCISES.

319. I. 1. Haeċ nē causa bellī sit ! 2. Utinam nē Sabīnī bellum adversus Rōmānōs sūmerent ! 3. Utinam nē Sabīnī puellae optiōnem mūneris dedissent ! 4. Rōmānī virginēs Sabīnōrum rapuērunt, eamque ob rem bellum sūmptum est. 5. Cum hūius pater Rōmānae praeesset arcī, exercitum in urbem perdūxit. 6. Utinam arx Rōmāna nunc stāret ! 7. Cum Caesar ad urbem vēnisset, obsidēs pōstulāvit. 8. Utinam nē virgō ānulōs nacta esset ! 9. Rōmulus Faustulum rogāvit quis esset eōrum avus. 10. Utinam haec vēra essent !

II. 1. May the Sabines not capture the city ! 2. The general gave the maiden rings that she might lead his men into the city. 3. When the army was approaching the

city, the leader found a maiden. 4. Would that he had not found her! 5. Would that we were in the city! 6. Since you give me the choice of a gift, I shall take the rings. 7. We do not wonder why she asked for the rings. 8. Would that her father had not had charge of the citadel! 9. The rings were so beautiful that the maiden wished for them. 10. The Sabines came in order to see the show.

320. RULE.—*Wishes are expressed by the Subjunctive, the Present (with or without* **utinam**) *being used when the wish refers to the Future, the Imperfect (always with* **utinam**) *when the wish refers to the Present, and the Pluperfect (always with* **utinam**) *when the wish refers to the Past.*

ĀNULUS.

LESSON LXXIII.

Compounds of SUM. Dative Case.

321. There are several compounds of **sum**, all which take the *Dative*, except **possum** and **absum**.

absum,	**abesse,**	**āfuī,**	*I am away, absent.*
adsum,	**adesse,**	**affuī,**	*I am present.*
dēsum,	**dēesse,**	**dēfuī,**	*I am wanting.*
īnsum,	**inesse,**	**īnfuī,**	*I am in.*
intersum,	**interesse,**	**interfuī,**	*I am between.*
obsum,	**obesse,**	**offuī,**	*I am against.*
possum,	**posse,**	**potuī,**	*I am able.*
praesum,	**praeesse,**	**praefuī,**	*I am over.*
prōsum,	**prōdesse,**	**prōfuī,**	*I profit.*
subsum,	**subesse,**	——	*I am under.*
supersum,	**superesse,**	**superfuī,**	*I am* or *remain over.*

These are all conjugated like the single verb **sum**, except **possum** and **prōsum**, which will be conjugated later.

322. Examine the following:

1. **Urbī** dēerant incolae, *inhabitants were wanting* TO THE CITY, or THE CITY *lacked inhabitants.*

2. Piger ipse **sibī** obstat, *the lazy fellow himself stands* IN HIS OWN WAY (i.e. *stands* AGAINST HIMSELF).

Observe:

That **urbī** and **sibī** are Datives after the prepositions **dē** and **ob** compounded with verbs.

323. Examine the following:

1. Canis similis **lupō** est, *the dog is like* (*unto*) *the* WOLF.

2. **Castrīs** idōneum locum dēligit, *he chooses a place suitable* FOR A CAMP.

3. **Omnī aetātī** mors est commūnis, *death is common* TO EVERY TIME OF LIFE.

Observe:

That **lupō, castrīs,** and **aetātī** are Datives dependent upon the adjectives **similis, idōneum,** and **commūnis** respectively.

324. Vocabulary.

ūtilis, -e, *useful* (to).
contrārius, -a, -um, *opposite* (to).
commūnis, -e, *common* (to), *in common with.*
vitium, -I, n. *vice, fault, error.*
pār, paris, *match* (for), *equal* (to).
armilla, -ae, f. *bracelet, armlet.*—p. 160.

EXERCISES.

325. I. 1. Hūius pater Rōmānae praeerat arcī. 2. Lupa ūbera eōrum ōrī admōvit. 3. Aetās Remī expositiōnis temporibus congruēbat. 4. Nam Remus ōris līneāmentīs erat mātrī simillimus. 5. Vitium virtūtī contrārium est. 6. Rēs multae bellō ūtilēs sunt. 7. Sabīnī Rōmānīs parēs nōn fuērunt. 8. Mīlitēs armillās puellīs idōneās habuērunt. 9. Commūnia sunt inter amīcōs omnia. 10. Hīs artibus prūdentia māior inest.

II. 1. This boy is like his father. 2. When the general had chosen a place suitable for the camp, the army advanced. 3. The lieutenant, who had charge of the army, fled. 4. Provisions were wanting to the army. 5. The townsmen had collected many things suitable for war. 6. Many Gauls were present at the council. 7. Love is opposite to hate. 8. No ancient nation was a match for the Romans. 9. No one knows how much (**quantum**) the Romans loved Rome. 10. Man has many things in common with God.

326. RULE.—*Compounds of* **ad, ante, con, in, inter, ob, prae, sub,** *and* **super** *take the Dative.*

327. RULE.—*Adjectives of Likeness, Fitness, Friendliness, and Nearness, with their opposites, take the Dative.*

LESSON LXXIV.

Conjugation of AMŌ Concluded: Imperative Mood, etc.

328. CONJUGATION OF **amō,** *I love.*

	ACTIVE VOICE.	PASSIVE VOICE.
1.	IMPERATIVE MOOD.	
	PRESENT.	
SING. — 2.	amā, *love you.*	2. amā-**re,** *be you loved.*
PLUR. — 2.	amā-**te,** *love ye.*	2. amā-**minī,** *be ye loved.*
	FUTURE.	
SING. — 2.	amā-**tō,** *you shall love.*	2. amā-**tor,** *you shall be loved.*
3.	amā-**tō,** *he shall love.*	3. amā-**tor,** *he shall be loved.*
PLUR. — 2.	amā-**tōte,** *ye shall love.*	2. ———
3.	ama-**ntō,** *they shall love.*	3. ama-**ntor,** *they shall be loved.*
2.	INFINITIVE MOOD.	
PRES.	amā-**re,** *to love.*	amā-**rī,** *to be loved.*
PERF.	amā-**v-isse,** *to have loved.*	amā-**t-um, -am, -um esse,** *to have been loved.*
FUT.	amā-**tūr-um, -am, -um** [**esse**], *to be about to love.*	amā-**t-um īrī,** *to be about to be loved.*

3. PARTICIPLES.

PRES.—amā-**ns**, *loving.*
amā-**tūr-us, -a, -um,** *being about to love.*

PERF.—amā-**t-us, -a, -um,** *loved, having been loved.*

4. GERUND. GERUNDIVE.

GEN. ama-**nd-ī,** *of loving.*
DAT. ama-**nd-ō,** *to loving.*
ACC. ama-**nd-um,** *loving, to love.*
ABL. ama-**nd-ō,** *by loving.*

ama-**nd-us, -a, -um,** (one) *to be loved.*

5. SUPINE.

ACC. amā-**tum,** *to love.*
ABL. amā-**tū,** *to love, in the loving.*

329. Examine the following:

1. { 1. **Amēmus** patriam, LET US LOVE *our country.*
   { 2. **Nē** difficilia **optēmus,** LET US NOT DESIRE *what is hard to do.* } First Person Plural.

2. { 1. **Amā tuōs** parentēs, LOVE THY *parents.*
   { 2. **Nōlī** hōc facere, DON'T *do that.* } Second Person Singular.

3. { 1. **Amāte vestrum** patrem, LOVE YOUR *father,*
   { 2. **Nōlīte** hōc facere, DON'T DO *that.* } Second Person Plural.

Observe:

1. That the *1st Person Plural Present Subjv.* supplies the lacking 1st Person of the Imperative. Negative, **nē.**

2. That the *Singular* Imperative (**amā**) must have *Singular* Pronoun (**tuus**) to refer to it and the *Plural* Imperative (**amā-te**) must have *Plural* Pronoun (**vester**).

3. That the *Negative* Imperative is expressed by **nōlī** (**nōlīte,** Pl.) with the Infinitive.

330. **Vocabulary.**

nōlī (Sing.), *do not.*
nōlīte (Plur.), *do not.*
laeva, -ae, f. *left hand.*
prōmissum, -ī, n. *promise.*
scūtum, -ī, n. *shield.*—p. 153.
prōditiō, -ōnis, f. *treason, betrayal.*

obru-ō,	**-ere,**	**-uī,**	**-u-tum,**	*I overwhelm, cover, slay.*
vindic-ō,	**-āre,**	**-āvī,**	**-ātum,**	*I avenge, punish.*
cōn-or,	**-ārī,**	**-ātus sum,**		*I try, attempt.*

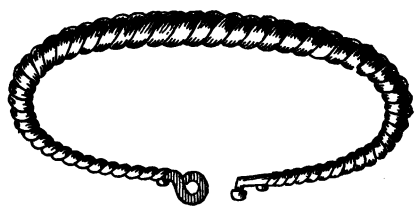
EXERCISES.

331. I. 1. Semper amīcōs tuōs amā. 2. Nōlīte, puerī, canem vestrum vindicāre. 3. Date mihĭ quod in laevīs habētis. 4. Sabīnī in sinistrīs manibus ānulōs et armillās habuērunt et scūta quoque. 5. Virgō ānulōs et armillās optāvit, sed mīlitēs eī scūta dedērunt. 6. Dux dīxit: "Datę eī scūta." 7. Itaque virgō scūtīs obruta est. 8. Sūmāmus, Sabīnī, bellum adversus Rōmānōs. 9. Nē lēgātiōnem benīgnē audiāmus. 10. Rogēmus Rōmulum cūr asўlum aperuerit.

II. 1. My son, bring back glory from the war. 2. Punish the lazy boys. 3. Let us fight in behalf of our country. 4. Overcome all difficulties. 5. Do not give the maiden the choice of a gift. 6. Avenge impious treason quickly. 7. Let us not seek an alliance and right of marriage with the Sabines. 8. Let us always keep our promises. 9. Do not tell the boys who their grandfather was. 10. Let us always try to keep our promises.

332. RULE.—*Positive Commands are expressed by the Imperative, and Negative by* **nōlī, nōlīte,** *with the Infinitive.*

333. RULE.—*Exhortations are expressed by the* 1*st Person Plural Present Subjunctive. Negative,* **nē.**



ARMILLA.

LESSON LXXV.

334. Conjugation of MONEŌ Concluded: Imperative, etc.

	ACTIVE.	PASSIVE.
1.	IMPERATIVE MOOD.	
	PRESENT.	
SG.—2.	monē, *advise you.*	2. monē-re, *be you advised.*
PL.—2.	monē-te, *advise ye.*	2. monē-minī, *be ye advised.*
	FUTURE.	
SG.—2.	monē-tō, *you shall advise.*	2. monē-tor, *you shall be advised.*
3.	monē-tō, *he shall advise.*	3. monē-tor, *he shall be advised.*
PL.—2.	monē-tōte, *you shall advise.*	2. ———
3.	mone-ntō, *they shall advise.*	3. mone-ntur, *they shall be advised.*
2.	INFINITIVE MOOD.	
PRES.	monē-re, *to advise.*	monē-rī, *to be advised.*
PERF.	mon-u-isse, *to have advised.*	moni-t-um, -am, -um esse, *to have been advised.*
FUT.	moni-tūr-um, -am, -um [esse], *to be about to advise.*	moni-tum īrī, *to be about to be advised.*
3.	PARTICIPLES.	
PRES.	monē-ns, *advising.* moni-tūr-us, -a, um, *being about to advise.*	PERF. moni-t-us, -a, -um, *advised, having been advised.*
4.	GERUND.	GERUNDIVE.
GEN.	mone-nd-ī, *of advising.*	
DAT.	mone-nd-ō, *to advising.*	mone-nd-us, -a, -um, (one) *to be advised.*
ACC.	mone-nd-um, *advising, to advise.*	
ABL.	mone-nd-ō, *by advising.*	
5.	SUPINES.	
ACC.	moni-tum, *to advise.*	
ABL.	moni-tū, *to advise, in the advising.*	

335. Examine the following:

1. Rōmulus aegritūdinem **dissimulāns** lūdōs parat, *Romulus*, CONCEALING *his vexation, prepares games.*

2. Parvulōs alveō **impositōs** abiēcit in Tiberim, *he cast the boys* (who had been) PLACED *in a boat into the Tiber.*

3. Faustulus, necessitāte **compulsus**, indicāvit Rōmulō, *Faustulus*, DRIVEN *by necessity, told Romulus.*

Observe:

1. That the *Participle*, like any other *Adjective*, must agree with its noun in *Gender*, *Number*, and *Case.*

2. That *Active Participles* (also *Passive forms of Deponents*) can have an *Accusative Case.*

336. Vocabulary.

deinde, adv. *then, next, thereafter.*
forum, **-ī**, n. *forum, market-place.*
perfidus, **-a**, **-um**, *dishonest, faithless.*
insignis, **-e**, *distinguished, eminent.*
interitus, **-ūs**, m. *overthrow, death.*
hospes, **-itis**, m. *entertainer, host.*

cōnser-ō,	**-ere,**	**-seru-ī,**	**-ser-tum,**	*I connect, join.*
dīmic-ō,	**-āre,**	**-āv-ī,**	**-ā-tum,**	*I fight, struggle.*
cad-ō,	**-ere,**	**cecid-ī,**	**cā-sum,**	*I fall, die, be slain.*
cōnstern-ō,	**-āre,**	**-āv-ī,**	**-ātum,**	*I dismay, terrify.*

EXERCISES.

337. I. 1. Deinde Hostīlius ad certāmen prōcēssit et dīmicāns cecidit. 2. Rōmānī, hūius interitū cōnsternātī, fugere coepērunt. 3. Sabīnī, Rōmānōs perfidōs vocantēs, pūgnam cōnseruērunt. 4. Remus, vāllī angustiās inrīdēns, saltū id trāiēcit. 5. Numitor, ā frātre pulsus, in suīs agrīs habitāvit. 6. Rōmulus, imperiō potītus, sōlus rēgnāvit. 7. Sabīnī Hostīlium fortissimē dīmicantem interfēcērunt. 8. Rōmulus, suōs mīlitēs hortātus, in eō locō, ubi nunc Rōmānum Forum est, pūgnam cōnseruit. 9. Amūlius parvulōs alveō impositōs in Tiberim abiēcit. 10. Faustulus lupam īnfantēs linguā lambentem vīdit.

II. 1. Many soldiers fell fighting bravely. 2. The soldiers, being conquered, fled. 3. Romulus, dismayed by

the death of this distinguished Roman, fought more bravely. 4. Fight bravely in order to save your country. 5. Do not be dismayed. 6. Let us fight bravely in behalf of our country. 7. So great was the terror of the Romans that they attempted to flee. 8. When the Romans had advanced to the struggle, they joined battle. 9. The Romans feared that they would be conquered. 10. There is no doubt that Hostilius died fighting bravely.

338. RULE.—*Participles, like Adjectives, agree with their Nouns in Gender, Number, and Case, and active Participles (also the passive forms of deponents) govern the Accusative Case.*

Reading Lesson.

Rōmulus, Rōmānōrum Prīmus Rēx.—II.

Multī convēnēre studiō[1] etiam videndae novae urbis, māximē Sabīnī[2] cum līberīs et cōniugibus. Ubi spectāculī tempus vēnit eōque[3] conversae[4] mentēs[4] cum oculīs erant, tum sīgnō[5] datō iuvenēs Rōmānī discurrunt, virginēs rapiunt. Haec fuit statim causa bellī. Sabīnī enim ob virginēs[6] raptās bellum adversus Rōmānōs sūmpsērunt et, cum Rōmae[7] appropinquārent, Tarpēiam virginem nactī sunt, quae aquam forte[8] extrā moenia petītum[9] ierat. Hūius pater Rōmānae praeerat arcī. Titus Tatius, Sabīnōrum dux, Tarpēiae optiōnem mūneris dedit, sī[10] exercitum suum in Capitōlium perdūxisset.

NOTES.

1. **studiō ... urbis**: *from the desire of seeing the new city.* **studiō**: Abl. of Cause. **videndae**: Gen. of Gerundive. The Gerundive is an Adjective and always agrees with its Noun (405). 2. **Sabīnī**: subject of **convēnēre** (= **convēnērunt**). 3. **eō**: *upon it;* **eō** is an adv. 4. **conversae**: goes with **erant**, of which **mentēs** is the subject. 5. **sīgnō datō**: *at a given signal.* Abl. Abs. Note that a Noun and a Participle, *not identical* with the subject, object, or other case in the leading clause, are put in the Abl. Abs. The construction is exactly that of our

Nominative Absolute. 6. **ob...raptās**: *on account of the seizure of the maidens* (lit. *on account of the maidens having been seized*), **raptās** being a Perf. Pass. Part. agreeing with **virginēs**. 7. **Rōmae**: Dat. after **ad** in **appropinquārent** (= **adpropinquārent**). 8. **forte**: *by chance.* 9. **petītum ierat**: *had gone to seek.* 10. **sī...perdūxisset**: *if she should have led his army* into the Capitol.

LESSON LXXVI.

339. Conjugation of EMŌ Concluded: Imperative, etc. Dative Case.

	ACTIVE.	PASSIVE.
1.	IMPERATIVE MOOD.	
	PRESENT.	
SING. — 2.	eme, *buy you.*	2. eme-**re**, *be you bought.*
PLUR.—2.	emi-**te**, *buy ye.*	2. emi-**mini**, *be ye bought.*
	FUTURE.	
SING. — 2.	emi-**tō**, *you shall buy.*	2. emi-**tor**, *you shall be bought.*
3.	emi-**tō**, *he shall buy.*	3. emi-**tor**, *he shall be bought.*
PLUR.—2.	emi-**tōte**, *you shall buy.*	2. ———
3.	emu-**ntō**, *they shall buy.*	3. emu-**ntor**, *they shall be bought.*
2.	INFINITIVE MOOD.	
PRES.	eme-**re**, *to buy.*	em-**ī**, *to be bought.*
PERF.	ēm-**isse**, *to have bought.*	ēmp-**t-um, -am, -um esse**, *to have been bought.*
FUT.	ēmp-**tūr-um, -am, -um** [**esse**], *to be about to buy.*	ēmp-**tum īrī**, *to be about to be bought.*
3.	PARTICIPLES.	
PRES.	emē-**n-s**, *buying.*	PERF. ēmp-**t-us, -a, -um**, *bought, having been bought.*
FUT.	ēmp-**tūr-us, -a, -um**, *being about to buy.*	
4.	GERUND.	GERUNDIVE.
GEN.	eme-**nd-ī**, *of buying.*	
DAT.	eme-**nd-ō**, *to buying.*	eme-**nd-us, -a, -um**, (one) *to be bought.*
ACC.	eme-**nd-um**, *buying, to buy.*	
ABL.	eme-**nd-ō**, *by buying.*	
5.	SUPINE.	
ACC.	ēmp-**tum**, *to buy.*	
ABL.	ēmp-**tū**, *to buy, in the buying.*	

340. Examine the following:

1. Probus **invidet** nēminī, *the good man* ENVIES *nobody.*
2. Virtūtī suōrum **crēdit,** *he* TRUSTS (to) *the valor of his men.*

Observe:

That in these two sentences, the Dative is used in Latin, although *to* is not found in the first and can be omitted in the second.

341. Examine the following:

1. **Nēminī** meus adventus labōrī fuit, TO NO ONE *was my arrival* (FOR) A BURDEN, i.e. *burdensome.*
2. Virtūs sōla nōn datur **dōnō,** *virtue alone is not given* AS A PRESENT.

Observe:

That the Datives in these sentences denote the object *for which* and are usually translated as Nominatives, and often are associated with a Dative of the *person for or to whom.*

342. **Vocabulary.**

quaestus, -ūs, m. *profit, gain.* **sūmptus, -ūs,** m. *cost, expense.*
turpitūdō, -inis, f. *baseness, shame.* **odium, -ī,** n. *hatred, hate.*

vove-ō, -ēre, vōv-ī, vō-tum, *I vow, promise solemnly.*
invide-ō, -ēre, -vīd-ī, -vī-sum, *I envy, grudge.*
īnfer-ō, -ferre, -tul-ī, -lā-tum, *I bring in, wage, carry in:* **sē īnferre,** *to betake oneself, go.*

EXERCISES.

343. I. 1. Rōmulus Iovī dōnō aedem vōvit. 2. Fortūnae tuae mihĭ cūrae sunt. 3. Aeduī Caesarī auxiliō equitēs mīsērunt. 4. Dumnorīx equitātuī, quem Aeduī Caesarī auxiliō mīsērunt, praeerat. 5. Bonus invidet nēminī. 6. Caesar huīc legiōnī māximē indulget. 7. Hōc est mihĭ odiō. 8. Turpitūdinī est mentīrī. 9. Habēre quaestuī rem pūblicam turpe est. 10. Hostēs, necessitāte compulsī, pācem fēcērunt.

II. 1. You are a great care to me. 2. Do not envy the rich. 3. Baseness is hateful (= a hatred) to me. 4. The army is a great expense to the state. 5. Caesar trusts the thirteenth legion especially. 6. Your advice is a great help to me. 7. Do not trust faithless hosts. 8. A temple was solemnly promised to Jupiter as a gift. 9. We shall persuade you to do this. 10. The Sabines gave the maiden their shields as a gift.

344. RULE.—*Intransitive verbs of Advantage or Disadvantage, Yielding and Resisting, Pleasure and Displeasure, Bidding and Forbidding, take the Dative.*

345. RULE.—*Certain verbs, especially To Be, Have, Give, and Send, take a Dative of the Object For Which and often a Dative of the Person To or For Whom.*

LESSON LXXVII.

346. Conjugation of AUDIŌ Concluded: Imperative, etc. Genitive Case.

	ACTIVE.	PASSIVE.
1.	IMPERATIVE MOOD.	
	PRESENT.	
SING. — 2.	audī, *hear you.*	2. audī-re, *be you heard.*
PLUR. — 2.	audī-te, *hear ye.*	2. audī-mini, *be ye heard.*
	FUTURE.	
SING. — 2.	audī-tō, *you shall hear.*	2. audī-tor, *you shall be heard.*
3.	audī-tō, *he shall hear.*	3. audī-tor, *he shall be heard.*
PLUR. — 2.	audī-tōte, *ye shall hear.*	2. ———
3.	audiu-ntō, *they shall hear.*	3. audiu-ntor, *they shall be heard*
2.	INFINITIVE MOOD.	
PRES.	audī-re, *to hear.*	audī-rī, *to be heard.*
PERF.	audī-v-isse, *to have heard.*	audī-t-um, -am, -um esse, *to have been heard.*
FUT.	audī-tūr-um, -am, -um [esse], *to be about to hear.*	audī-tum īrī, *to be about to be heard.*

3. PARTICIPLES.

PRES. audiē-n-s, *hearing.* PERF. audī-t-us, -a -um, *heard, having been heard.*
FUT. audī-tūr-us, -a, -um, *being about to hear.*

4. GERUND. GERUNDIVE.

GEN. audie-nd-ī, *of hearing.*
DAT. audie-nd-ō, *to* or *for hearing.* audie-nd-us, -a, -um, (one) *to be heard.*
ACC. audie-nd-um, *hearing, to hear.*
ABL. audie-nd-ō, *by hearing.*

5. SUPINE.

ACC. audī-tum, *to hear.*
ABL. audī-tū, *to hear, in the hearing.*

347. Examine the following :

1. Cupidus **pecūniae,** *grasping* AFTER MONEY.
2. **Multārum rērum** perītus, *versed* IN MANY THINGS.
3. Tē **veteris amīcitiae** commonefēcit, *he reminded you* OF YOUR OLD FRIENDSHIP.
4. Miltiadēs accūsātus est **prōditiōnis,** *Miltiades was accused* OF TREASON.

Observe :

1. That in 1 and 2, the Genitive is used with *Adjectives.*
2. That in 3, the Genitive is used with *Memory-Verbs.*
3. That in 4, the Genitive is used with *Judicial Verbs.*

348. Vocabulary.

cupidus, -a, -um, *eager for, grasping after, desirous of* (with Gen.).
plēnus, -a, -um, *full, full of, filled with* (with Gen.).
oblītus, -a, -um, *forgetful of* (with Gen.).
perītus, -a, -um, *versed in, skilled in, skilful in* (with Gen.).
inscius, -a, -um, *ignorant of* (with Gen.).
insuētus, -a, -um, *unused to* (with Gen.).

commonefaciō,	**-ere,**	**-fēc-ī,**	**-fac-tum,**	*I remind* (with Gen.).
oblīvīscor,	**oblīvīsc-ī,**	**oblī-tus sum,**		*I forget* (with Gen.).
———	**meminisse,**	**meminī,**	———	*remember* (with Gen.).
accūsō,	**-āre,**	**-āvī,**	**-ātum,**	*I accuse* (with Gen.).
absolvō,	**-solv-ere,**	**-solv-ī,**	**-solū-tum,**	*I absolve, acquit* (with
damnō,	**-āre,**	**-āvī,**	**-ātum,**	*I condemn.* [Gen.).

EXERCISES.

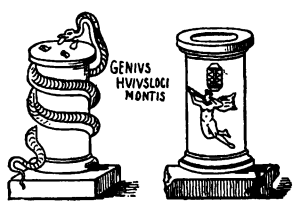
349. I. 1. Orgetorīx, rēgnī cupidus, cōniūrātiōnem nōbilitātis fēcit. 2. Rōmulus īrae plēnus, frātrem interfēcit. 3. Soror, frātrum oblīta, interfecta est. 4. Puer, īnsuētus labōris, piger est. 5. Homŏ rērum omnium īnscius erat. 6. Imperātor, bellī perītus, mīlitēs ad victōriam mittet. 7. Pater mē officiī commonefaciet. 8. Deus iubet tē mortis meminisse. 9. Caesar avāritiae accūsātus est. 10. Iūdex absolvit eum iniūriārum.

II. 1. The Gauls, eager for a revolution, prepared for war. 2. Cicero was ignorant of war, but versed in law. 3. Do not forget a kindness. 4. Many soldiers, who were unused to war, were slain. 5. The man, accused of theft, was quickly condemned. 6. Caesar reminded Ariovistus of his kindness. 7. Let us acquit Caesar of (the charge of) avarice. 8. There is no doubt that Miltiades was accused of treason. 9. What place is not filled with our distress? 10. Since we are ignorant of many things, we shall try to learn.

350. RULE.—*Adjectives of Fulness, Participation, Power, Knowledge, Ignorance, Desire, and Disgust take the Genitive.*

351. RULE.—*Verbs of Reminding, Remembering, and Forgetting take the Genitive.*

352. RULE.—*Verbs of Accusing, Convicting, Condemning, and Acquitting take the Genitive.*



ĀRAE.

LESSON LXXVIII.

353. Conjugation of CAPIŌ Concluded: Imperative, etc. Ablative Absolute.

	ACTIVE.	PASSIVE.
1.	IMPERATIVE MOOD.	
	PRESENT.	
	SG.—2. cape. PL.—2. capi-te.	SG.—2. cape-re. PL.—2. capi-minī.
	FUTURE.	
	SG.—2. capi-tō, PL.—2. capi-tōte,	SG.—2. capi-tor, PL.—2. ———
	3. capi-tō. 3. capiu-ntō.	3. capi-tor. 3. capiu-ntor.
2.	INFINITIVE MOOD.	
	PRES. cap-ere.	cap-ī.
	PERF. cēp-isse.	cap-t-um, -am, -um esse.
	FUT. cap-tūr-um, -am, -um [esse].	cap-tum īrī.
3.	PARTICIPLES.	
	PRES. capiē-n-s.	PERF. cap-t-us, -a, -um.
	FUT. cap-tūr-us, -a, -um.	
4.	GERUND.	GERUNDIVE.
	GEN. capie-nd-ī.	
	DAT. capie-nd-ō.	capie-nd-us, -a, -um.
	ACC. capie-nd-um.	
	ABL. capie-nd-ō.	
5.	SUPINE.	
	ACC. cap-tum.	
	ABL. cap-tū.	

354. 1. Examine the following:

1. **Xerxe rēgnante,** XERXES REIGNING, WHEN *Xerxes was reigning*, or *in the reign of Xerxes.*

2. **Xerxe victō,** *Xerxes being* or *having been defeated, when Xerxes had been defeated, after the defeat of Xerxes.*

3. **Messālā et Pisōne cōnsulibus,** *Messala and Piso being consuls, in the consulship of Messala and Piso.*

Observe:

1. That the Latin *Ablative Absolute* corresponds to English *Nominative Absolute.*

2. That the *Ablative Absolute* is made up of a *Noun* as subject and a *Participle* or predicate *Adjective* or *Noun* as predicate.

3. That the Abl. Abs. admits of *several translations.*

2. Examine the following:

1. Imperātor **urbem expūgnātam** incendit, *the general,* HAVING TAKEN THE CITY, *set* IT *on fire.* [THE CITY, *returned.*

2. Imperātor, **urbe expūgnātā,** rediit, *the general,* HAVING TAKEN

Observe:

1. That in the first sentence, **urbem** is *Direct Object* of **incendit,** and hence cannot be Ablative Absolute, though the English translation is the same.

2. That in the second sentence, **urbe,** having *no connection* with the *Subject or Object* of the verb, must be in the Ablative Absolute.

355. Vocabulary.

arx, arcis, f. *citadel.*
imbellis, -e, *unwarlike.*
prōmittō, -ere, -mīs-ī, -mis-sum, *I promise.* [*make a treaty.*
[icō, -ere], icī, ic-tus, *I strike, hit:* with **foedus,** *I*
poena, -ae, f. *punishment.*
foedus, -eris, n. *treaty.*

EXERCISES.

356. I. 1. Rōmulus, foedere īctō, Sabīnōs in urbem recēpit. 2. Hīs rēbus prōmissīs, Tarpēia Sabīnōs in urbem perdūxit. 3. Prōditiōne cōgnitā, virgō celerī poenā vindicāta est. 4. Sabīnīs in arcem perductīs, Tatius virginem scūtīs obruī iūssit. 5. Rōmānīs fugātīs, Sabīnī dīcēbant: "Vīcimus imbellēs hostēs." 6. Amūlius, frātre pulsō, rēgnāvit. 7. Faustulus, rē animadversā, parvulōs tulit in casam. 8. Rōmulus, armātīs pāstōribus, profectus est. 9. Interēmptō Amūliō, avum Numitōrem in rēgnum restituit. 10. Ortā inter eōs contentiōne, auspicia dēcrēvērunt adhibēre.

II. 1. In the consulship of Cicero many things were done. 2. Caesar, having occupied the town, set out. 3. The signal being given, the Roman youths run to and fro. 4. The maidens having been seized, the Sabines began the war. 5. This battle having been fought, the enemy send ambassadors to Caesar. 6. The Helvetians, being conquered, sought peace. 7. The treaty being made, the Sabines and Romans were friends. 8. The general, having set-fire-to the city, departed. 9. When Romulus was king, the Sabines almost captured Rome. 10. Romulus, having prepared games, sent ambassadors among the neighboring tribes.

357. RULE.—*A Noun and a Participle, a Noun and a predicate Adjective or Noun, not identical with the Subject or Object of the verb, are put in the Ablative (called Absolute) to denote Cause, Time, Manner, Condition, and Concession.*

Reading Lesson.

Rōmulus, Rōmānōrum Prīmus Rēx.—III.

Illa petiit quod[1] Sabīnī in sinistrīs manibus gerēbant, vidēlicet[2] et ānulōs et armillās. Quibus[3] dolōsē prōmissīs, Tarpēia Sabīnōs in arcem perdūxit, ubi Tatius scūtīs eam[4] obruī iūssit; nam et[5] ea in laevīs habuerant. Sīc impia prōditiō celerī poenā vindicāta est. Deinde Rōmulus ad certāmen prōcēssit, et in eō locō, ubi nunc Forum Rōmānum est, pūgnam cōnseruit. Prīmō impetū,[6] vir inter Rōmānōs īnsīgnis, nōmine Hostīlius, fortissimē dīmicāns cecidit: cūius interitū cōnsternātī Rōmānī fugere coepērunt. Iam Sabīnī clāmitābant: "Vīcimus perfidōs hostēs, imbellēs hostēs."

NOTES.

1. **quod . . . gerēbant**: *what they wore on their left hands.* **Quod** = **id quod** is our *what* = *that which.* 2. **vidēlicet**: *meaning.* 3. See 354. 4. **eam . . . iūssit**: *ordered her to be buried.* 5. **et ea**: *these also.* 6. **Prīmō impetū**: *At the first onslaught.*

LESSON LXXIX.

Conjugation of SUM Concluded. Names of Places.

358. CONJUGATION OF **sum.**

1. IMPERATIVE.

PRESENT.		FUTURE.	
SG.—2. **es,**	*be you.*	SG.—2. **estō,**	*you shall be.*
PL.—2. **este,**	*be ye.*	3. **estō,**	*he shall be.*
		PL.—2. **estōte,**	*ye shall be.*
		3. **suntō,**	*they shall be.*

2. INFINITIVE.

PRES.	**esse,** *to be.*
PERF.	**fuisse,** *to have been.*
FUT.	**futūr-um, -am, -um esse,** *to be about to be.*

3. FUTURE PARTICIPLE.

futūrus, -a, -um, *about to be.*

esse, *to be,* lacks Pres. Part., Gerund, Gerundive, and Supine.

359. Examine the following :

1. **Rōmae** erat, *he was* AT OR IN ROME.
   Dyrrāchiī hiemāvit, *he wintered* AT OR IN DYRRACHIUM.
   Carthāginī habitat, *he lives* AT OR IN CARTHAGE.
   Athēnis erimus, *we shall be* AT OR IN ATHENS.
2. **Albam** properāvit, *he hastened* TO ALBA.
3. **Dēlō** proficīscitur, *he sets out* FROM DELOS.

Observe :

1. That in block 1 all the names of places (proper names) denote *Place Where,* that *no preposition is used,* and that the expressions are in *the Locative Case,* which has the same form as the *Genitive in the singular of the Second Declension,* but the same form as the *Dative everywhere else.*

2. That in 2 the *Accusative* is used *without a preposition* to denote motion *to* a place (*Place Whither*), if name of a town.

3. That in 3 the *Ablative* is used *without a preposition* to denote motion *from* a place (*Place Whence*), if name of town.

360. In the same way, **domus** and **rūs** are used ; e.g. :

domī, *at home.*	**rūrī,** *in the country.*
domum, *home.*	**rūs,** *to the country.*
domō, *from home.*	**rūre,** *from the country.*

Similarly, **humī,** *on the ground.*

361. **Vocabulary.**

Athēnae, -ārum, f. Pl. *Athens.*	**Carthāgō, -inis,** f. *Carthage.*
Delphī, -ōrum, f. *Delphi.*	**Alba, -ae,** f. *Alba.*
Capua, -ae, f. *Capua.*	**Tarentum, -ī,** n. *Tarentum.*
dum, conj. *while.*	**ubi,** conj. *when.*

nāvig-ō,	**-āre,**	**-āvī,**	**-ātum,**	*I sail.*
discēd-ō,	**-ere,**	**-cēss-ī,**	**-cēs-sum,**	*I depart.*

EXERCISES.

362. I. 1. Lēgātōs Athēnās mittēmus. 2. Dum lēgātī Athēnīs erant, domum properāvimus. 3. Dux omnī cum exercitū Capuam profectus est. 4. Imperātor Delphīs discēssit et Tarentum vēnit. 5. Crās pater rūs mē mittet. 6. Caesar Athēnās nāvigāvit. 7. Dominus domī nōn est ; rūrī est ; crās rūre revertētur. 8. Cum Sabīnī Rōmam vēnissent, virginēs raptae sunt. 9. Discēdāmus Tarentō et Capuam properēmus. 10. Duōs mēnsēs Delphīs mānsit.

II. 1. Ambassadors were sent to Athens. 2. Many never returned home. 3. We shall send the slave to the country. 4. While you are in Rome, write to me. 5. Don't hasten from Delphi. 6. We remained two days at Capua. 7. We sailed from Tarentum to Athens. 8. When you were at Delphi, we were at Carthage. 9. We both came to Rome at the same time. 10. The army sailed from Athens to Tarentum.

363. RULE.—*Names of towns and small islands are put in the Locative to denote Place Where.*

364. RULE.—*Names of towns and small islands are put in the Accusative without a Preposition to denote Place Whither.*

365. RULE.—*Names of towns and small islands are put in the Ablative without a Preposition to denote Place Whence.*

LESSON LXXX.

Impersonal Verbs. Genitive Case.

366. Impersonal verbs are those in which the Subject is contained in the predicate, so that no person is expressed. Chief of these are :

1. Verbs pertaining to the state of the weather : **tonat,** *it thunders ;* **fulget,** *it lightens ;* **pluit,** *it rains,* and **ningit,** *it snows.*
2. The passive of intransitive verbs : **curritur,** *there is running* (*people are running*) ; **pūgnātur,** *there is a fight.*
3. Verbs which govern the Dative (344) must be expressed impersonally in the passive : **mihĭ invidētur,** *I am envied* (lit. *it is envied to me*).

367. Examine the following :

1. Suae quemque **fortūnae** paenitet, *each man is discontented* WITH HIS LOT (lit. *it repents each man of his lot*).

2. Mĕ **stultitiae meae** pudet, *I am ashamed* OF MY FOLLY (lit. *it shames me of my folly*).

Observe :

That in these sentences the *Person* is in the *Accusative* case and the *Cause* in the *Genitive.*

368. Vocabulary.

miseret, *it moves to pity* (Gen.).	**paenitet,** *it repents* (Gen.).
piget, *it irks* (Gen.).	**pudet,** *it makes ashamed* (Gen.).
taedet, *it tires* (Gen.).	**pertaesum est,** *it tires* (Gen.).
decet, *it becomes* (Acc.).	**dēdecet,** *it dishonors* (Acc.).
licet, *it is lawful, may* (Dat.).	**oportet,** *it behooves, ought* (Acc.).

EXERCISES.

369. I. 1. Tē tuae stultitiae paenitet. 2. Mē hūius labōris piget. 3. Mīlitēs sociōrum miseruit. 4. Omnēs decet rēctē facere. 5. Oportet nōs Rōmam proficīscī. 6. Nōn licet tibĭ Athēnīs discēdere. 7. Mē tuī cōnsiliī taedet. 8. Nēminem bene facere pudet. 9. Nōn mē vīxisse paenitet. 10. Tē Dȳrrāchiī manēre oportet.

II. 1. Men often repent of their folly. 2. It becomes a man to fight bravely, but it dishonors him to desert. 3. The Sabines soon tired of the war. 4. I am ashamed of your misdeeds. 5. You ought to depart from Rome immediately. 6. Let us do good, since we pity the poor. 7. We ought to hasten home. 8. The Romans were tired of the treaty. 9. It is irksome for me to remain in the country. 10. You ought to sail to Tarentum.

370. RULE.—*The Impersonal verbs* **miseret, paenitet, piget, pudet, taedet,** *and* **pertaesum est** *take the Accusative of the Person who Feels and the Genitive of the Exciting-Cause.*

FORUM.

LESSON LXXXI.

The Accusative and Infinitive.

371. Examine carefully the following:

	DIRECT.	INDIRECT.
1.	**Errās,** *you are going wrong.*	Dīcit **tē errāre,** *he says* THAT YOU ARE GOING WRONG.
2.	**Puer errat,** *the boy is going wrong.*	Dīcit **puerum errāre,** *he says* THAT THE BOY IS GOING WRONG.
3.	**Dēciperis,** *you are (being) deceived.*	Dīcit **tē dēcipī,** *he says* THAT YOU ARE (BEING) DECEIVED.
4.	**Puer dēcipitur,** *the boy is (being) deceived.*	Dīcit **puerum dēcipī,** *he says* THAT THE BOY IS (BEING) DECEIVED.

Observe:

1. That the statements in the first column are *Direct:* i.e. just as they were uttered; but those in the second column are *Indirect:* i.e. quoted by some one other than the speaker or by the speaker himself.

2. That in the *Direct* statement, the *Nominative* is used with *a finite verb,* but in the *Indirect,* the *Accusative is used with the Infinitive.*

3. That in sentences 1 and 3, *no subject* is expressed in the *Direct statement,* but the *pronoun must be used in the Indirect.*

4. That in English, the *Indirect statement* is usually introduced by the Declarative Conjunction *that,* which *cannot be translated* into Latin.

372. Examine the following:

1. CONTEMPORANEOUS ACTION (PRESENT INFINITIVE).

PRINCIPAL TENSES.	ACTIVE.	PASSIVE.
dīcit, *he says,* **dīxit,** *he has said,* **dīcet,** *he will say,* **dīxerit,** *he will have said,*	**tē errāre,** *that you are going wrong, that you go wrong,*	**tē dēcipī,** *that you are (being) deceived.*

HISTORICAL TENSES.

dĭcēbat, *he was saying,* **dixit,** *he said,* **dixerat,** *he had said,*	**tē errāre,** *that you were going wrong, that you went wrong,*	**tē dēcipī,** *that you were (being) deceived.*

2. PRIOR ACTION (PERFECT INFINITIVE).

PRINCIPAL TENSES.

dĭcit, *he says,* **dixit,** *he has said,* **dīcet,** *he will say,* **dixerit,** *he will have said,*	**tē errāvisse,** *that you have gone wrong, that you went wrong, that you have been going wrong,*	**tē dēceptum esse,** *that you have been deceived, that you were deceived.*

HISTORICAL TENSES.

dĭcēbat, *he was saying,* **dixit,** *he said,* **dixerat,** *he had said,*	**tē errāvisse,** *that you had gone wrong, that you went wrong, that you had been going wrong,*	**tē dēceptum esse,** *that you had been deceived, that you were deceived.*

3. SUBSEQUENT ACTION (FUTURE INFINITIVE).

PRINCIPAL TENSES.

dĭcit, *he says,* **dixit,** *he has said,* **dīcet,** *he will say,* **dixerit,** *he will have said,*	**tē errātūrum esse,** *that you will go wrong, that you are about to go wrong, that you will be going wrong,*	**tē dēceptum īrī,** *that you will be deceived, are going to be deceived.*

HISTORICAL TENSES.

dĭcēbat, *he was saying,* **dixit,** *he said,* **dixerat,** *he had said,*	**tē errātūrum esse,** *that you would go wrong, that you were about to go wrong,*	**tē dēceptum īrī,** *that you would be deceived, that you were going to be deceived.*

Observe:

1. That the *Present Infinitive* denotes *Contemporaneous Action;* that is, an action going on at the time of the leading verb, and hence the *Present Infinitive* denotes *Past time* after an *Historical tense.*

2. That the *Perfect Infinitive* denotes *Prior Action;* that is, an action happening before the time of the leading verb, and hence the *Perfect Infinitive* denotes *Past time* after a *Principal tense.*

3. That the *Future Infinitive* denotes *Subsequent Action;* that is, an action that is to happen *after the time* denoted by the leading verb.

373. Vocabulary.

crēd-ō,	**-ere,**	**crēdid-ī,**	**crēdi-tum,**	*I believe.*
neg-ō,	**-āre,**	**-āvī,**	**-ātum,**	*I deny, say not.*
spēr-ō,	**-āre,**	**-āvī,**	**-ātum,**	*I hope.*
put-ō,	**-āre,**	**-āvī,**	**-ātum,**	*I think.*
pollice-or,	**-ērī,**	**pollici-tus sum,**		*I promise.*

EXERCISES.

374. I. 1. Dīcit Germānōs in Galliam proficīscī. 2. Dīcit Gallōs in Ītaliam profectōs esse. 3. Cōnsul spērat ducem ventūrum nōn esse. 4. Remus negāvit sē Numitōris agrōs īnfēstāre. 5. Sabīnī pollicitī sunt sē, quod in sinistrīs manibus gererent, datūrōs esse. 6. Nōn crēdimus cōnsulem vēnisse. 7. Imperātor pūtāvit hostēs pācem petere. 8. Rōmānī crēdidērunt Rōmulum deum esse. 9. Caesar negāvit sē imperiō potīrī cupere. 10. Dictum est Gallōs tōtīus Galliae prīncipātum obtinēre.

II. 1. We thought that Caesar had departed from Tarentum. 2. You did not believe that these things were true. 3. Romulus said that he had opened an asylum. 4. The Sabines said that they would not give the right-of-marriage. 5. We hope that we shall soon be at Rome. 6. You promised that you would be at Athens. 7. The consul saw that there were many soldiers in the town. 8. He said that the king was preparing war. 9. The father thought that the letter had been written. 10. The consul promised that the prisoners would be freed.

375. RULE.—*The Subject of the Infinitive is in the Accusative Case.*

376. RULE.—*Verbs of Saying, Thinking, Knowing, Believing, Showing, Perceiving, Hearing, Hoping, and Promising, and like expressions, take the Accusative and Infinitive.*

Reading Lesson.

Rōmulus, Rōmānōrum Prīmus Rēx.—IV.

"Nunc sciunt longē[1] aliud esse virginēs rapere, aliud pūgnāre cum virīs." Tunc Rōmulus, arma ad caelum tollēns, Iovī aedem vōvit et exercitus seu[2] forte seu dīvīnitus restitit. Itaque proelium redintegrātur; sed raptae mulierēs crīnibus passīs[3] ausae sunt sē[4] inter tēla volantia īnferre et hinc patrēs, hinc virōs ōrantēs,[5] pācem conciliārunt. Rōmulus, foedere cum Tatiō īctō et Sabīnōs in urbem recēpit et rēgnum cum Tatiō sociāvit. Vērum nōn ita[6] multō post occīsō Tatiō ad Rōmulum potentātus omnis recidit.

NOTES.

1. **longē aliud ... aliud**: *one thing to seize ... and quite another to fight*, etc. 2. **seu ... seu**: *whether ... or*. 3. **crīnibus passīs**: *with dishevelled hair*. 4. **sē**: object of **īnferre**. 5. **ōrantēs**: *begging*, agrees with **mulierēs** and governs **patrēs** and **virōs**. 6. **nōn ita multō post**: *not long afterwards* (lit. *afterwards by not so much*).

LESSON LXXXII.

Conjugation of POSSUM, *I can*. Conditional Sentences.

377. PRINCIPAL PARTS: **possum, posse, potuī, ——.**

PRESENT INDICATIVE.
I am able, I can.

SING. — 1.	pos-**sum**,	PLUR. — 1.	pos-**sumus**,
2.	pot-**es**,	2.	pot-**estis**,
3.	pot-**est**.	3.	pos-**sunt**.

PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE.

I may be able.

SING.—1. pos-**sim**,	PLUR.—1. pos-**sīmus**,
2. pos-**sīs**,	2. pos-**sītis**,
3. pos-**sit**.	3. pos-**sint**.

INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.

IMPERFECT.

I was able, I could.	*I were, might be, able.*
SING.—1. pot-**eram**,	SING.—1. pos-**sem**,
2. pot-**erās**,	2. pos-**sēs**,
3. pot-**erat**.	3. pos-**set**.
PLUR.—1. pot-**erāmus**,	PLUR.—1. pos-**sēmus**,
2. pot-**erātis**,	2. pos-**sētis**,
3. pot-**erant**.	3. pos-**sent**.

FUTURE.

I shall be able.

SING.—1. pot-**erō**,
2. pot-**eris**,
3. pot-**erit**.

PLUR.—1. pot-**erimus**,
2. pot-**eritis**,
3. pot-**erunt**.

PERFECT.

I have been able, I could.	*I have, may have, been able.*
SING.—1. pot-**uī**,	SING.—1. pot-**uerim**,
2. pot-**uistī**,	2. pot-**ueris**,
3. pot-**uit**.	3. pot-**uerit**.
PLUR.—1. pot-**uimus**,	PLUR.—1. pot-**uerimus**,
2. pot-**uistis**,	2. pot-**ueritis**,
3. pot-**uērunt** (or **-uēre**).	3. pot-**uerint**.

PLUPERFECT.

I had been able.	*I had, might have, been able.*
SING.—1. pot-**ueram**,	SING.—1. pot-**uissem**,
2. pot-**uerās**,	2. pot-**uissēs**,
3. pot-**uerat**.	3. pot-**uisset**.
PLUR.—1. pot-**uerāmus**,	PLUR.—1. pot-**uissēmus**,
2. pot-**uerātis**,	2. pot-**uissētis**,
3. pot-**uerant**.	3. pot-**uissent**.

FUTURE PERFECT INDICATIVE.

I shall have been able.

SING. — 1.	pot-**uerim**,	PLUR.—1. pot-**uerimus**,
2.	pot-**ueris**,	2. pot-**ueritis**,
3.	pot-**uerit**.	3. pot-**uerint**.

INFINITIVE.

PRES. pos-**se**, *to be able.* PERF. pot-**uisse**, *to have been able.*

Possum is compounded of **pot (potis, pote)** and **sum**: **t** becomes **s** before **s**: in the perfect forms, **f** (as in **pot-fuī**) is dropped.

378. Examine the following:

1. **SĪ id crēdis, errās,** *if you believe that, you are going wrong.*
2. **SĪ id crēdēbās, errābās,** *if you believed that, you were going wrong.*
3. **SĪ id crēdidistī, errāvistī,** *if you (have) believed that, you (have gone) went wrong.* [*wrong.*
4. **SĪ id crēdēs, errābis,** *if you (shall) believe that, you will (be) go(ing)*
5. **SĪ id crēdideris, errāveris,** *if you (shall have) believe(d) that, you will have gone (will go) wrong.*
6. **SĪ quid crēdidistī, errās,** *if you have believed anything, you go wrong.* [*wrong.*
7. **SĪ quid crēdiderās, errābās,** *if you had believed anything, you went*

Observe:

1. That all these sentences contain two parts, the *Condition,* or IF-CLAUSE (called *Prótasis*), and the *Conclusion* (called *Apódosis*).

2. That they are simple statements: if this is so, then that is so.

379. **Vocabulary.**

sī, cond. conj. *if.*
nisi, cond. conj. *if not, unless.*
spīritus, -ūs, m. *breath.*
rēctē, adv. *rightly.*

sequ-or,	**seq-uī,**	**secū-tus sum,**		*I follow.*
aberr-ō,	**-āre,**	**-āvī,**	**-ātum,**	*I go astray.*
condole-ō,	**-ēre,**	**-u-ī,**	——	*I pain, give pain.*

EXERCISES.

380. I. 1. Sī spīritum dūcit, vīvit. 2. Sī pēs condoluit, ferre nōn possumus. 3. Vīvam, sī illa vīvet. 4. Nisi tū Rōmā discēsseris, errābis. 5. Nunc sī potes, gaudē. 6. Nātūram sī sequēmur, numquam aberrābimus. 7. Cum haec perficere nōn possīmus, domum revertēmur. 8. Caesar dīxit sē hōc facere nōn posse. 9. Amēmus patriam et fortiter pūgnēmus. 10. Sabīnī vēnērunt ut lūdōs vidērent.

II. 1. If he lives, he is drawing breath. 2. We shall not be able to depart from Rome. 3. If I can, I shall sail to Athens. 4. If you followed your guide, you were not going astray. 5. Since we could not storm the town, we wintered in that place. 6. Caesar said the town could be taken. 7. The general promised that he would come quickly. 8. If you have conquered your anger, you have done rightly. 9. If the town shall be captured, we shall all be killed. 10. The boy hoped that the letter would be written.

381. RULE.—*The Logical Condition, assuming a thing to be a fact, takes the Indicative in both Protasis and Apodosis.*

LESSON LXXXIII.

Conjugation of PRŌSUM. Conditional Sentences Continued.

382. PRINCIPAL PARTS: **prōsum, prōdesse, prōfuī, prōfutūrus,** *I profit.*

INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
PRESENT.	
SING. — 1. prō-**sum,**	SING. — 1. prō-**sim,**
2. prōd-**es,**	2. prō-**sīs,**
3. prōd-**est.**	3. prō-**sit.**
PLUR. — 1. prō-**sumus,**	PLUR. — 1. prō-**sīmus,**
2. prōd-**estis,**	2. prō-**sītis,**
3. prō-**sunt.**	3. prō-**sint.**

IMPERFECT.

SING. — 1. prōd-eram,	SING. — 1. prōd-essem,
2. prōd-erās, &c.	2. prōd-essēs, &c.

FUTURE.

SING. — 1. prōd-erō,
2. prōd-eris, &c.

PERFECT.

SING. — 1. prō-fuī,	SING. — 1. prō-fuerim,
2. prō-fuistī, &c.	2. prō-fueris, &c.

PLUPERFECT.

SING. — 1. prō-fueram,	SING. — 1. prō-fuissem,
2. prō-fuerās, &c.	2. prō-fuissēs, &c.

FUTURE PERFECT.

SING. — 1. prō-fuerō,
2. prō-fueris, &c.

INFINITIVE.

PRES. prōd-esse. PERF. prō-fuisse. FUT. prō-futūrum esse.

PARTICIPLE.

FUT. prō-futūrus.

In the forms of **prōsum, prōd-** is used before vowels.

383. Examine the following :

1. **Sī id crēdās, errēs,** *if you should (were to) believe that, you would be going wrong.*

2. **Sī id crēdās, errāveris,** *if you should (were to) believe that, you would go wrong.*

3. **Sī id crēdideris, errēs,** *if you should have believed (come to believe) that, you would be going wrong.*

Observe :

1. That in these sentences the idea is *Future* and still in suspense, and that the supposition is more or less fanciful.

2. That the *Subjunctive* is found in both *Protasis* and *Apodosis*, the *Present* being used for *Continued Action* and the *Perfect* for *Completed Action.*

384. Vocabulary.

senior, -ōris, m. *old man.*	**senātōr, -ōris,** m. *senator.*
senectūs, -ūtis, f. *old age.*	**cōntiō, -ōnis,** f. *assembly, meeting.*
campus, -ī, m. *field, plain.*	**palūs, -ūdis,** f. *swamp, marsh.*
tempestās, -ātis, f. *storm : time.*	**subitō,** adv. *suddenly.*

distribu-ō,	**-ere,**	**-u-ī,**	**-ū-tum,**	*I divide, distribute.*
ōrdin-ō,	**-āre,**	**-āvī,**	**-ātum,**	*I set in order, arrange.*
coŏri-or,	**-orīrī,**	**-ortus sum,**		*I arise.*

EXERCISES.

385. I. 1. Omnia faciant, sī eōs senātōrēs nōminet. 2. Sī haec rēs accidat, cōntiōnem habuerit. 3. Senectūs est plēna voluptātis. 4. Dum cōntiōnem in campō ad (*near*) palūdem habet, subitō coörta est tempestās. 5. Hīs rēbus ōrdinātīs, discēdat, sī possit. 6. Rōmulus seniōrēs senātōrēs nōmināvit propter senectūtem. 7. Sī populum dēcēperis, errāveris. 8. Sī Tatius occīdātur, Rōmulus rēx sōlus sit. 9. Rōmānī Rōmulum deum esse putāvērunt. 10. Dum haec geruntur, Rōmam proficīscāmur.

II. 1. If they (will) do this, we shall make a treaty. 2. If they should do this, we should make a treaty. 3. If they should have done this, we should be making a treaty. 4. We should hold an assembly, if we should be able. 5. While he was holding an assembly, a storm suddenly arose. 6. We saw that many soldiers were in the plain. 7. The senators repented of their folly. 8. Since we cannot arrange these things, let us depart. 9. The lieutenant hoped that a battle would be fought. 10. There is no doubt that a battle was fought.

386. RULE.—*The Ideal Condition, representing the matter as still in suspense and implying doubt, takes the Subjunctive in both Protasis and Apodosis, the Present being used for Continued Action and the Perfect for Completed Action.*

LESSON LXXXIV.

Conjugation of EŌ, *I go*. Conditional Sentences Concluded.

387. PRINCIPAL PARTS: **eō, īre, īvī (iī), itum,** *I go*.

INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
PRESENT.	
I go, am going, do go.	*I be going, may go.*
SING. — 1. e-ō,	SING. — 1. ea-m,
2. ī-s,	2. eā-s,
3. i-t.	3. ea-t.
PLUR. — 1. ī-mus,	PLUR. — 1. eā-mus,
2. ī-tis,	2. eā-tis,
3. eu-nt.	3. ea-nt.
IMPERFECT.	
I was going, did go, went.	*I were going, might go.*
SING. — 1. ī-ba-m,	SING. — 1. ī-re-m,
2. ī-bā-s,	2. ī-rē-s,
3. ī-ba-t.	3. ī-re-t.
PLUR. — 1. ī-bā-mus,	PLUR. — 1. ī-rē-mus,
2. ī-bā-tis,	2. ī-rē-tis,
3. ī-ba-nt.	3. ī-re-nt.
FUTURE.	
I shall go.	
SING. — 1. ī-b-ō,	
2. ī-bi-s,	
3. ī-bi-t.	
PLUR. — 1. ī-bi-mus,	
2. ī-bi-tis,	
3. ī-bu-nt.	
PERFECT.	
I have gone, or *I went.*	
SING. — 1. ī-v-ī (or iī),	SING. — 1. ī-v-eri-m (or ierim),
2. ī-v-istī (or iistī),	2. ī-v-eri-s,
3. ī-v-it (or iit).	3. ī-v-eri-t.
PLUR. — 1. ī-v-i-mus (or iimus),	PLUR. — 1. ī-v-eri-mus,
2. ī-v-istis (or iistis),	2. ī-v-eri-tis,
3. ī-v-ērunt (or iērunt).	3. ī-v-eri-nt.

INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
PLUPERFECT.	
I had gone.	
SING. — 1. **i-v-era-m** (or **ieram**),	SING. — 1. **i-v-isse-m** (**iissem** or
2. **i-v-erā-s**,	2. **i-v-issē-s**, [**issem**),
3. **i-v-era-t**.	3. **i-v-isse-t**.
PLUR.—1. **i-v-erā-mus**,	PLUR.—1. **i-v-issē-mus**,
2. **i-v-erā-tis**,	2. **i-v-issē-tis**,
3. **i-v-era-nt**.	3. **i-v-isse-nt**.
FUTURE PERFECT.	
I shall have gone.	
SING. — 1. **i-v-er-ō** (or **ierō**),	
2. **i-v-eri-s**,	
3. **i-v-eri-t**.	
PLUR.—1. **i-v-eri-mus**,	
2. **i-v-eri-tis**,	
3. **i-v-eri-nt**.	

IMPERATIVE.

PRES. SING.— 2. **ī**, *go you.*	FUT. SING. — 2. **i-tō**, *you shall go.*
3. ——	3. **i-tō**, *he shall go.*
PLUR.—2. **i-te**, *go ye.*	PLUR.— 2. **i-tōte**, *ye shall go.*
3. ——	3. **eu-ntō**, *they shall go.*

INFINITIVE.	PARTICIPLES.
PRES. **i-re**, *to go.*	PRES. **iē-ns** (Gen. **eu-nt-is**), *going.*
PERF. **i-v-isse**, *to have gone.*	FUT. **i-tūr-us, -a, -um**, *about to go.*
FUT. **i-tūr-um, -am, -um [esse]**, *to be about to go.*	

GERUND.	SUPINE.
GEN. **eu-nd-ī**, *of going.*	
DAT. **eu-nd-ō**, *to going.*	ACC. **i-tum**, *to go.*
ACC. **eu-nd-um**, *going.*	ABL. **i-tū**, *to go.*
ABL. **eu-nd-ō**, *by going.*	

Observe :

That the stem **i** becomes **e** before **a**, **o**, and **u**.

388. Examine the following :

1. **SI id crēdērēs, errārēs**, *if you believed (were believing) that, you would be going wrong.*

2. **SI id crēdidissēs, errāvissēs**, *if you had believed that, you would have gone wrong.*

Observe :

1. That the idea here is *past,* and hence *impossible,* so that in each sentence the negative is implied : e.g. *if you believed that* implies *you do not,* and *if you had believed that* implies *you did not.*

2. That the *Subjunctive* is found in both *Protasis* and *Apodosis,* the *Imperfect* being used for *Continued Action* (opposed to Present) and the *Pluperfect* for *Completed Action* (opposed to Past).

389. Vocabulary.

sapientia, -ae, f. *wisdom.*
inopia, -ae, f. *want, need.*
dictātor, -ōris, m. *dictator.*
nihil (indecl.), n. *nothing.*

expet-ō,	**-ere,**	**-petīv-ī,**	**-petī-tum,**	*I seek after.*
effici-ō,	**-ere,**	**-fēc-ī,**	**-fec-tum,**	*I effect, do.*
recūs-ō,	**-āre,**	**-āvī,**	**-ātum,**	*I refuse.*

EXERCISES.

390. I. 1. Sī Caesar adesset, oppidum occupāret. 2. Sī Caesar adfuisset, oppidum occupāvisset. 3. Sapientia nōn expeterētur, sī nihil efficeret. 4. Sī ibi tē esse scīssem, ad tē ipse vēnissem. 5. Nisi ante Rōmā profectus essēs, nunc eam certē relinquerēs. 6. Sī fortēs essētis, hostibus resisterētis. 7. Sī haec vēra esse scīrem, Rōmam īrem. 8. Sī mihĭ hōc dīxissēs, adfuissem. 9. Sī cōnsul oppidum occupāvisset, oppidānōs omnēs interfēcisset. 10. Sī mīlitēs nōn territī essent, nōn fūgissent.

II. 1. If you would tell me this, I should be glad. 2. If you were telling me this, I should be glad. 3. If you had told me this, I should have been glad. 4. If you had asked Caesar, he would not have refused. 5. If the army had fled, Rome would have been captured. 6. The Helvetians would not have made a conspiracy, if they had not been led on by want. 7. If you had been dictator, the enemy would not have done this. 8. If you were

worthy, we should make peace. 9. If the maidens had not been seized, the Sabines would not have fought. 10. If Caesar were in Rome, the senate would flee.

391. RULE.—*The Unreal Condition, denoting that which is not or was not true, takes the Subjunctive in both Protasis and Apodosis, the Imperfect being used for that which is not, the Pluperfect for that which was not, true.*

Reading Lesson.

Rōmulus, Rōmānōrum Prīmus Rēx.—V.

Centum deinde ex seniōribus ēlēgit, quōrum[1] cōnsiliō omnia ageret, quōs senātōrēs nōminā̆vit propter senectūtem. Trēs equitum centuriās cōnstituit, populum in trīgintā cūriās distribuit. Hīs[2] ita ōrdinātīs, cum ad[3] exercitum lūstrandum cōntiōnem in campō ad Caprae palūdem habēret, subitō coörta est tempestās cum māgnō fragōre tonitribusque et Rōmulus ē cōnspectū ablātus est.[4]

NOTES.

1. **quōrum . . . ageret**: *by whose advice he should do all things.* **quōrum** (= **ut eōrum**): the Relative is often used instead of **ut** with the forms of **is** to denote Purpose or Result. 2. **His**, Abl. Abs. 3. **ad . . . lūstrandum**: *for (the purpose of) reviewing the army.* 4. **ablātus est**: from **auferō** (393).

LESSON LXXXV.

392. Conjugation of FERŌ: Active and Passive.

PRINCIPAL PARTS: **ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum,** *I bear.*

ACTIVE.

	INDICATIVE.		SUBJUNCTIVE.	
	I bear, I am bearing, do bear.		*I be bearing, may bear.*	
PRES. SG.	1. **fer-ō,**	PL. 1. **fer-i-mus,**	SG. 1. **fera-m,**	PL. 1. **ferā-mus,**
	2. **fer-s,**	2. **fer-tis,**	2. **ferā-s,**	2. **ferā-tis,**
	3. **fer-t.**	3. **fer-u-nt.**	3. **fera-t.**	3. **fera-nt.**

IMPF. SG.	1. **ferē-ba-m**, *I was bearing.*	SG. 1. **fer-re-m**, *I were bearing.*
	2. **ferē-bā-s**, &c.	2. **fer-rē-s**, &c.
FUT.	1. **fera-m**, *I shall bear.*	
	2. **ferē-s**, &c.	
PERF.	1. **tul-ī**, *I have borne.*	1. **tul-eri-m**, *I have (may have) borne.*
	2. **tul-istī**, &c.	2. **tul-eri-s**, &c.
PLUPF.	1. **tul-era-m**, *I had borne.*	1. **tul-isse-m**, *I had (might have) borne.*
	2. **tul-erā-s**, &c.	2. **tul-issē-s**, &c.
FUT. PF.	1. **tul-er-ō**, *I shall have borne.*	
	2. **tul-eri-s**, &c.	

IMPERATIVE.

PRES. SG.	2. **fer**, *bear you.*	FUT. SG. 2. **fer-tō**, *you shall bear.*
	3. ——	3. **fer-tō**, *he shall bear.*
PL.	2. **fer-te**, *bear ye.*	PL. 2. **fer-tōte**, *you shall bear.*
	3. ——	3. **feru-ntō**, *they shall bear.*

INFINITIVE.

PRES.	**fer-re**, *to bear.*
PERF.	**tul-isse**, *to have borne.*
FUT.	**lā-tūr-um, -am, -um [esse]**, *to be about to bear.*

PARTICIPLES.

PRES.	**fer-ē-ns**, *bearing.*
FUT.	**lā-tūr-us, -a, -um**, *about to bear.*

GERUND.

GEN.	**fere-nd-ī**, *of bearing.*
DAT.	**fere-nd-ō**, *to bearing.*
ACC.	**fere-nd-um**, *bearing.*
ABL.	**fere-nd-ō**, *by bearing.*

SUPINES.

ACC.	**lā-tum**, *to bear.*
ABL.	**lā-tū**, *to bear.*

PASSIVE.

INDICATIVE.

I am borne.

PRES. SG.	1. **fer-o-r**,	PL. 1. **feri-mur**,	SG. 1. **fera-r**, PL. 1. **ferā-mur**,
	2. **fer-ris** (or **-re**),	2. **feri-minī**,	2. **ferā-ris** (or **-re**), 2. **ferā-minī**,
	3. **fer-tur**.	3. **fer-u-ntur**.	3. **ferā-tur**. 3. **fera-ntur**.
IMPERF.	1. **ferē-ba-r**, *I was borne.*		1. **fer-re-r**, *I were (might be) borne.*
	2. **ferē-bā-ris** (or **-re**), &c.		2. **fer-rē-ris** (or **-re**), &c.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

I be (may be) borne.

	INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
FUT. SG.	1. **fera-r**, *I shall be borne.* 2. **ferē-ris** (or **-re**), &c.	
PERF.	1. **lā-tus sum**, &c., *I have been borne*, or *was borne.*	1. **lā-tus sim**, &c., *I have (may have) been borne.*
PLUPF.	1. **lā-tus eram**, &c., *I had been borne.*	1. **lā-tus essem**, &c., *I had (might have) been borne.*
FUT. PF.	1. **lā-tus erō**, &c., *I shall have been borne.*	

IMPERATIVE.

PRES. SG.	2. **fer-re**, *be - you borne.*	FUT. SG. 2. **fer-tor**, *you shall be borne.*
	3. ——	3. **fer-tor**, *ye shall be borne.*
PL.	2. **feri-minī**, *be ye borne.*	PL. 2. ——
	3. ——	3. **feru-ntor**, *they shall be borne.*

INFINITIVE.	PARTICIPLE.
PRES. **fer-rī**, *to be borne.*	PERF. **lā-t-us, -a, -um**, *borne, having been borne.*
PERF. **lā-tum, -am, -um esse**, *to have been borne.*	GERUNDIVE.
FUT. **lā-tum īrī**, *to be about to be borne.*	**fere-nd-us, -a, -um**, (*one*) *to be borne.*

393. Vocabulary.

volgō, adv. *commonly.*
sēditiō, -ōnis, f. *sedition, mutiny.*
iūsiūrandum, iūrisiūrandī, n. *oath.*
fōrma, -ae, f. *form, shape, figure.*

af-fer-ō,	**af-fer-re,**	**at-tul-ī,**	**al-lā-tum,**	*I bear to.*
au-fer-ō,	**au-fer-re,**	**abs-tul-ī,**	**ab-lā-tum,**	*I bear away.*
cōn-fer-ō,	**cōn-fer-re,**	**con-tul-ī,**	**col-lā-tum,**	*I bear together, collect.*
dif-fer-ō,	**dif-fer-re,**	**dis-tul-ī,**	**dī-lā-tum,**	*I put off, differ.*
ef-fer-ō,	**ef-fer-re,**	**ex-tul-ī,**	**ē-lā-tum,**	*I carry out.*
of-fer-ō,	**of-fer-re,**	**ob-tul-ī,**	**ob-lā-tum,**	*I offer.*

EXERCISES.

394. I. 1. Populus volgō Rōmulum deum esse crēdidit. 2. Cum sēditiō orta esset, in cōntiōnem prōcēssit Iūlius. 3. Dīcit Rōmulum augustiōre fōrmā esse. 4. Populō Rōmānō pācem et ōtium attulistī. 5. Tempestāte ortā, Rōmulus ablātus est. 6. Impedīmenta omnia in ūnum locum cōnferuntur. 7. Castrīs ante oppidum positīs in posterum diem pūgnam differt. 8. Caesar omnia arma ab oppidō efferrī iubet. 9. Tē ad mortem offerō. 10. Tē in oppidum cōnfer.

II. 1. He affirmed with an oath that he had seen Romulus. 2. Romulus having been borne away, a sedition arose between the fathers and the common people. 3. He promised that he would bring letters to me. 4. He said that he would sail from Tarentum to Athens. 5. If you had brought together all the baggage, you would not have been conquered. 6. You would put off the battle, if you could. 7. Do not carry the standards out of town. 8. Let us not expose ourselves to dangers without cause. 9. Would that you were not bearing aid to the enemy. 10. Let us go into town.

LESSON LXXXVI.

395. Conjugation of FĪŌ. Predicate Nominative.

1. **Fīō** supplies the lacking *Passive of* **faciō**.

2. When **faciō** is compounded with a *preposition*, the Passive is formed regularly from the same stem, but *otherwise* from **fīō**: e.g. **interficiō**, passive **interficior**; **patefaciō**, passive **patefīō**.

PRINCIPAL PARTS: **fīō, fierī, factus sum**, *I become, I am made.*

	INDICATIVE. *I am made, I become.*		SUBJUNCTIVE. *I may become, be made.*	
	SG.	PL.	SG.	PL.
PRES.	1. **fīō,**	1. **(fīmus),**	1. **fīam,**	1. **fīāmus,**
	2. **fīs,**	2. **(fītis),**	2. **fīās,**	2. **fīātis,**
	3. **fit.**	3. **fīunt.**	3. **fīat.**	3. **fīant.**

IMPF. SG.	1. **fīēbam,** *I was made, I became.*	1. **fierem,** *I might become, be made.*
	2. **fīēbās,** &c.	2. **fierēs,** &c.
FUT.	1. **fiam,** *I shall be made, become.*	
	2. **fīēs,** &c.	
PERF.	1. **factus sum,** &c., *I have been made, become.*	1. **factus sim,** &c., *I may have been made, become.*
PLUPF.	1. **factus eram,** &c., *I had been made, become.*	1. **factus essem,** &c., *I might have been made, become.*
FUT. PF.	1. **factus erō,** &c., *I shall have been made, become.*	

IMPERATIVE.	INFINITIVE.
PRES. SG. 2. **fī,** *become you.*	PRES. **fierī,** *to become.*
PL. 2. **fī-te,** *become ye.*	PERF. **factum, -am, -um esse,** *to have become.*
	FUT. **factum īrī,** *to be about to be made.*

396. Examine the following:

1. Nēmŏ nāscitur **dīves,** *no one is born* RICH.
2. Servius **rēx** est dēclārātus, *Servius was declared* KING.
3. **Beātus** esse sine virtūte nēmŏ potest, *no one can be* HAPPY *without virtue.*

Observe:

1. That the words in black type are in the *Nominative Case,* and that the adjectives agree with their nouns in *Gender, Number,* and *Case.*

2. That the *Nominative* is retained with the *Infinitive* if the *Adjective agrees* with the *Subject* of the *principal verb.*

397. **Vocabulary.**

nāsc-or,	**nāsc-ī,**	**nā-tus sum,**	*I am born.*
ēvād-ō,	**-ere,**	**ēvās-ī, ēvā-sum,**	*I come out, escape, become.*
exsist-ō,	**-ere,**	**exstit-ī,** ———	*I step out: I appear, become.*
habe-or,	**-ērī,**	**habi-tus sum,**	*I am held, am considered.*

EXERCISES.

398. I. 1. Aristīdēs iūstus appellātur. 2. Rōmulus deus habitus est. 3. Rōmānī gentium dominī exstitērunt. 4. Rōmulus Quirīnus est appellātus. 5. Ex illā pūgnā nēmŏ ēvāsit incolumis. 6. Paucī nāscuntur dīvitēs. 7. Nēmŏ ante mortem beātus appellārī potest. 8. Caesar cōnsul creātus est. 9. Is homŏ perītissimus bellī habēbātur. 10. Caesar, tū nunquam fīēs rēx Rōmānōrum.

II. 1. After the death of Romulus, Numa became king. 2. Romulus seemed to be angry. 3. Caesar escaped safe from the battle. 4. He said the Romans would become masters of the world. 5. Cicero was considered a very great orator. 6. When Caesar had been made consul, he set out for Gaul. 7. Alexander was born king of Macedonia. 8. One became consul, the other, king. 9. If Remus should leap over the wall, Romulus would become angry. 10. If Caesar had been present, the Romans would have conquered.

399. RULE.—*Verbs of Seeming and Becoming, with the passive of verbs of Naming, Making, Choosing, Calling, Showing, and Thinking, take two Nominatives, one of the Subject, the other of the Predicate.*

Reading Lesson.

Rōmulus, Rōmānōrum Prīmus Rēx.—VI.

Ad deōs trānsīsse[1] volgō crēditus est; cuī reī fidem[2] fēcit Iūlius Proculus, vir nōbilis. Ortā enim inter patrēs et plēbem sēditiōne, in cōntiōnem prōcēssit iūreiūrandō adfīrmāns vīsum[3] ā sē Rōmulum augustiōre fōrmā,[4] eundemque[5] praecipere ut[6] sēditiōnibus abstinērent et rem mīlitārem colerent; futūrum[7] ut omnium gentium dominī exsisterent. Aedēs in colle Quirīnālī

Rōmulō cōnstitūta,[8] ipse prō deō[9] cultus et Quirīnus est appellātus.

NOTES.

1. **trānsisse ... est**: *he was believed to have crossed* or *it was believed that he crossed*. 2. **fidem fēcit**: *gave faith*. 3. **vīsum**: sc. **esse**, Infin. with **Rōmulum** after **adfirmāns**. 4. Abl. of Quality (286). 5. **eundemque**: *and he;* **eundem**: subject Acc. of **praecipere**. 6. **ut**: of Purpose. 7. **futūrum ut ... exsisterent**: (*it would happen*) *that the Romans would become masters of the world;* **ut**: of Result after a verb of *happening*. 8. **cōnstitūta**: *sc.* **est**, of which **aedēs** is subject. 9. **prō deō**: *as a god*.

LESSON LXXXVII.

Conjugation of VOLŌ; NŌLŌ; MĀLŌ.

400. PRINCIPAL PARTS:

volō, *I am willing*,	**velle**,	**voluī**.
nōlō, *I am unwilling*,	**nōlle**,	**nōluī**.
mālō, *I prefer*,	**mālle**,	**māluī**.

INDICATIVE.

	I am willing.	*I am unwilling.*	*I prefer.*
PRES. SG.	1. **volō**,	1. **nōlō**,	1. **mālō**,
	2. **vīs**,	2. **nōn vīs**,	2. **māvīs**,
	3. **vult**.	3. **nōn vult**.	3. **māvult**.
PL.	1. **volumus**,	1. **nōlumus**,	1. **mālumus**,
	2. **vultis**,	2. **nōn vultis**,	2. **māvultis**,
	3. **volunt**.	3. **nōlunt**.	3. **mālunt**.
IMPF.	**volēbam**, &c., *I was willing.*	**nōlēbam**, &c., *I was unwilling.*	**mālēbam**, &c., *I was preferring.*
FUT.	1. **volam**, *I shall be willing.*	**nōlam**, *I shall be unwilling.*	**mālam**, *I shall prefer.*
	2. **volēs**, &c.	**nōlēs**, &c.	**mālēs**, &c.
PERF.	**voluī**, &c., *I have been willing.*	**nōluī**, &c., *I have been unwilling.*	**māluī**, &c., *I have preferred.*
PLUPERF.	**volueram**, &c., *I had been willing.*	**nōlueram**, &c., *I had been unwilling.*	**mālueram**, &c., *I had preferred.*
FUT. PERF.	**voluerō**, &c., *I shall have been willing.*	**nōluerō**, &c., *I shall have been unwilling.*	**māluerō**, &c., *I shall have preferred.*

SUBJUNCTIVE.

	I may be willing.	*I may be unwilling.*	*I may prefer.*
PRES. SG.	1. **velim,**	1. **nōlim,**	1. **mālim,**
	2. **velīs,**	2. **nōlīs,**	2. **mālīs,**
	3. **velit.**	3. **nōlit.**	3. **mālit.**
PL.	1. **velīmus,**	1. **nōlīmus,**	1. **mālīmus,**
	2. **velītis,**	2. **nōlītis,**	2. **mālītis,**
	3. **velint.**	3. **nōlint.**	3. **mālint.**
IMPF.	**vellem,** &c., *I might be willing.*	**nōllem,** &c., *I might be unwilling.*	**māllem,** &c., *I might prefer.*
PERF.	**voluerim,** &c., *I may have been willing.*	**nōluerim,** &c., *I may have been unwilling.*	**māluerim,** &c., *I may have preferred.*
PLUPERF.	**voluissem,** &c., *I might have been willing.*	**nōluissem,** &c., *I might have been unwilling.*	**māluissem,** &c., *I might have preferred.*

IMPERATIVE.

(*Wanting.*)

PRES. SG. 2. **nōlī,** *be you unwilling.*

3. ——

PL. 2. **nōlīte,** *be ye unwilling.*

3. ——

FUT. SG. 2. **nōlītō,** *you shall be unwilling.*

3. **nōlītō,** *he shall be unwilling.*

PL. 2. **nōlītōte,** *ye shall be unwilling.*

3. **nōluntō,** *they shall be unwilling.*

(*Wanting.*)

INFINITIVE.

PRES.	**velle,** *to be willing.*	**nōlle,** *to be unwilling.*	**mālle,** *to prefer.*
PERF.	**voluisse,** *to have been willing.*	**nōluisse,** *to have been unwilling.*	**māluisse,** *to have preferred.*

PARTICIPLES.

PRES.	**volēns,** *willing.*	**nōlēns,** *unwilling.*	(*Wanting.*)

401. Vocabulary.

infestus, -a, -um, *hostile.*	**aliās,** adv. *at another time.*
tūtus, -a, -um, *safe.*	**sublicius, -a, -um,** *resting on piles.*
cōgnōmen, -inis, n. *surname.*	**oculus, -ī,** m. *eye.*

restitu-ō,	**-ere,**	**restitu-ī,**	**restitū-tum,**	*I restore.*
saepi-ō,	**-īre,**	**saep-sī,**	**saep-tum,**	*I hedge in, fortify.*
āmitt-ō,	**-ere,**	**-mīs-ī,**	**-mis-sum,**	*I lose, send away.*

EXERCISES.

402. I. 1. Rēx Etrūscōrum in rēgnum Tarquiniōs restituere voluit. 2. Rōmānī autem Tarquiniōs rēgēs habēre nōluērunt. 3. Līberī esse māluērunt. 4. Sī Rōmam venīre vīs, nōlī tempus āmittere. 5. Urbs tūta esse vidēbātur. 6. Rōmānī ad Pontem Sublicium Horātium mīsērunt. 7. Horātius Cocles appellātus est, quod (*because*) oculum āmīserat. 8. Puer magistrum rogāvit cūr illō cōgnōmine appellātus esset. 9. Magister dīxit sē aliās respōnsūrum esse. 10. Tīmoleōn māluit sē dīligī quam metuī.

II. 1. If you wish, let us go. 2. He came in order to restore the Tarquins. 3. The Romans said that they preferred to be free. 4. Romulus wished the city to be fortified with garrisons. 5. If he had been unwilling, he would not have gone. 6. We shall be unwilling to go. 7. There is no doubt that he would have preferred to remain. 8. Are you unwilling to fight in behalf of your country? 9. If you were willing, I should go at another time. 10. We shall be unwilling to lose our liberty.

LESSON LXXXVIII.

403. Gerund and Gerundive.

1. The *Infinitive* is used only in the *Nominative* and *Accusative cases*, the other cases being supplied by the *Gerund*. After prepositions, the *Gerund, not* the Infinitive, is used. Cf. 265.

2. The *Gerund* is a *Verbal Noun* in the *Neuter Gender.* The *Gerundive* is a *Verbal Adjective* and *agrees* with its Noun.

404. Examine the following :

1. Puer studiōsus est **legendī**, *the boy is zealous* OF READING.
2. Puer operam dat **legendō**, *the boy devotes himself* TO READING.
3. Puer prōpēnsus est ad **legendum**, *the boy is prone to* READING.
4. Puer dīscit **legendō**, *the boy learns* BY READING.

Observe :

That the *Gerund* is a *Verbal Noun* in the *Gen., Dat., Acc.,* and *Abl.,* and that it is *governed by other words* just like any other noun.

405. Examine the following :

1. Puer studiōsus est { **legendī epistulam,** / **legendae epistulae,** } *the boy is zealous* OF READING THE LETTER.
2. Puer operam dat { **legendō epistulam,** / **legendae epistulae,** } *the boy devotes himself* TO READING THE LETTER.
3. Puer prōpēnsus est { **(ad legendum epistulam),** / **ad legendam epistulam,** } *the boy has a bent toward* READING THE LETTER.
4. Puer dīscit { **legendō epistulam,** / **legendā epistulā,** } *the boy learns* BY READING THE LETTER.

Observe :

1. That in each of the above sentences, two expressions are in black type.

2. That the first expression in each sentence is a *Gerund,* with its object.

3. That the second expression in each sentence shows the *object attracted into the case of the Gerund,* and the *Gerundive* (*not* Gerund) *used as an Adjective agreeing with it in Gender, Number, and Case.*

Caution :

Remember that the *Gerund* is a *Verbal Noun* in the *neuter Gender,* while the *Gerundive* is an *Adjective* and *must agree* with its noun in *Gender, Number, and Case.*

406. Vocabulary.

studiōsus, -a, -um, *zealous.* **opportūnus**, -a, -um, *fit, opportune.*
prōpēnsus, -a, -um, *prone to.* **parātus**, -a, -um, *prepared.*

al-ō,	**al-ere**,	**al-uī**,	**ali-tum** and **al-tum**,	*I nourish, support.*
explōr-ō,	**-āre**,	**-āvī**,	**-ātum**,	*I search out, examine, explore.*
suscipi-ō,	**-ere**,	**-cēp-ī**,	**-cep-tum**,	*I undertake.*

EXERCISES.

407. I. 1. Divitiacus loquendī fīnem fēcit. 2. Puer est studiōsus scrībendae epistulae. 3. Memoria exercendō alitur. 4. Cōnsul ad suscipiendam rem parātus erat. 5. Caesar ad explōrandum mīlitēs praemīsit. 6. Puerī prōpēnsī sunt ad omnia dēlenda. 7. Hīc locus opportūnus est proeliō cōnserendō. 8. Multī convēnēre studiō videndae novae urbis. 9. Rōmulus et Remus vēnandō saltūs peragrāvērunt. 10. Ad lūstrandum exercitum cōntiōnem in campō ad Caprae palūdem habuit.

II. 1. The Etruscans came to Rome for the purpose of restoring the kings. 2. All things were opportune for crossing the river. 3. Caesar was desirous of storming the city. 4. The enemy deliberated about building a tower. 5. Books are useful for reading. 6. The mind is nourished by reading and writing. 7. The army was prepared for storming the town. 8. The lieutenant devotes himself to exploring the region. 9. The general thought that all things were prepared for setting out. 10. A beginning of crossing was made by the enemy.

408. Rule.—*As a verbal form, the Gerund governs the same case as its verb.*

409. Rule.—*Instead of the Gerund with an Accusative object, the Object is generally put in the case of the Gerund, with the Gerundive as an Attribute.*

LESSON LXXXIX.

The Supines.

410. The *Supine* is a Verbal noun used only in the *Accusative* and *Ablative Cases.*

411. Examine the following:

1. Lēgātī ad Caesarem **grātulātum** vēnērunt, *ambassadors came to Caesar* TO CONGRATULATE *him.*
2. Id **dictū** quam rē facilius est, *that is easier* IN THE SAYING *than in the deed.*

Observe:

1. That in the first sentence, **grātulātum,** used after a verb of *Motion,* denotes the Purpose of the coming.
2. That in the second sentence, **dictū** is used after the Adjective **facile** to limit its meaning (Abl. of Respect, 145).

412. Examine the following:

1. Dīxit puerōs interfectum īrī, *he said that the boys would be killed.*
2. Dīxit puellās interfectum īrī, *he said that the girls would be killed.*

Observe:

That the Future Infinitive passive is made up of the Supine in **-um** and the Infinitive passive of **eō,** *I go,* and therefore *no change is made for gender or number.*

413. Vocabulary.

invītus, -a, -um, *unwilling.*			**mīrābilis, -e,** *wonderful.*	
iūcundus, -a, -um, *pleasant.*			**optimus, -a, -um,** *best.*	
fās (indecl.), n. *right.*			**nefās** (indecl.), n. *wrong.*	
nūb-ō,	**-ere,**	**nūp-sī,**	**nūp-tum,**	*I veil myself for, marry* (Dat.).
exclūd-ō,	**-ere,**	**-clū-sī,**	**-clū-sum,**	*I shut out, exclude.*
salūt-ō,	**-āre,**	**-āvī,**	**-ātum,**	*I salute.*

EXERCISES.

414. I. 1. Rōmam vēnit auxilium pōstulātum. 2. Eōs exclūsī, quōs tū ad mē salūtātum mīserās. 3. Hōc est mīrābile dictū. 4. Stultitia est vēnātum dūcere invītās canēs. 5. Fīliam suam nūptum dedit. 6. Pācem petītum ōrātōrēs Rōmam mittuntur. 7. Hōc est iūcundum cōgnitū. 8. Nefās est hōc factū. 9. Dīxit puerōs et puellās exclūsum īrī. 10. Virgō, quae aquam forte extrā moenia petītum ierat, fīlia Tarpēiī erat.

II. 1. The Sabines came to demand the maidens. 2. This is pleasant to hear. 3. It is more difficult to do than to say. 4. Ambassadors were sent to ask peace. 5. This is right in the doing. 6. Many had come to see the city. 7. If you had come you would have seen the city. 8. Since you are here, I shall stay. 9. He said that the letters would be written. 10. Cicero was desirous of obtaining glory.

415. RULE.—*The Accusative Supine* (*in* **-tum**) *is used after Verbs of Motion to express Purpose.*

416 RULE.—*The Ablative Supine* (*in* **-tū**) *is used to limit the meaning of Adjectives.*

Reading Lesson.

Horātius Cocles.—I.

Porsena, rēx Etruscōrum, ad restituendōs in rēgnum Tarquiniōs, īnfestō exercitū Rōmam vēnit. Prīmō impetū Iāniculum cēpit. Nōn[1] umquam aliās ante tantus terror Rōmānōs invāsit; adeō valida rēs tum Clūsīna erat māgnumque[2] Porsenae nōmen. Ex agrīs in urbem dēmigrant: urbem ipsam saepiunt praesidiīs. Alia[3] urbis pars mūrīs, alia Tiberī obiectō tūta vidēbātur. Pōns Sublicius iter paene hostibus dedit,[4] nisi ūnus vir fuisset Horātius

Cocles, illō cōgnōmine appellātus,[5] quod in aliō proeliō oculum āmīserat.

NOTES.

1. **Nōn . . . ante**: *never before* (lit. *not at any other time before*). 2. **māgnumque**; *and so great was.* 3. **Alia . . . vidēbātur**: *One part of the city seemed protected by walls, another by the position of the Tiber before it.* 4. **dedit**: sc. **et dedisset**, and transl. *almost gave and would have given, if it had not been for one man* (= *unless there had been*, &c.), the regular expression for this idiom in Latin. 5. Perf. Pass. Part. agreeing with **Horātius Cocles.**

LESSON XC.

Periphrastic Conjugations. Dative Case.

417. The periphrastic conjugation arises from the combination of the Future Active Participle and the Gerundive with forms of the verb **sum.**

ACTIVE.

	INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
PRES.	amātūrus, -a, -um sum, *I am about to love.*	amātūrus, -a, -um sim, *I be (may be) about to love.*
IMPF.	amātūrus, -a, um eram, *I was about to love.*	amātūrus, -a, -um essem, *I were (might be) about to love.*
FUT.	amātūrus, -a, -um erō, *I shall be about to love.*	
PERF.	amātūrus, -a, -um fuī, *I have been, was, about to love.*	amātūrus, -a, -um fuerim, *I have, may have, been about to love.*
PLUPF.	amātūrus, -a, -um fueram, *I had been about to love.*	amātūrus, -a -um fuissem, *I had, might have, been about to love.*
FUT. PF.	amātūrus, -a, -um fuerō, *I shall have been about to love.*	

INFINITIVE.

PRES. amātūrum, -am, -um esse, *to be about to love.*
PERF. amātūrum, -am, -um fuisse, *to have been about to love.*

PASSIVE.

	INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
PRES.	**amandus, -a, -um sum,** *I have to be loved.*	**amandus, -a, -um sim,** *I have (may have) to be loved.*
IMPF.	**amandus, -a, -um eram,** *I had to be loved.*	**amandus, -a, -um essem,** *I had (might have) to be loved.*
FUT.	**amandus, -a, -um erō,** *I shall have to be loved.*	
PERF.	**amandus, -a, -um fuī,** *I have had to be loved.*	**amandus, -a, -um fuerim,** *I have (may have) had to be loved.*
PLUPF.	**amandus, -a, -um fueram,** *I had had to be loved.*	**amandus, -a, -um fuissem,** *I had (might have) had to be loved.*
FUT. PF.	**amandus, -a, -um fuerō,** *I shall have had to be loved.*	

INFINITIVE.

PRES. **amandum, -am, -um esse,** *to have to be loved.*
PERF. **amandum, -am, -um fuisse,** *to have had to be loved.*

418. Examine the following :

1. { Cōgnōscō, *I am finding out,* / Cōgnōvī, *I have found out,* } **quid factūrus sīs,** *what you (are going to do)* WILL DO.

2. { Cōgnōscēbam, *I was trying to find out,* / Cōgnōvī, *I found out,* / Cōgnōveram, *I had found out,* } **quid factūrus essēs,** *what you (were going to do)* WOULD DO.

Observe :

1. That the *Active Periphrastic* supplies the lacking *Future Subjunctive*, when the leading verb is *not Future*.

2. That the *Present* (**factūrus sīs**) is used after *Principal tenses* and the *Imperfect* (**factūrus essēs**) *after Historical tenses*.

419. Examine the following :

1. Dīligentia **colenda est nōbīs,** *carefulness* IS TO BE (MUST BE) CULTIVATED BY US.

2. **Dēlenda est** Carthāgō, *Carthage* MUST BE DESTROYED.

3. Tibī **parcendum est,** *you* MUST BE SPARED (lit. IT MUST BE SPARED *to you*).

4. Cīvibus ā vōbīs **cōnsulendum est,** *the interest of the citizens* MUST BE CONSULTED *by you*.

Observe :

1. That the *Passive Periphrastic* acquires a sense of *necessity*.

2. That the *Agent*, with the Passive Periphrastic, is expressed by the *Dative, except* when the *verb governs the Dative* (Ex. 4) : then **ā** *or* **ab** *with the Ablative* is used.

420. Vocabulary.

quantus, -a, -um, *how great, how much.*
quālis, -e, *of what kind, what kind of.*
luxuria, -ae, f. *luxury.*
statua, -ae, f. *statue.*

iūdic-ō,	**-āre,**	**-āvī,**	**-ātum,**	*I judge, decide.*
cōnsuēsc-ō,	**-suēsc-ere,**	**-suēv-ī,**	**-suē-tum,**	*I be accustomed.*
ēgredi-or,	**-gred-ī,**	**-gres-sus sum,**		*I go out, come out.*
prōgredi-or,	**-gred-ī,**	**-gres-sus sum,**		*I go forward, advance.*

EXERCISES.

421. I. 1. Anteā dubitābam ventūraene (**ne** = *whether*) essent legiōnēs. 2. Nunc mihĭ nōn est dubium quīn ventūrae nōn sint. 3. Cum luxuriā certandum est nōbīs. 4. Gallī rogāre cōnsuēvērunt quantum datūrī essent. 5. Statua Horātiō pōnenda est. 6. Is dīxit nōbīs prōgrediendum esse. 7. Dē hāc rē imperātōrī iūdicandum erit. 8. Rēs pūblica mīlitibus dēfendenda est. 9. Incertum est quam longa cūiusque nostrum vīta futūra sit. 10. Epistula puerō scrībenda erat.

II. 1. Who doubts that the Romans will conquer ? 2. We must judge concerning the character of Caesar. 3. You must go out from Rome immediately. 4. The consul asked what kind of soldiers he would have. 5. The state must be spared by us. 6. All things had to be done by Caesar. 7. Do not doubt that the soldiers will follow you. 8. We must read good books. 9. The teacher said that we must write the letter. 10. We must advance to battle.

422. RULE.—*The lacking Future Subjunctive is supplied by the Active Periphrastic Subjunctive, the Present being used after Principal tenses and the Imperfect after Historical tenses.*

423. RULE.—*The Indirect Question is always in the Subjunctive Mood.*

424. RULE.—*With the Passive Periphrastic denoting necessity, the Agent is expressed by the Dative.*

LESSON XCI.

Relative Sentences.

425. The *Relative,* as such, takes the *Indicative Mood.*

426. Examine the following:

1. Helvētiī lēgātōs mīsērunt **quī** pācem **peterent,** *the Helvetians sent ambassadors* TO SEEK *peace.*

2. Nihil est **quod metuam,** *there is nothing* FOR *me* TO FEAR.

3. Illa dīxit sē **petere quod** in sinistrīs manibus **gererent,** *she said that she* SOUGHT WHAT THEY WORE *on their left hands.*

Observe:

1. That in the first sentence, **quī** = **ut iī** and denotes *Purpose* (cf. 288).

2. That in the second sentence, **quod** = **ut id** and denotes *Result* (cf. 293).

3. That in the third sentence, **quod** is a simple relative, but the *Subjunctive* is used because the verb is dependent upon the *Infinitive* **petere** (*Ōrātiō Oblīqua,* or *Indirect Discourse*).

427. Vocabulary.

dignus, -a, -um, *worthy.*	**aptus, -a, -um,** *fit.*
indignus, -a, -um, *unworthy.*	**idōneus, -a, -um,** *suitable, fit.*
sōlus, -a, -um, *alone, only.*	**ūnus, -a, -um,** *one.*
pecus, -oris, n. *flock.*	**grātia, -ae,** f. *influence.*

cōnsist-ō,	**-ere,**	**-stit-ī,**	——	*I stand together, stop.*
resist-ō,	**-ere,**	**-stit-ī,**	——	*I resist.*
trānse-ō,	**-īre,**	**-i-ī,**	**-i-tum,**	*I go across, cross.*
vīv-ō,	**-ere,**	**-vīx-ī,**	**-vīc-tum,**	*I live.*
īnfer-ō,	**-ferre,**	**intul-ī,**	**illā-tum,**	*I bring in.*

EXERCISES.

428. I. 1. Dignus est quī amētur. 2. Sōlus es quī hōc facere possīs. 3. Iī, quī idōneī sunt, cōnsistunt. 4. Caesar equitēs, quī flūmen trānsīrent, praemīsit. 5. Cicerō, vir māgnae grātiae, aptus erat quī rem pūblicam administrāret. 6. Caesar eās rēs, quās lēgātī dīxissent, memoriā tenēbat. 7. Multī sunt quī hōc facere nōn possint. 8. Rōmulus lēgātōs mittit quī cōnūbium petant. 9. Rōmulus centum ex seniōribus, quōrum cōnsiliō omnia ageret, ēlēgit. 10. Nōn is sum quī improbōs laudem.

II. 1. He is worthy to be praised. 2. They were fit to guard the flocks. 3. Let us stand together and resist the enemy. 4. They were unworthy to be honored. 5. Let us cross the river quickly. 6. He sent forward men to explore that region. 7. There were some who believed that those things were true. 8. There is no one who does not fear you. 9. I am the only man who could not be induced. 10. Caesar hears that he has lost the influence which he had.

429. RULE.—*The Relative, instead of* **ut** *with a Demonstrative, is often used to denote Purpose.*

430. RULE.—*After* **dignus, indignus, aptus, idōneus, sōlus,** *and* **ūnus,** *the Relative is used instead of* **ut** *with a Demonstrative to denote Result.*

431. RULE.—*The Verb of the Relative Clause, if dependent upon Infinitives or Subjunctives, is put in the Subjunctive.*

Reading Lesson.

Horātius Cocles.—II.

Is, extrēmā [1] pontis parte occupātā, aciem hostium sōlus [2] sustinuit dōnec [3] pōns ā tergō interrumperētur. Ipsa audācia obstupefēcit hostēs: ponte rescissō armātus [4] in Tiberim dēsiluit et multīs superincidentibus tēlīs incolumis ad suōs [5] trānāvit. Grāta ergā tantam virtūtem cīvitās fuit; eī tantum [6] agrī pūblicē datum est quantum ūnō diē circumarāvit. Statua quoque eī [7] in Comitiō posita.[8]

NOTES.

1. Abl. Abs. 2. **sōlus**: *he alone.* 3. **dōnec . . . interrumperētur**: *until the bridge should be cut in the rear.* 4. Pred. Nom. *fully armed.* 5. **ad suōs**: *to his own people.* 6. **tantum agrī . . . quantum**: *as much ground . . . as.* 7. **eī**: *in his honor* (lit. *to him*). 8. **posita**: sc. **est**.

LESSON XCII.

Sequence of Tenses.

432. 1. In dependent sentences which take the Subjunctive, the choice of tenses in the dependent clause is determined largely by the time of the leading verb, so that—

PRINCIPAL TENSES ARE FOLLOWED BY PRINCIPAL TENSES.
HISTORICAL TENSES ARE FOLLOWED BY HISTORICAL TENSES.

2. PRINCIPAL TENSES.

Present, Pure Perfect, Future, Future Perfect, } are followed by { the PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE (for continued action). the PERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE (for completed action).

3. HISTORICAL TENSES.

Imperfect, Historical Perf., Pluperfect, } are followed by { the IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE (for continued action). the PLUPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE (for completed action).

4. FUTURE RELATIONS.

A. { Future, / Fut. Perf., } are followed by { the PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE (for continued action in the future). / the PERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE (for completed action in the future). }

B. { Present, / Pure Perf., } are followed by { PRESENT SUBJUNCTIVE OF THE ACTIVE PERIPHRASTIC.

C. { Imperfect, / Hist. Perf., / Pluperfect, } are followed by { IMPERFECT SUBJUNCTIVE OF THE ACTIVE PERIPHRASTIC.

433. Vocabulary.

ferus, -a, -um, *wild, savage.*
negōtium, -i, n. *business, affair.*
quod, Causal conj. *because.*
abstinēns, -entis, *abstinent, temperate.*
innumerābilis, -e, *innumerable.*
-ne (in questions), *whether.*
mundus, -i, m. *world.*
incertus, -a, -um, *uncertain.*

mītēsc-ō,	**-ere,**	———	———	*I become mild, soften.*
remove-ō,	**-ēre,**	**-mōv-i,**	**-mō-tum,**	*I remove.*
dēici-ō,	**-ere,**	**-iēc-i,**	**-iec-tum,**	*I cast down.*

EXERCISES.

434. I. 1. Nēmŏ adeō ferus est ut nōn mītēscere possit. 2. Post mortem in morte nihil est, quod metuam, malī. 3. Laudat eum quod abstinēns fuerit. 4. Nōn is es ut tē pudor umquam ā turpitūdine revocāverit. 5. Multī fuērunt quī ā negōtiīs pūblicīs sē remōverint. 6. Epamīnōndās quaesīvit salvusne esset clipeus. 7. Ambulābat in pūblicō Themistoclēs quod somnum capere nōn posset. 8. Creāvērunt decem praetōrēs, quī exercituī praecessent. 9. Accidit ut ūnā nocte omnēs Hermae dēicerentur. 10. Tam ea rēs facilis est ut innumerābilīs nātūra mundōs effectūra sit.

II. 1. We shall find out what he is doing, has done, will do. 2. I was uncertain how long life would be. 3. There are many who cannot resist anger. 4. Caesar asked

whether the lieutenant had come. 5. Some came to see, others to be seen. 6. I do not doubt that she is weeping. 7. They ask Caesar to spare them. 8. Agesilaus died as he was returning home. 9. He was worthy to be chosen leader. 10. I fear that my friend will not come.

LESSON XCIII.

Ōrātiō Oblīqua or Indirect Discourse.

435. *Ōrātiō Oblīqua* or *Indirect Discourse* is opposed to *Ōrātiō Rēcta* or *Direct Discourse,* and gives the main drift of a speech, not the exact words.

Ōrātiō Oblīqua depends upon some verb of *Saying* or *Thinking* expressed or implied.

436. Examine the following:

Sōcratēs dīcere solēbat:

Ō. R. "Omnēs in eō quod **sciunt** satis **sunt** ēloquentēs."

Socrates used to say: "All men ARE *eloquent enough in what they* UNDERSTAND."

Ō. O. omnēs in eō quod **scīrent** satis **esse** ēloquentēs.

Socrates used to say THAT *all men* WERE *eloquent enough in what they* UNDERSTOOD.

Observe carefully:

1. That in the first sentence, *Omnēs in eō quod sciunt satis sunt ēloquentēs* are the *exact* words of Socrates, and are contained in quotation marks.

2. That in the second sentence, *omnēs in eō quod scīrent satis esse ēloquentēs* are *not* the exact words of Socrates, though they contain the main drift of the thought, and that no quotation marks are used; but in Latin, the PRINCIPAL verb *sunt* is now in the INFINITIVE with subject Accusative, and the DEPENDENT verb *sciunt* is now in the Subjunctive, and in English the whole is introduced by the declarative conjunction *that* (cf. 371 and 431).

437. Reading Lesson.

Ōrātiō Oblīqua.	**Ōrātiō Rēcta.**
Ariovistus respondit:	
Trānsīsse Rhēnum **sēsē** nōn **suā** sponte sed rogātum et arcessītum ā Gallīs: nōn sine māgnā spē māgnīsque praemiīs domum propinquōsque relīquisse: sēdēs habēre in Galliā ab ipsīs concēssās, obsidēs ipsōrum voluntāte datōs: stīpendium capere iūre bellī, quod victōrēs victīs impōnere cōnsuerint. Nōn **sēsē** Gallīs sed Gallōs **sibī** bellum intulisse; omnēs Galliae cīvitātēs ad **sē** oppūgnandum vēnisse et contrā **sē** castra habuisse; **eās** omnēs cōpiās ā **sē** ūnō proeliō pulsās āc superātās esse.	Trānsiī Rhēnum nōn **meā** sponte sed rogātus et arcessītus ā Gallīs; nōn sine māgnā spē māgnīsque praemiīs domum propinquōsque relīquī: sēdēs habeō in Galliā ab ipsīs concēssās, obsidēs ipsōrum voluntāte datōs: stīpendium capiō iūre bellī, quod victōrēs victīs impōnere cōnsuērunt. Nōn **ego** Gallīs, sed Gallī **mihī** bellum intulērunt; omnēs Galliae cīvitātēs ad **mē** oppūgnandum vēnērunt et contrā **mē** castra habuērunt; **eae** omnēs cōpiae ā **mē** ūnō proeliō pulsae āc superātae sunt.

Observe:

1. That in transferring from Ō. O. to Ō. R. or from Ō. R. to Ō. O. changes are made only in *Nouns* that are subjects of the leading verb, in *Pronouns*, and in *Verbs*.

2. That the *principal verbs* are changed to the *Infinitives* and their *Nominative subjects* to *Accusative subjects*, and that *dependent verbs* are changed from the *Indicative* to the *Subjunctive*.

438. Rule.—*In Ōrātiō Oblīqua, the Principal Clauses are put in the Infinitive with Subject Accusative and the Dependent Clauses in the Subjunctive.*

READING LESSONS.

I. Gāius Iūlius Caesar.

102–44 B.C.

C. Iūlius Caesar, nōbilissimā Iūliōrum genitus familiā, annum agēns sextum et decimum patrem āmīsit.

[GAIUS JULIUS CAESAR was born B.C. 102 and was assassinated March 15th (Ides of March), B.C. 44. He was a great general, statesman, orator, and author. For a full account of his life, see Abbott's "History of Julius Caesar," Froude's "Caesar," Plutarch's "Life" of Caesar, and Dodge's "Caesar"; also read Shakespeare's "Julius Caesar."]

l. 1. **Iūliōrum**: name of a patrician gens, that claimed descent from Iulus, son of Aeneas, who founded the Roman race. Several Caesars before Julius had been prominent men in the affairs of the republic. —**genitus**: Past Part. of **gignō**, denoting parentage.—**familiā**: Abl. of Origin, without a preposition except in case of remote progenitors.

l. 2. **annum agēns**, &c.: *in his sixteenth year.*

Cornēliam, Cinnae fīliam, dūxit uxōrem; cūius pater cum esset Sullae inimīcissimus, is Caesarem voluit compellere, ut eam repudiāret; neque id potuit efficere. Quā rē Caesar bonīs spoliātus cum etiam ad necem quaererētur, mūtātā veste nocte urbe ēlāpsus est et,

l. 3. **Cornēliam**: Acc. obj. of **dūxit**: women usually had only the gentile name of the father, the words **prīma, secunda, tertia**, &c., being added to distinguish them.—**Cinnae**, famous in the party of Marius (157–86 B.C.) and bitter enemy of Sulla (138–78 B.C.)—**dūxit**: sc. **in mātrimōnium.—uxōrem**: *as a wife*, the phrase **in mātrimōnium dūcere uxōrem**, being translated *to marry*.—**cūius**: *his*, the Relative at the beginning of a clause is best translated by a Demons. or Person. Pron.: in such sentences, it is best in English to begin with the conjunction; transl. *since his father*, &c., and note carefully the difference in order of the Latin and the English.

l. 4. **is**: *he*, refers to Sulla, the conqueror of Marius, and afterwards a merciless dictator.—**Caesarem**: object of **compellere**, and placed here for emphasis.—**compellere**: object Infin. with **voluit**: verbs of *Wishing*, &c., may take a noun object or verb object to complete their meaning.

l. 5. **ut eam repudiāret**: a sentence of *Purpose*, after **compellere**: transl. *to divorce her;* divorces in Rome at this time were frequently made for no good reasons at all.—**neque potuit**: *but he could not:* notice that a negative sentence in Latin is added by **neque** or **nec**, not by **et, sed . . . non**, as in Eng.—**id**: *it*, i.e. **ut eam repudiāret**. Caesar showed great courage in thus defying Sulla.

l. 6. **Quā rē**: transl. *therefore* and begin the sentence in Eng. with **cum**, as in l. 3.—**bonīs**: Abl. of Separation, rendered in Eng. by *of* after **spoliātus.—spoliātus**: Perf. Pass. Part. agreeing with Caesar: transl. *when, therefore, Caesar had been robbed*, &c., supplying *and* before **quaererētur**. A Part. agreeing with the subj. or obj. of the verb is often best rendered into English by a finite verb and a conjunction. See below, l. 9.—**etiam**: *even*, emphasizing the harshness of the dictator.

l. 7. **quaererētur**: Subjv. with *Historical* **cum** and translated like an Indic.—**mūtātā veste**: Abl. Abs. *having changed* or *after he had changed* (lit. *his clothes having been changed*); carefully distinguish Abl. Abs. from the Part. agreeing with subj. or obj. of the verb. Cf. with **spoliātus**, l. 6.—**nocte**: Abl. of Time; **urbe**: Abl. of Separation.

quamquam tunc quārtānae morbō labōrābat, prope per singulās noctēs latebrās commūtāre cōgēbātur; et comprehēnsus ā Sullae lībertō, nē ad Sullam perdūcerētur, vix datā pecūniā ēvāsit. Postrēmō per propinquōs et adfīnēs suōs veniam impetrāvit. Satis cōnstat Sullam, cum dēprecantibus amīcissimīs et ōrnātissimīs virīs aliquamdiū dēnegāsset atque illī pertināciter contenderent, expūgnātum tandem prōclāmāsse, vincerent, dum modo

l. 8. **quārtānae**: sc. **febris** and trans. *he was suffering from intermittent fever*: **quārtānae**: a fever that returns every fourth day.—**morbō**: Abl. of Cause.—**prope ... noctēs**: *almost every night.*

l. 9. **comprehēnsus**: agrees with *he*, contained in **ēvāsit**: transl. *he was arrested*, and supply *and* before **vix**. Cf. **spoliātus** above, l. 6.

l. 10. **nē ... perdūcerētur**: expresses the Purpose of **datā pecūniā**: note that **nē** is negative of **ut**, denoting Purpose: it may be translated *lest, that not, in order not to, not to, in order that not.*

l. 11. **datā pecūniā**: Abl. Abs. *by giving money* (lit. *money having been given*), cf. with notes on ll. 6, 7, and 9.

l. 12. **veniam**: *pardon*, obj. Acc. after **impetrāvit.—satis cōnstat**: *it is well known that*, followed by the Acc. with the Inf. **Sullam ... prōclāmāsse** (= **prōclāmāvisse**) as its subject. Verbs of *saying, showing, believing, perceiving, knowing*, &c., are followed by the Acc. with the Inf. in Latin. The *Acc.* is translated in English by the *Nom.* and the *Infin.* by a *finite verb*, the whole expression being preceded by the declarative conjunction *that.*—**Sullam**: subj. Acc. of **prōclāmāsse** in l. 15. Before translating an Acc. with an Inf. introduce the conj. *that* and then transl. the Acc. as Nom. and the Inf. as a finite verb: e.g. *that Sulla ... cried out.*

l. 13. **dēprecantibus**: agrees with **virīs** and is best translated by a Rel. clause, *who tried to beg him off.*—**virīs**: Dat. with **dēnegāsset** (= **dēnegāvisset**), of which *he*, referring to Sulla, is subject.

l. 14. **illī**: *they*, expressed for emphasis and to contrast strongly with *he* contained in **dēnegāsset.**

l. 15. **expūgnātum**: agrees with **Sullam** and may be rendered, *was overcome*, if we supply *and* before **prōclāmāsse**, or simply *overcome*, if we omit *and.* Cf. note on **spoliātus**, l. 6.—**vincerent**: *that they should have their way*: **vincerent** represents **vincīte**, *have your way*, in *Ōrātiō Rēcta*, which by regular rule becomes Subjv. in *Ōrātiō Oblīqua. Ōrātiō Oblīqua* occurs after verbs of *saying*, &c., when the Acc. with Inf. is used.—**dum modo**: *provided that.*

scīrent, eum, quem incolumem tantopere cuperent, aliquandō optimātium partibus, quās sēcum simul dēfendissent, exitiō futūrum; nam Caesarī multōs Mariōs inesse.

Stīpendia prīma in Asiā fēcit. In expūgnātiōne Mytilēnārum corōnā cīvicā dōnātus est. Mortuō Sullā Rhodum sēcēdere statuit, ut per ōtium Apollōniō Molōnī, tunc clārissimō dīcendī magistrō, operam daret. Hūc

l. 16. **scīrent**: *they realize*, representing **sciātis** of Ō. R.—**eum**: *that he*, subject Acc. of **futūrum (esse)**, l. 18, an Acc. with Inf. after **scīrent**, which is a verb of *knowing*.—**quem**: obj. of **cuperent**: arrange thus: **quem (esse) incolumem tantopere cuperent.**—**cuperent**: *they desired*, is Subjv. in a Rel. clause in Ō. O. (i.e. dependent upon a verb of *saying*, &c.), and is usually translated like an Indicative.

l. 17. **partibus**: Dat. of Disadvantage with **exitiō futūrum**, l. 18.—**quās**: object Acc. of **dēfendissent**, and has **partibus** for its antecedent.—**sēcum**: *with him*, referring back to Sulla, represents **mēcum** in Ō. R.—**cum** with Personal Pronouns is always put last, e.g. **mēcum, tēcum, sēcum, nōbīscum, vōbīscum**, never **cum mē**, &c.—**dēfendissent**: represents **dēfenditis** in Ō. R.

l. 18. **exitiō futūrum (esse)**: *would prove destructive* (lit. *would be for a destruction*).—**exitiō**: Dat. of the Object For Which, sometimes called Purpose.—**futūrum**: sc. **esse**, the Future Inf. of **sum**, used in Ō. O. with the subject **eum** in l. 16.—**Caesarī**: Dat. after **in** in composition with **esse** in **inesse**, used instead of the simple Dat. of Possession.—**Mariōs inesse**: still *Ōrātiō Oblīqua* after **scīrent** and translated in the same way as the other Accusatives with Infinitives.

l. 21. **corōnā cīvicā**: a crown of oak leaves awarded for saving a citizen's life in battle. It exempted the holder from taxes for himself, father, and paternal grandfather.—**Mortuō Sullā**: Abl. Abs. *after Sulla's death* or *after Sulla had died* (lit. *Sulla being dead*).—**Rhodum**: *to Rhodes*. Names of Towns and Small Islands being used in Latin *without* a preposition to denote Motion, we must supply *to* in English.

l. 22. **ut**: *in order to*, or *in order that he might*, sentence of Purpose.—**per ōtium**: *at leisure*.

l. 23. **dīcendī**: *of oratory* (lit. *of speaking*), Gen. of Gerund of **dīcō**.—**operam daret**: *attend the lectures of* (lit. *give attention to*).

dum trāicit, ā praedōnibus captus est mānsitque apud eōs prope quadrāgintā diēs. Per omne autem illud spatium ita sē gessit, ut pīrātīs pariter terrōrī venerātiōnīque esset. Comitēs interim servōsque ad expediendās pecūniās, quibus redimerētur, dīmīsit. Vīgintī talenta pīrātae pōstulāverant; ille quīnquāgintā datūrum sē spopondit. Quibus numerātīs cum expositus esset in lītore, cōnfestim Mīlētum, quae urbs proximē aberat, properāvit, ibique contrāctā clāsse invectus in eum locum, in quō

l. 24. **dum trāicit**: *while he was*, etc. Note that the *Present* with **dum** is translated by our *Imperfect*.

l. 26. **ut . . . esset**: *that he was*, sentence of Result, transl. by the Indic. usually. Note the difference from sentence of Purpose, l. 22, **ut . . . daret**.—**pīrātīs . . . terrōrī**: same construction as **partibus . . . exitiō**, l. 17. Transl. **terrōrī venerātiōnīque** by *object of terror*, &c.

l. 27. **ad expediendās pecūniās**: *to procure money* (lit. *for procuring money*). Purpose is often expressed by **ad** with the Acc. of the Gerund and Gerundive. Carefully distinguish the Gerund from the Gerundive, remembering that the former is a *Noun* and the latter an *Adjective*. If the Gerund governs the Accusative case, the object Accusative is generally attracted into the case of the Gerund, and the Gerund, now become Gerundive, agrees with it in Gender, Number, and Case.

l. 28. **quibus** = **ut eīs**, the Rel. being often used thus to denote Purpose.

l. 29. **sē**: *that he*, subj. Acc. of **datūrum (esse)**; **sē** is used instead of **eum**, because reference is made to the subject of the sentence.—**datūrum**: sc. **esse**, Fut. Inf. in Ō.O. After a *primary* leading tense, the Fut. Inf. is translated by *will;* after a *secondary* leading tense, by *would*.—**spopondit**: from **spondeō**.

l. 30. **Quibus numerātīs**: Abl. Abs. *after this had been counted* (lit. *which having been counted*).—**expositus**: from **expōnō**; with **esset** it forms the Plupf. Subjv. translated like the Indic. after **cum** *Historical*.

l. 31. **Mīlētum**: see note on **Rhodum**, l. 21.—**quae urbs**: **urbs** should really be in the clause with **Mīlētum**, and we should have **Mīlētum urbem**, but by a peculiar Latin idiom, an Appositive or Attributive is attracted from the principal clause into the relative clause and made to agree with the relative. This is called *Incorporation:* transl. *Miletus, a city which*.—**proximē aberat**: *was very near by*.

l. 32. **que**: joins **invectus**, &c., with **properāvit**.—**contrāctā clāsse**:

ipsī praedōnēs erant, partem clāssis fugāvit, partem mersit, aliquot nāvēs cēpit pīrātāsque in potestātem redāctōs eō suppliciō, quod illīs saepe minātus inter iocum erat, adfēcit crucīque suffīxit.

Quaestōrī ūlterior Hispānia obvēnit. Quō profectus cum Alpēs trānsīret et ad cōnspectum pauperis cūiusdam vīcī comitēs per iocum inter sē disputārent, num illīc etiam esset ambitiōnī locus, sēriō dīxit Caesar, mālle sē

Abl. Abs. *having collected a fleet* (lit. *a fleet having been collected*).—**invectus**: Pass. Part. of **invehō**, which in the Pass. means *sail*: transl. *having sailed* or *he sailed*, and supply *and* before **fugāvit**. Cf. ll. 6 and 9.

l. 33. **ipsī**: *themselves*, agrees with **praedōnēs**, and indicates his boldness.—**fugāvit, mersit, cēpit**: notice the absence of conjunctions (called *Asyndeton*) and see how much more lively the description is made by the omission.

l. 34. **pīrātāsque ... redāctōs**: *the pirates, who had been brought into subjection*: **pīrātās** is direct object of **adfēcit**, and **redāctōs** is Perf. Pass. Part. agreeing with **pīrātās**, and here best rendered by a Rel. clause, though *being brought* would be a true translation.

l. 35. **eō suppliciō adfēcit**: *inflicted upon the pirates, who*, &c., *that punishment* (lit. *affected with that punishment*).—**quod ... minātus erat**: *with which he had threatened them* (lit. *which he had threatened to them*): notice carefully the difference between the English and Latin constructions.

l. 37. **Quaestōrī**: *as quaestor*: sc. **eī**, *to him*, as obj. of **obvēnit**. This was the *quaestor prōvinciālis*, who was the assistant of a consul or of a praetor in charge of a province: for a full account see Peck's Class. Dict. s. v. *quaestōrēs*.—**ūlterior Hispānia**: the southern third of Spain, the northern two-thirds being called **Citerior Hispānia**.—**obvēnit**: *fell by lot*.—**quō profectus**: begin with **cum** and transl. *on his way thither* (lit. *whither setting out*).

l. 38. **trānsīret**: transl. as if Impf. Indic. The Subjv. with *Historical* **cum** and with *Causal* or *Concessive* **cum** is generally transl. by the Indic.—**ad cōnspectum**: *at the sight of*.

l. 39. **inter sē**: *with one another*: reciprocal relations are regularly expressed by **inter**.—**num**: *whether*.

l. 40. **etiam**: emphasizes the insignificance of the place.—**esset**: Subjv. in an Indirect Question, i.e. a question dependent upon some

ibi prīmum esse, quam Rōmae secundum. Dominātiōnis avidus ā prīmā aetāte rēgnum concupīscēbat semperque in ōre habēbat hōs Eurīpidis, Graecī poētae, versūs :

Nam sī violándum est iūs, rēgnándī grātiā
Violándum est, áliīs rébus píetātém colās. 45

Cumque Gādēs, quod est Hispāniae oppidum, vēnisset, animadversā apud Herculis templum māgnī Alexandrī imāgine ingemuit et quasi pertaesus īgnāviam suam, quod

verb.—**mālle**: Inf. with **sē** for Acc. subj. after **dīxit**; transl. *would rather.*

l. 41. **esse**: *be*, obj. Inf. with **mālle.**—**Rōmae**: Loc. *at Rome.* With names of towns and small islands, Place at Which is expressed by the Locative Case.

l. 42. **avidus**: Adj. agreeing with *he* contained in **concupīscēbat.**—**ā prīmā aetāte**: *from his earliest youth.*

l. 43. **in ōre**: *on his tongue* (lit. *in his mouth*).—**hōs**: agrees with **versūs.**

l. 44. **violandum est**: *must be outraged:* Periphrastic Pass. composed of the Gerundive with the tenses of **esse.**—**rēgnandī**: see note on **dīcendī,** l. 23.—**grātiā** and **causā**: these words regularly *follow* their Genitives.

l. 45. **violandum est**: sc. **id**, *it*, referring to **iūs** for subject.—**aliīs rēbus**: *in other respects.*—**colās**: second pers. Pres. Subjv. used as an Imperative; note that the "you" is ideal, i.e. refers to no definite person. Transl. *you must*, &c.

l. 46. **Gādēs**: see note on **Rhodum,** l. 21.—**quod**: has **Gādēs** for its antecedent, but by Latin idiom the Relative is attracted into the Gender and Number of the predicate Noun, which is here **oppidum.**

l. 47. **animadversā**: Abl. Abs. with **imāgine.**—**Alexandrī**: Alexander had conquered the known world at 33.

l. 48. **quasi pertaesus**: *as if disgusted with;* **pertaesus** agrees with *he*, contained in **effāgitāvit.** Notice that in reading Latin we must carefully exclude all the dependent sentences till we find the leading verb. A dependent sentence is one that begins with a subordinate Conjunction or a Relative Pronoun or Adverb: the dependent sentences here are

nihildum ā sē memorābile āctum esset in eā aetāte, quā iam Alexander orbem terrārum subēgisset, missiōnem continuō efflāgitāvit ad captandās quam prīmum māiōrum rērum occāsiōnēs in urbe.

Aedīlis praeter Comitium āc Forum etiam Capitōlium ōrnāvit porticibus. Vēnātiōnēs autem lūdōsque et cum conlēgā M. Bibulō et sēparātim ēdidit; quō factum est, ut commūnium quoque impēnsārum sōlus grātiam caperet. Hīs autem rēbus patrimōnium effūdit tantumque cōn-

quod ... āctum esset in eā aetāte and **quā ... subēgisset,** both which we must pass over to find the principal verb **efflāgitāvit.**

l. 49. **nihildum**: *nothing yet.*—**āctum esset**: Subjv. with *Causal* **quod** in Ō. O., translated like a Plupf. Indic.

l. 50. **subēgisset**: Subjv. in Rel. clause in Ō. O. and translated like an Indic.

l. 51. **ad captandās occāsiōnēs**: see note on **ad expediendās,** l. 27.—**quam prīmum**: *as soon as possible.* **Quam** with the Superlative degree of an Adj. or Adv. is our *as ... as possible.*

l. 53. **Aedīlis**: the Aediles had control of the public buildings and works, and also exercised the function of police magistrates; they also had charge of the public games and often entertained the people with magnificent shows at their own expense. Transl. *as Aedile;* it is in apposition with *he* contained in **ōrnāvit.**—**Comitium**: the Comitium was an open space next to the Forum. **Forum**: The *Forum Rōmānum* was a large open space between the Capitoline and Palatine hills and was surrounded with porticoes, temples, and shops; it was used for holding courts and public meetings of all kinds.—**Capitōlium**: this was the name given to the two summits of the Capitoline Hill, upon one of which was the *Arx* or Citadel, and upon the other the temple of Jupiter, Juno, and Minerva.

l. 54. **porticibus**: the porticoes were long, narrow walks covered by a roof resting on columns; they were magnificently constructed and adorned with handsome statues and paintings.—**Vēnātiōnēs**: hunts were celebrated in the amphitheatre.—**et ... et**: *both ... and.*

l. 55. **quō factum est**: *from which it happened that.*

l. 56. **ut ... caperet**: sentence of Result after **quō factum est.**—**sōlus**: *he alone.*—**grātiam caperet**: *got the credit of.*

l. 57. **tantum**: agrees with **aēs.**

flāvit aes aliēnum, ut ipse dīceret, sibī opus esse mīliēns sēstertium, ut habēret nihil.

Cōnsul deinde creātus cum M. Bibulō, societātem cum Gnaeō Pompēiō et Mārcō Crassō iūnxit Caesar, nē quid agerētur in rē pūblicā, quod displicuisset ūllī ex tribus. Deinde lēgem tulit, ut ager Campānus plēbī dīviderētur. Cuī lēgī cum senātus repūgnāret, rem ad populum dētulit. Bibulus conlēga in Forum vēnit, ut lēgī obsisteret, sed tanta in eum commōta est sēditiō, ut in caput ēius cophinus stercore plēnus effunderētur fascēsque eī frange-

l. 58. **aes aliēnum**: *debt.*—**ut**: denotes Result after **tantum.**—**sibī**: Dat. of Possession: transl. **sibī opus esse**, *that he had need* or *that he needed.*—**mīliēns sēstertium**: *a hundred million sesterces* = about $4,-100,000, when the purchasing power of money was far greater than it is now. **mīliēns sēstertium** is a contracted expression for **mīliēns centēna mīlia sēstertium.**

l. 59. **ut... nihil**: *so that he might have nothing*, i.e. he needed all this money to pay his debts.

l. 60. **Cōnsul**: pred. Nom. with **creātus**, which agrees with **Caesar**, the subject of **iūnxit**; arrange thus: **Caesar, creātus cōnsul cum M. Bibulō, iūnxit societātem**, &c.—**societātem**: this alliance is known in history as the *First Triumvirate.*

l. 61. **nē quid**: *that nothing* or *lest anything.*

l. 62. **quod**: *which*, refers back to **quid.**—**displicuisset**: *displeased*, lit. *should have displeased*, representing Fut. Perf. Indic. **displicuerit**: *shall (have) displease(d).*—**ūllī ex tribus**: *any one of the three;* the Partitive Gen. with **ūllus, ūnus,** and **quīdam** is often represented by **ex** with the Abl.

l. 63. **ager Campānus**: this was public land.—**dīviderētur**: *should be meted out.*

l. 64. **Cuī lēgī cum**: begin with **cum** and transl. **cuī** by *this.* Cf. note, l. 3.

l. 65. **ut**: denotes Purpose, *in order to.*

l. 66. **in eum**: *against him.*

l. 67. **stercore**: Abl. with **plēnus**, *filled with*, which agrees with **cophinus.**—**eī**: *his fasces* (lit. *the fasces... for him*).—**fascēs**: the *fasces* were a bundle of rods, with an axe, carried by the lictors preceding a magistrate, and were symbols of his authority, the rods of scourging and the axes of beheading.

rentur atque adeō ipse armīs Forō expellerētur. Quā rē cum Bibulus per reliquum annī tempus domō abditus cūriā abstinēret, ūnus ex eō tempore Caesar omnia in rē pūblicā ad arbitrium administrābat, ut nōnnūllī urbānōrum, sī quid tēstandī grātiā sīgnārent, per iocum nōn, ut mōs erat, cōnsulibus Caesare et Bibulō āctum scrīberent, sed Iūliō et Caesare, ūnum cōnsulem nōmine et cōgnōmine prō duōbus appellantēs.

Fūnctus cōnsulātū Caesar Galliam prōvinciam accēpit. Gessit autem novem annīs, quibus in imperiō fuit, haec ferē: Galliam in prōvinciae fōrmam redēgit; Germānōs, quī trāns Rhēnum incolunt, prīmus Rōmānōrum ponte fabricātō aggressus māximīs adfēcit clādibus. Aggressus

l. 68. **atque adeō**: *and so.*—**armīs**: Abl. of Means.—**Forō**: Abl. of Separation.

l. 69. **per**: *for, during.*—**abditus**: agrees with **Bibulus.**

l. 70. **cūriā**: Abl. of Separation.—**ūnus**: *alone*, agrees with **Caesar.**—**ex eō tempore**: *from that time on.*

l. 71. **ad**: *according to.*

l. 72. **sī . . . sīgnārent**: *whenever they signed anything as witnesses* (lit. *if they signed anything for the sake of witnessing*).

l. 73. **cōnsulibus . . . Bibulō**: Abl. Abs. *in the consulship of Caesar and Bibulus.*—**āctum** (sc. **esse**) **scrīberent**: *they wrote that it was done.*

l. 74. **Iūliō et Caesare**: sc. **cōnsulibus.**—**nōmine et cōgnōmine**: the middle and last names. A Roman generally had three names, e.g. **praenōmen, nōmen,** and **cōgnōmen.**

l. 75. **prō**: *instead of.*—**appellantēs**: agrees with *they*, contained in **scrīberent.**

l. 76. **cōnsulātū**: Abl. of Means with **fūnctus**, since **ūtor, fruor, fungor, potior,** and **vescor** are construed with the Abl.

l. 77. **novem annīs**: *within nine years.*—**quibus**: *during which.*—**haec**: obj. of **gessit.**

l. 78. **Germānōs**: obj. of **aggressus.**

l. 79. **prīmus Rōmānōrum**: *he was the first of the Romans who* (lit. *he first of the Romans*).—**ponte fabricātō**: Abl. Abs.

l. 80. **aggressus**: *attacked*, supplying *and* before **adfēcit.**

est Britannōs, īgnōtōs anteā, superātīsque pecūniās et obsidēs imperāvit. Hīc cum multa Rōmānōrum mīlitum īnsīgnia nārrantur, tum illud ēgregium ipsīus Caesaris, quod nūtante in fugam exercitū, raptō fugientis ē manū scūtō, in prīmam volitāns aciem, proelium restituit. Īdem aliō proeliō legiōnis aquiliferum ineundae fugae causā iam conversum faucibus comprehēnsum in contrāriam partem dētrāxit dextramque ad hostem tendēns, "Quōrsum tū," inquit, "abīs? Illīc sunt, cum quibus dīmicāmus." Quā adhortātiōne omnium legiōnum trepidātiōnem corrēxit vincīque parātās vincere docuit.

Interfectō intereā apud Parthōs Crassō et dēfūnctā Iūliā, Caesaris fīliā, quae, nūpta Pompēiō, generī socerīque concordiam tenēbat, statim aemulātiō ērūpit. Iam prīdem Pompēiō suspectae Caesaris opēs et Caesarī

l. 81. **superātīs**: agrees with **eīs** to be supplied as Dat. obj. of **imperāvit**. We may translate *he conquered* and supply *and* before **imperāvit**.

l. 82. **cum ... tum**: *not only ... but also.*

l. 83. **illud ēgregium**: *that noble (deed).*

l. 84. **quod**: *in that.*—**nūtante ... exercitū**: *when the army was,* &c.—**raptō ... scūtō**: *having snatched,* &c.—**fugientis**: sc. **mīlitis**, *of a fleeing soldier.*

l. 85. **Īdem**: *likewise, also*; lit. *the same (man).*

l. 86. **aquiliferum**: Acc. obj. of **dētrāxit**.—**ineundae fugae causā**: *for the purpose of beginning flight.*

l. 87. **conversum**: transl. by a Rel. clause, *who,* &c.—**faucibus comprehēnsum**: transl. as if **comprehendit et.**

l. 89. **Quā**: remember to transl. Rel. at beginning of a clause by a Demonstrative.

l. 91. **vincīque ... docuit**: *and taught* (**docuit**) [*how*] *to conquer* (**vincere**) *those (legions) which were ready* (**parātās**) *to be conquered* (**vincī**).

l. 92. **Interfectō ... Crassō** and **dēfūnctā Iūliā**: render these Abl. Abs. by clauses with *after* and a finite verb.

l. 93. **nūpta**: *wedded to,* agrees with **quae.**—**generī ... tenēbat**: *preserved peace between son-in-law and father-in-law.*

l. 95. **Pompēiō**: Dat. of Agent = **ā Pompēiō.**—**suspectae**: sc. **sunt**, has **opēs** for its subj.

Pompēiāna dignitās gravis, nec hīc ferēbat parem, nec ille superiōrem. Itaque cum Caesar in Galliā dētinērētur, et, nē imperfectō bellō discēderet, pōstulāsset, ut sibī licēret, quamvīs absentī, alterum cōnsulātum petere, ā senātū suādentibus Pompēiō ēiusque amīcīs negātum eī est. Hanc iniūriam acceptam vindicātūrus in Ītaliam rediit et bellandum ratus cum exercitū Rubicōnem flūmen, quī prōvinciae ēius fīnis erat, trānsiit. Hōc ad flūmen paulum cōnstitisse fertur ac reputāns, quantum mōlīrētur, conversus ad proximōs, "Etiam nunc," inquit, "regredī pos-

l. 96. **Pompēiāna** = **Pompēii**.—**dignitās**: subject of **suspecta est** contained in **suspectae** and **Caesarī** is Dat. of Agent = **ā Caesare**.—**nec . . . nec**: *and . . . neither . . . nor*.—**hīc . . . ille**: *the former . . . the latter*.—**ferēbat**: *could endure*.

l. 97. **dētinērētur**: transl. like an Indicative.

l. 98. **nē**: *that he might not, in order not to*, or *not to*.—**imperfectō**: transl. by a clause beginning with *while*.

l. 99. **quamvīs absentī**: *although absent*, agrees with **sibī**.—**alterum secundum**.—**petere**: complementary Inf. with **licēret**.

l. 100. **suādentibus . . . amīcīs**: *by the advice of Pompey and his friends* (lit. *Pompey and his friends advising*).—**negātum est**: has *it* (= **alterum cōnsulātum petere**) for its subject.

l. 101. **acceptam**: transl. by a Rel. clause.—**vindicātūrus**: *for the purpose of*, &c. The Future Part. to denote Purpose is rare in the best Latin.

l. 102. **bellandum** (sc. **esse**) **ratus**: *thinking he would have to fight*.—**bellandum** (sc. **esse**) is Inf. of Pass. Periphrastic after **ratus**, the subj. *it* being contained in the neuter ending; **bellandum esse** may, therefore, be transl. *it was necessary to fight, it must be fought*, or *it had to be fought*, &c.—**Rubicōnem flūmen**: Acc. after **trānsiit**. To cross the Rubicon with an army was the same as declaring war, because it bounded his province, which, by law, he could not leave without permission of the senate; it was a decisive move, and this explains our expression "to cross the Rubicon."—**quī**: agrees with **fīnis**; cf. note on **quod**, l. 46.

l. 103. **ad**: *near*.

l. 104. **fertur**: *he is said*.—**mōlīrētur**: Ind. Quest. transl. like an Indic.—**conversus**: sc. **esse**, and transl. *to have*, &c.

sumus; quod sī ponticulum trānsierimus, omnia armīs agenda erunt." Postrēmō autem, "Iacta ālea estō!" exclāmāns, exercitum trāicī iūssit plūrimīsque urbibus occupātīs Brundisium contendit, quō Pompēius cōnsulēsque cōnfūgerant.

Quī cum inde in Ēpīrum trāiēcissent, Caesar eōs secūtus ā Brundisiō Dyrrhāchium inter oppositās clāssēs gravissimā hieme trānsmīsit; cōpiīsque, quās subsequī iūsserat, diūtius cēssantibus cum ad cās arcessendās frūstrā mīsisset, mīrae audāciae facinus ēdidit. Morae enim impatiēns castrīs noctū ēgreditur, clam nāviculam cōnscendit, obvolūtō capite, nē āgnōscerētur, et quamquam mare saevā tempestāte intumēscēbat, in altum tamen prōtinus dīrigī

l. 106. **sī ... trānsierimus**: *if we cross* (lit. *shall have crossed*), for the Latins were more exact in use of tenses than we are.

l. 107. **agenda erunt**: Fut. tense of Pass. periph. *will have to be done;* cf. **bellandum** above.—**Iacta ālea estō**: *let the die be cast.*—**exclāmāns**: transl. after **autem** and before **ālea**, &c.

l. 108. **plūrimīsque ... occupātīs**: *having seized*, &c.

l. 109. **Brundisium**: see note on **Rhodum**, l. 21.—**quō**: *whither*, old Dat. case used as an adverb.

l. 111. **Quī cum**: transl. **cum** first and **quī** like a Demonstrative Pron.; cf. l. 3.—**secūtus**: Deponent verbs may take an Acc. case, because they are Pass. in form only; transl. either by a Perf. act. part. or by a finite verb, supplying *and* before **trānsmīsit.**

l. 112. **oppositās**: *opposed*, used attributively here.—**gravissimā**: *in a very severe.* The Latin superl. is often to be trans. by *very* instead of *most* or the Eng. superl.

l. 113. **cōpiīsque**: Abl. Abs. with **cēssantibus**: transl. by a *since* clause and supply *and* before **cum** in 114.

l. 114. **diūtius**: *too long.* The comparative is often to be rendered by *too* or *rather.*—**ad eās arcessendās**: *to summon them;* cf. l. 27.

l. 115. **Morae**: Gen. after **impatiēns**, which agrees with *he* contained in **ēgreditur.**

l. 116. **obvolūtō capite**: *with covered*, &c., Abl. Abs.

l. 117. **nē**: *that he might not*, &c.—**quamquam**: *although.*

l. 118. **in altum**: *to the deep* (*sea*).

nāvigium iubet et gubernātōre trepidante, "Quid timēs?" inquit, "Caesarem vehis!" neque prius gubernātōrem cēdere adversae tempestātī passus est, quam paene obrutus esset fluctibus.

Deinde Caesar in Ēpīrum profectus Pompēium Pharsālicō proeliō fūdit, et fugientem persecūtus, ut occīsum cōgnōvit, Ptolemaeō rēgī, Pompēiī interfectōrī, ā quō sibi quoque īnsidiās tendī vidēret, bellum intulit; quō victō in Pontum trānsiit Pharnacemque, Mithridātis fīlium, rebellantem et multiplicī succēssū praeferōcem intrā quīntum ab adventū diem, quattuor, quibus in cōnspectum vēnit, hōrīs ūnā prōflīgāvit aciē, mōre fulminis, quod ūnō eōdemque mōmentō vēnit, percussit, abscēssit. Nec vāna dē sē praedicātiō est Caesaris, ante victum hostem esse

l. 119. **gubernātōre**, &c.: *when the helmsman*, &c.

l. 120. **neque**: *and . . . not*, the regular idiom in Latin.—**prius**: goes with **quam**; **priusquam** is often thus separated in Latin; transl. *until.*

l. 121. **obrutus esset**: transl. by a Plupf. Indicative.

l. 123. **profectus**: *having set out.*

l. 124. **fugientem**: agrees with **eum** understood, the object of **persecūtus.**—**persecūtus**: cf. **secūtus**, l. 111.—**ut**: *when.*—**occīsum** = **eum occīsum esse**: *that he had been killed.*

l. 125. **Ptolemaeō**: Dat. after **bellum intulit**, l. 126.—**rēgī** and **interfectōrī**: in apposition with **Ptolemaeō.**—**ā quō**: Abl. of Agent with **tendī.**

l. 126. **sibi**: *for himself.*—**īnsidiās tendī**: Acc. with Inf. after **vidēret**, which is Subjv. in a dependent clause in Ō. O.—**quō victō**: *when he had been conquered* (lit. *who being*, &c.).

l. 127. **Pharnacem**: object of **prōflīgāvit.**

l. 128. **rebellantem**: agrees with **Pharnacem**, as does also **praeferōcem.**—**intrā . . . diem**: *within four days after his arrival.*

l. 129. **quattuor hōrīs**: *within four hours*, parallel with **intrā . . . diem.**—**quibus**: *after which* (lit. *within which*).

l. 130. **ūnā**: belongs with **aciē.**—**mōre**: *like* (lit. *after the manner of*).

l. 131. **percussit, abscēssit**: asyndeton, more vivid than if the Conj. were used; cf. l. 33.

l. 132. **ante**: belongs with **quam.**—**victum . . . esse**: Inf. with **hostem**, subj. Acc. after **praedicātiō est**, which is equivalent to a verb of *saying*: transl. *was conquered before* (*he was*) *seen.*

quam vīsum. Ponticō posteā triumphō trium verbōrum praetulit titulum: "Vēnī, vīdī, vīcī." Deinde Scīpiōnem et Iubam, Numidiae rēgem, reliquiās Pompēiānārum partium in Āfricā refoventēs, dēvīcit.

Victōrem Āfricānī bellī Gāium Caesarem gravius excēpit Hispāniēnse, quod Cn. Pompēius, Māgnī fīlius, adulēscēns fortissimus, ingēns āc terribile cōnflāverat, undique ad eum auxiliīs paternī nōminis māgnitūdinem sequentium ex tōtō orbe cōnfluentibus. Sua Caesarem in Hispāniam comitāta fortūna est; sed nūllum umquam atrōcius perīculōsiusque ab eō initum proelium; adeō ut, plūs quam dubiō Mārte, dēscenderet equō cōnsistēnsque ante recēdentem suōrum aciem, increpāns Fortūnam, quod sē in eum servāsset exi-

l. 133. **trium verbōrum**: qualifies **titulum**.

l. 134. **Scīpiōnem et Iubam**: Acc. after **dēvīcit**.

l. 136. **refoventēs**: Pres. Part. agrees with **reliquiās**.

l. 137. **Victōrem**: agrees with **Caesarem**.—**gravius** and **Hispāniēnse** agree with **bellum** understood, which is the subject of **excēpit**. Transl. *Caesar began a graver war in Spain* (lit. *a graver Spanish war received Caesar*).

l. 138. **Māgnī**: agrees with **Pompēī** understood.

l. 139. **ingēns āc terribile**: are predicates qualifying **quod**, but properly belong to **bellum**, the antecedent of **quod**, so that we may translate, *a war, great and terrible, which*, &c., inserting this immediately after **Hispāniēnse**.

l. 140. **auxiliīs**: Abl. Abs. with **cōnfluentibus**.—**māgnitūdinem**: obj. of **sequentium**.—**sequentium**: agrees with **eōrum** understood, dependent upon **auxiliīs**, and is best transl. by a Rel. clause, *of those who followed*.

l. 141. **Sua ... fortūna**: *his usual good fortune*.

l. 142. **atrōcius perīculōsiusque**: are adjectives and agree with **proelium**.

l. 143. **initum**: sc. **est**.—**plūs ... Mārte**: *the contest being more than doubtful*, Abl. Abs., **Mārte**, Mars, the god of war, being used for **proeliō**; this is called Metonymy.

l. 144. **suōrum**: *of his own men*. **suī**, &c. (Plur. of **suus**), are frequently used alone for *soldiers*.

l. 145. **quod**: *because*.—**eum**: *such a* (lit. *this*).—**servāsset** = **servāvisset** and translated like a Plupf. Indicative.

tum, dēnūntiāret mīlitibus, vēstīgiō sē nōn recēssūrum; proinde vidērent, quem et quō locō imperātōrem dēsertūrī essent. Verēcundiā magis quam virtūte aciēs restitūta est. Cn. Pompēius victus et interēmptus est. Caesar, omnium victor, regressus in urbem omnibus, quī contrā sē arma tulerant, īgnōvit et quīnquiēns triumphāvit.

Bellīs cīvīlibus cōnfectīs, conversus iam ad ōrdinandum reī pūblicae statum, fāstōs corrēxit annumque ad cursum sōlis accommodāvit, ut trecentōrum sexāgintā quīnque diērum esset et intercalāriō mēnse sublātō ūnus diēs quārtō quōque annō intercalārētur. Iūs labōriōsissimē āc sevērissimē dīxit. Repetundārum convictōs etiam ōrdine senātōriō mōvit. Peregrīnārum mercium portōria īnstituit; lēgem praecipuē sūmptuāriam exercuit. Dē ōrnandā īnstruendāque urbe, item dē tuendō ampliandōque imperiō plūra āc māiōra in diēs dēstinābat; imprīmīs iūs cīvīle ad certum modum redigere atque ex immēnsā lēgum cōpiā

l. 146. **dēnūntiāret**, Subjv. of Result with **adeō ut**, with which it is connected by the **que** with **cōnsistēns**.—**vēstīgiō** : Abl. of Separation.—**recēssūrum (esse)** : *would not retreat.*

l. 147. **proinde vidērent** : *that they should see*, represents an Imperative of O. R. ; cf. **vincerent**, l. 15.—**quem . . . dēsertūrī essent** : *what kind of general they were about to desert and in what kind of place.*

l. 149. **victus** : goes with **est** as well as **interēmptus.**

l. 150. **omnibus** : Dat. with **īgnōvit.**

l. 152. **Bellīs . . . cōnfectīs** : transl. by a clause with *after*.—**conversus** : sc. **est**.—**ad ōrdinandum . . . statum** : *to arranging, &c.*

l. 155. **esset** : *should be ;* subject is **is**, *it*, referring to **annum**.—**intercalāriō . . . sublātō** : *the intercalary month being abolished.*—**quārtō . . . annō** : *in every fourth year.*

l. 156. **Iūs dīxit** : *he decided cases.*

l. 157. **convictōs** : *those convicted.* Judicial verbs take the Genitive.

l. 159. **lēgem sūmptuāriam** : *law against extravagance.*—**ōrnandā**, &c. : see note on **expediendās**, l. 27.

l. 161. **plūra āc māiōra** : *more and greater things.* The neuter plural of the adjective is often used to denote things instead of the feminine with **rēs** ; e.g. **omnia**, *all things*, is more common than **rēs omnēs.**

l. 162. **redigere** : obj. Infin. after **dēstinābat** continued from l. 161.

optima quaeque et necessāria in paucissimōs cōnferre librōs; bibliothēcās Graecās et Latīnās, quās māximās posset, pūblicāre, siccāre Pomptīnās palūdēs; viam mūnīre ā Marī Superō per Appennīnī dorsum ad Tiberim ūsque; Dācōs quī sē in Pontum effūderant, coercēre; mox Parthīs bellum īnferre per Armeniam.

Haec et alia agentem et meditantem mors praevēnit. Dictātor enim in perpetuum creātus agere īnsolentius coepit; senātum ad sē venientem sedēns excēpit et quendam, ut adsurgeret, monentem īrātō voltū respēxit. Cum Antōnius, Caesaris in omnibus bellīs comes et tunc cōnsulātūs conlēga, capitī ēius in sellā aureā sedentis prō rōstrīs diadēma, īnsīgne rēgium, imposuisset, id ita ab eō est repulsum, ut nōn offēnsus vidērētur. Quā rē coniūrā-

l. 163. **optima quaeque** : *all the best and necessary laws* (**iūra**).—**cōnferre** : *to bring together*. By Caesar's death, this work was postponed for more than 500 years.

l. 164. **bibliothēcās** : obj. of **pūblicāre**.—**quās . . . posset** : *as large as possible*. Cf. **quam prīmum**, l. 51.

l. 165. **pūblicāre** : *to open to the public*, still ruled by **dēstinābat**. —**Pomptīnās palūdēs** : a large marsh, about 25 miles in length, along the coast of Latium.

l. 166. **per** : *over*.—**ad . . . ūsque** : *as far as*.

l. 167. **Dācōs** : obj. of **coercēre**.—**sē effūderant** : *had spread themselves out*.

l. 169. **Haec et alia** : obj. of **agentem et meditantem**, which agree with **eum** understood, the object of **praevēnit**.

l. 170. **Dictātor . . . creātus** : transl. by a clause with *after*.—**Insolentius** : cf. **diūtius**, l. 114.

l. 171. **venientem** : agrees with **senātum**.—**sedēns** : agrees with *he* contained in **excēpit**.—**quendam** : obj. of **respēxit**.

l. 172. **ut adsurgeret** : *to rise*, obj. clause after **monentem**, which agrees with **quendam**.

l. 173. **comes . . . conlēga** : in apposition with **Antōnius**.

l. 174. **capitī** : Dat. after *in, upon*, in **imposuit**.—**ēius** : *his*, not referring to subject.—**sedentis** : *sitting*, agrees with **ēius**.

l. 175. **diadēma** : Acc. after **imposuisset**.—**id** : *it*, refers to **diadēma**.

l. 176. **offēnsus** : sc. **esse** : Nom. to agree with *he*, the subject of

tum in eum est ā sexāgintā amplius virīs, Cassiō et Brūtō ducibus, dēcrētumque eum Īdibus Mārtiīs in senātū cōnfodere.

Plūrima indicia futūrī perīculī obtulerant diī immortālēs. Uxor Calpurnia, territa nocturnō vīsū, ut Īdibus Mārtiīs domī subsisteret ōrābat, et Spūrinna haruspex praedīxerat ut proximōs diēs trīgintā quasi fātālēs cavēret, quōrum ūltimus erat Īdūs Mārtiae. Hōc igitur diē Caesar Spūrinnae, "Ecquid scīs," inquit, "Īdūs Mārtiās iam vēnisse?" et is, "Ecquid scīs, illās nōndum praeterīsse?" Atque cum Caesar eō diē in senātum vēnisset, adsīdentem coniūrātī speciē officiī circumstetērunt īlicōque ūnus, quasi aliquid rogātūrus, propius accēssit renuentīque ab utrōque umerō togam apprehendit. Deinde clāmantem, "Ista quidem vīs

vidērētur.—coniūrātum est: *a conspiracy was made* (lit. *it was conspired*).

l. 177. **in**, *against.*—**amplius**: *more than*, has no effect upon the construction.—**Cassiō . . . ducibus**: *under the leadership of* (lit. *being leaders*), Abl. Abs.

l. 178. **Īdibus Mārtiis** : *on the Ides of March*, i.e. March 15, 44 B.C.

l. 180. **Plūrima indicia** : notice how often the obj. Acc. and subj. Nom. change places for the sake of emphasis.

l. 181. **ut . . . subsisteret** : *to stay*, obj. of **ōrābat.**

l. 182. **domī** : *at home*, Locative case.

l. 183. **quasi fātālēs** : *as fatal.*

l. 184. **Hōc diē** : *on*, &c., Abl. of Time When.

l. 185. **Ecquid** : omit in translation and say simply, *do you know?*—**Īdūs . . . vēnisse** : Acc. with Inf. Remember always to translate such an Inf. by the *Indicative.*—**et is** : *and he* (sc. **respondit**) *answered.*

l. 187. **adsīdentem** : *as he was sitting down*, agrees with **eum**, obj. of **circumstetērunt.**

l. 188. **speciē officiī** : *under pretence of a duty.*—**quasi . . . rogātūrus**: *as if to ask something;* cf. note, l. 101.

l. 189. **propius** : *nearer*, i.e. than he was when Caesar first entered.—**renuentīque** : *and when he refused* (lit. *for him refusing*).

l. 190. **clāmantem**: agrees with **eum**, object of **volnerat**; translate *as*, &c.

est," Casca, ūnus ē coniūrātīs, adversum volnerat paulum īnfrā iugulum. Caesar Cascae brāchium adreptum graphiō trāiēcit cōnātusque prōsilīre aliō volnere tardātus est. Dein ut animadvertit, undique sē strictīs pūgiōnibus petī, togā caput obvolvit et ita tribus et vīgintī plāgīs cōn- 195
fossus est. Cum Mārcum Brūtum, quem fīliī locō habēbat, in sē inruentem vīdisset, dīxisse fertur : " Tū quoque, mī fīlī ! "

Illud inter omnēs ferē cōnstitit, tālem eī mortem paene ex sententiā obtigisse. Nam et quondam cum apud Xe- 200
nophōntem lēgisset, Cȳrum ūltimā valētūdine mandāsse quaedam dē fūnere suō, āspernātus tam lentum mortis genus subitam sibī celeremque optāverat, et prīdiē quam occīderētur, in sermōne nātō super cēnam, quisnam esset fīnis vītae commodissimus, repentīnum inopīnātumque 205
praetulerat. Percussōrum autem neque trienniō quisquam

l. 191. **adversum** : *in front.*—**paulum** : *a little.*

l. 192. **adreptum** : transl. as if **adripuit et.**

l. 193. **trāiēcit** : *stabbed.*—**cōnātusque** : *and attempting* or *when he attempted.*

l. 194. **ut** : *when.*—**strictīs** : *drawn.*

l. 196. **Mārcum Brūtum** : obj. of **vīdisset.** Notice how often a Relat. clause is placed thus within another clause.—**quem ... habēbat**: *whom he used to regard as a son.*—**locō** : *in place of* = *as.*

l. 197. **inruentem** : agrees with **Brūtum.**—**fertur** : *he is reported.*

l. 199. **cōnstitit** : from **cōnstare,** *was well known.*

l. 200. **ex** : *in accordance with.*—**apud** : *in the works of.*—**Xenophōntem** : the famous Greek general and writer.

l. 201. **ūltimā valētūdine** : *in his last illness.*

l. 202. **quaedam** : *certain things,* with **mandāsse** (= **mandāvisse**), transl. *had issued certain orders.*—**āspernātus**: transl. as if **āspernātus est** and insert **et** before **optāverat.**—**tam lentum**: *so slow a,* agrees with **genus.**

l. 203. **subitam celeremque**: sc. **mortem** from **mortis.**—**prīdiē quam** : *the day before,* used like **priusquam.**

l. 204. **nātō** : *that took place* (lit. *born*).—**super** : *during.*—**quisnam** : *as to what.*—**esset** : Subjv. in ind. question, transl. like an Indicative.

l. 206. **trienniō** : Abl. of Measure after **amplius.**—**quisquam** : used only in neg. sentences and with **neque**; we may transl. *and no one.*

amplius supervīxit nequę suā morte dēfūnctus est. Damnātī omnēs alius aliō cāsū periērunt, pars naufragiō, pars proeliō; nōnnūllī sēmet eōdem illō pūgiōne, quō Caesarem violāvērunt, interēmērunt.

Quō rārior in rēgibus et prīncipibus virīs moderātiō, hōc laudanda magis est. C. Iūlius Caesar victōriā cīvīlī clēmentissimē ūsus est; cum enim scrīnia dēprehendisset epistulārum ad Pompēium missārum ab eīs, quī vidēbantur aut in dīversīs aut in neutrīs fuisse partibus, legere nōluit, sed combūssit, nē forte in multōs gravius cōnsulendī locum darent. Cicerō hanc laudem eximiam Caesarī tribuit, quod nihil oblīvīscī solēret nisi iniūriās. Simultātēs omnēs occāsiōne oblātā libēns dēposuit. Ūltrō āc prior scrīpsit C. Calvō post fāmōsa ēius adversum sē epigrammata. Valerium Catullum, cūius versiculīs fāmam suam lacerātam nōn īgnōrābat, adhibuit cēnae. C. Memmiī suf-

l. 207. **suā morte**: *a natural death.* Cf. note, **cōnsulātū**, l. 76.—**damnātī**: tr. as if **damnātī sunt et.**

l. 208. **alius aliō cāsū**: *one by one fate, another by another*, in appos. with **omnēs.**—**pars ... pars**: *some ... others.*

l. 209. **sēmet**: emphatic form of **sē**, obj. of **interēmērunt.**

l. 211. **Quō rārior**: *the rarer.*—**Quō**: Abl. of Measure of Difference, used with comparatives.

l. 212. **hōc ... magis**; *the more it is to be praised.*—**victōriā**; Abl. of Means after **ūsus est.**

l. 214. **missārum**: transl. by a Rel. clause.—**vidēbantur**: *seemed*: **videor**, *I am seen*, in the pass. usually means *seem.*

l. 216. **nē forte**: *lest perchance.*—**in**: *against.*—**gravius ... darent**: *should give occasion of taking too severe measures.*

l. 218. **quod**: *that.*

l. 219. **occāsiōne oblātā**: *if occasion offered*, Abl. Abs. denoting condition.—**libēns**: *willingly*; such adjectives in the predicate are often translated by an adverb in English.—**prior**: *first* (*of two*), used instead of **prīmus**, because there are only two.

l. 221. **cūius versiculīs**: *by whose* (*little*) *verses.*

l. 222. **lacerātam**: sc. **esse.**—**nōn īgnōrābat**: *he well knew* (lit. *was not ignorant*); this use of two negatives for a positive is called Litotes.

frāgātor in petītiōne cōnsulātūs fuit, etsī asperrimās fuisse ēius in sē ōrātiōnēs sciēbat.

Fuisse trāditur excelsā statūrā, ōre paulō plēniōre, nigrīs vegetīsque oculīs, capite calvō; quam calvitiī dēfōrmitātem, quod saepe obtrectātōrum iocīs obnoxia erat, aegrē ferēbat. Ideō ex omnibus dēcrētīs sibī ā senātū populōque honōribus nōn alium aut recēpit aut ūsurpāvit libentius quam iūs laureae perpetuō gestandae. Vīnī parcissimum eum fuisse nē inimīcī quidem negāvērunt. Verbum Catōnis est, ūnum ex omnibus Caesarem ad ēvertendam rem pūblicam sōbrium accēssisse. Armōrum et equitandī perītissimus, labōris ūltrā fidem patiēns; in āgmine nōnnumquam equō, saepius pedibus anteībat, capite dētēctō, seu sōl, seu imber erat. Longissimās viās incrēdibilī celeritāte cōnficiēbat, ut persaepe nūntiōs dē sē praevenīret; neque eum morābantur flūmina, quae vel nandō vel innīxus īnflātīs ūtribus trāiciēbat.

l. 224. **ōrātiōnēs**: subj. Acc. of **esse**.

l. 225. **excelsā statūrā**: *of lofty stature*, Abl. of Quality.—**paulō plēniōre**: *a little too large.*

l. 226. **quam calvitiī dēfōrmitātem ... aegrē ferēbat**: *and this deformity of baldness annoyed him* (lit. *and he scarcely endured this deformity of baldness*).

l. 228. **dēcrētīs**: *which were*, &c.

l. 229. **nōn alium ... libentius**: *he neither accepted nor seized any other more willingly.*

l. 230. **iūs ... gestandae**: *the right of wearing*, &c.—**Vīnī**: Gen. after **parcissimum.**

l. 231. **eum**: *that he.*—**nē ... quidem**: *not ... even:* notice that the emphatic word is placed between the **nē ... quidem.**

l. 232. **ūnum ... Caesarem**: *Caesar was the only one who* or *Caesar alone of all.*—**ad ... rem pūblicam**; cf. l. 27.

l. 233. **Armōrum**: transl. with *in* after **perītissimus.**

l. 235. **equō**: *on horseback.*

l. 237. **ut**: *so that*, denotes Result.

l. 238. **nandō ... ūtribus**: *either by swimming or supporting himself upon inflated skins.*

II. Mārcus Tullius Cicerō.

106–43 B.C.

Mārcus Tullius Cicerō, equestrī genere, Arpīnī, quod est Volscōrum oppidum, nātus est. Ex ēius avīs ūnus verrūcam in extrēmō nāsō sitam habuit, ciceris grānō similem; inde cōgnōmen Cicerōnis gentī inditum. Suā-

[MARCUS TULLIUS CICERO was born B.C. 106 at Arpinum and was killed B.C. 43. He was a great statesman, and, next to Demosthenes, the greatest orator ever known. For a full account of his life see Forsyth's "Life of Cicero," Plutarch's "Life" of Cicero, and Fausset's "Cicero."]

l. 1. **equestrī genere**: *of equestrian rank*, i.e. next to the senators. —**Arpīnī**: Loc. Gen.

l. 2. **avīs**: from **avus.**

l. 3. **in . . . nāsō**: *on the extreme end of his nose.*—**grānō**: Dat. with **similem.**

l. 4. **cōgnōmen**: see note on **nōmen**, &c., CAESAR, l. 74.—**Suādentibus**: *when*, &c.

dentibus quibusdam, ut id nōmen mūtāret, "Dabō operam," inquit, "ut istud cōgnōmen nōbilissimōrum nōminum splendōrem vincat." Cum ā patre Rōmam missus, ubi celeberrimōrum magistrōrum scholīs interesset, eās artēs dīsceret, quibus aetās puerīlis ad hūmānitātem solet īnfōrmārī, tantō succēssū tantāque cum praeceptōrum tum cēterōrum dīscipulōrum admīrātiōne id fēcit, ut, cum fāma dē Cicerōnis ingeniō et doctrīnā ad aliōs mānāsset, nōn paucī, quī ēius videndī et audiendī grātiā scholās adīrent, repertī esse dīcantur.

Cum nūllā rē magis ad summōs in rē pūblicā honōrēs viam mūnīrī posse intellegeret quam arte dīcendī et ēloquentiā, tōtō animō in ēius studium incubuit; in quō quidem ita versātus est, ut nōn sōlum eōs, quī in Forō et iūdiciīs causās perōrārent, studiōsē sectārētur, sed prīvātim quoque dīligentissimē sē exercēret. Prīmum ēloquentiam et lībertātem adversus Sullānōs ostendit. Nam cum Rōscium quendam, parricīdiī accūsātum, ob Chrȳsogonī, Sullae lībertī, quī in ēius adversāriīs erat, potentiam nēmŏ

l. 5. **Dabō operam ... ut**: *I shall see to it ... that.*

l. 7. **missus**: trans. as if **missus esset et.**

l. 8. **ubi**: denotes Purpose and is equivalent to **ut ibi.**—**scholīs**: Dat. with **interesset.**

l. 10. **tantā**: agrees with **admīrātiōne.**—**cum ... tum**: *both ... and.*

l. 11. **id fēcit**: *he accomplished this task* (it).

l. 12. **nōn paucī**: very many (lit. *not a few*): Litotes.

l. 13. **ēius videndī**, &c.: *of seeing and hearing him*, attracted from **eum videndī**, &c.—**scholās**: Acc. with **adīre**; **ad** or **in** might have been used.

l. 14. **repertī esse**: Nom. to agree with subject of **dīcantur.**

l. 15. **magis**: goes with **quam.**

l. 16. **arte dīcendī**: cf. note on CAESAR, l. 23.

l. 17. **ēius**: *of it; this* would be **hōc**, agreeing with **studium.**

l. 18. **eōs**: object of **sectārētur.**

l. 22. **Rōscium**: object of **dēfendere.**—**accūsātum**: *accused*, or may be rendered by a Relative clause, *who was*, &c.—**ob**: governs **potentiam.**

dēfendere audēret, tantā ēloquentiae vī eum dēfendit Cicerō, ut iam tum in arte dīcendī nūllus eī pār esse vidērētur. Ex quō invidiam veritus Athēnās studiōrum grātiā petiit ubi Antiochum philosophum studiōsē audīvit. Inde ēloquentiae causā Rhodum sē contulit, ubi Molōnem, Graecum rhētorem tum disertissimum, magistrum habuit. Quī cum Cicerōnem dīcentem audīvisset, flēvisse dīcitur, quod per hunc Graecia ēloquentiae laude prīvārētur.

Rōmam reversus quaestor Siciliam habuit. Nūllīus vērō quaestūra aut grātior aut clārior fuit; cum māgna tum esset annōnae difficultās, initiō molestus erat Siculīs, quōs cōgeret frūmenta in urbem mittere; posteā vērō, dīligentiam et iūstitiam et cōmitātem ēius expertī, māiōrēs quaestōrī suō honōrēs quam ūllī umquam praetōrī dētulērunt. Ē Siciliā reversus Rōmam in causīs dīcendīs ita flōruit, ut inter omnēs causārum patrōnōs et esset et habērētur prīnceps.

l. 24. **eum**: *him*, refers to Roscius.

l. 25. **eī**: refers to Cicero.—**pār**: Nom. to agree with **nūllus**, the subject of **vidērētur**.

l. 26. **veritus**: *because he feared;* the Participle often denotes cause as well as most other relations of dependent clauses.—**Athēnās**: obj. of **petiit**.

l. 28. **sē contulit**: **cōnferre**, being transitive, cannot be thus used without an object, hence the **sē**.

l. 29. **magistrum**: *as master;* appos. with **Molōnem**, obj. of **habuit**.

l. 30. **dīcentem**: actual Perception and Representation require the Participle, which is distinctly different here from the Infinitive. The Part. shows that he *actually heard him saying*.

l. 31. **ēloquentiae**: governed by **laude**, an Abl. of Sep. with **prīvārētur**.

l. 33. **quaestor**: *as quaestor;* in apposition to *he* in **habuit**.

l. 35. **initiō**: Abl. of Time, *at first, in the beginning*.

l. 37. **expertī**: *when they had experienced*.

l. 38. **praetōrī**: an officer of much higher rank than quaestor; hence the **māiōrēs honōrēs** were especially gratifying to him.

l. 39. **in causīs dīcendīs**: *in pleading causes*.

l. 40. **prīnceps**: Nom. because the pred. of the verb *be* and of the

Cōnsul deinde factus L. Sergiī Catilīnae coniūrātiōnem singulārī virtūte, cōnstantiā, cūrā compressit. Catilīnae proavum, M. Sergium, incrēdibilī fortitūdine fuisse Plīnius refert. Stīpendia is fēcit secundō bellō Pūnicō. Secundō stīpendiō dextram manum perdidit; stīpendiīs duōbus ter et vīciēns volnerātus est; ob id neutrā manū, neutrō pede satis ūtilis, plūrimīsque posteā stīpendiīs dēbilis mīles erat. Bis ab Hannibale captus, bis vinculōrum ēius profugus, vīgintī mēnsibus nūllō nōn diē in catēnīs aut compedibus custōdītus. Sinistrā manū sōlā quater pūgnāvit, duōbus equīs īnsidente eō suffossīs. Dextram sibī ferream fēcit eāque religātā proeliātus Cremōnam obsidiōne exēmit, Placentiam tūtātus est, duodēna castra hostium in Galliā cēpit. "Cēterī profectō," Plīnius addit, "victōrēs hominum fuēre, Sergius vīcit etiam fortūnam."

Singulārem hūius virī glōriam foedē dēhonestāvit prōnepōtis scelus. Hīc enim reī familiāris, quam profūderat,

passive of verbs of *considering, thinking, deeming*, &c., is always Nominative.

l. 41. **factus**: cf. **experti**, l. 37.

l. 43. **proavum**: subj. Acc. of **fuisse**.—**fortitūdine**: Abl. of Qual., *of incredible*, &c.

l. 46. **neutrā . . . erat**: *although injured in both hands and both feet* (lit. *although sufficiently useful in neither hands nor feet*), *and although weak, he continued to serve as a soldier* (lit. *was afterwards a soldier*), &c.

l. 48. **vinculōrum = ē vinculīs.**

l. 49. **nūllō nōn diē**: *every day* (= *not no day*).

l. 51. **duōbus . . . suffossīs**: *two horses being stabbed from below, while he was seated upon them.*

l. 52. **eā religātā**: *this being fastened on (to the stump of his arm).*

l. 53. **exēmit**, &c.: note the rapid movement by omission of conjunctions.—**duodēna**: not **duodecim**, because **castra** is used only in the Plural.

l. 54. **victōrēs**: pred. after **fuēre.**

l. 56. **dēhonestāvit**: subj. is **scelus**, placed last for emphasis.

l. 57. **reī familiāris**: Gen. after **inopiā**, an Abl. of Cause.

inopiā multōrumque scelerum cōnscientiā in furōrem āctus et dominandī cupiditāte incēnsus indīgnātusque, quod in petītiōne cōnsulātūs repulsam passus esset, coniūrātiōne factā senātum cōnfodere, cōnsulēs trucīdāre, urbem incendere, dīripere aerārium cōnstituerat. Āctum erat dē pulcherrimō imperiō, nisi illa coniūrātiō in Cicerōnem et Antōnium cōnsulēs incidisset, quōrum alter industriā rem patefēcit, alter manū oppressit. Cum Cicerō habitō senātū in praesentem reum perōrāsset, Catilīna, incendium suum ruīnā sē restinctūrum esse minitāns, Rōmā profūgit et ad exercitum, quem parāverat, proficīscitur, sīgna inlātūrus urbī. Sed sociī ēius, quī in urbe remānserant, comprehēnsī in carcere necātī sunt. A. Fulvius, vir senātōriī ōrdinis fīlium, iuvenem et ingeniō et fōrmā inter aequālēs nitentem, prāvō cōnsiliō Catilīnae amīciṭiam secūtum inque castra ēius ruentem, ex mediō itinere retrāctum

l. 59. **quod** : *because.*

l. 61. **cōnfodere** : this and the following Infinitives are dependent upon **cōnstituerat.**

l. 62. **Āctum erat dē** : *it would have been all over with.*

l. 63. **in . . . cōnsulēs** : transl. *in the consulship of.*

l. 64. **quōrum alter . . . alter** : *the one of whom . . . the other*, **alter** being used, because only two are mentioned.

l. 66. **in . . . reum** : *against the accused* (*Catiline*), *who was present.*

l. 67. **restinctūrum esse** : *that he would*, &c. acc. with Inf. after **minitāns**, *threatening*, which, like verbs of *Hope* and *Promise*, take *Acc. with Fut. Infinitive.*

l. 68. **inlātūrus** : *with the intention of*, &c. ; cf. CAESAR, l. 101, note.

l. 69. **comprehēnsī**: *were*, &c. . . . *and.*

l. 70. **A. Fulvius**: subj. of **adfēcit**, l. 74.

l. 71. **fīlium** : object of **adfēcit**, l. 74.—**iuvenem**: app. with **fīlium.**—**ingeniō et fōrmā**: Abl. of Cause.

l. 72. **nitentem**: *although he was conspicuous.*—**secūtum . . . ruentem**: *because he adopted . . . and was rushing*, &c.

l. 73. **retrāctum . . . adfēcit** : *he brought back and punished with death.*

suppliciō mortis adfēcit, praefātus, nōn sē Catilīnae illum adversus patriam, sed patriae adversus Catilīnam genuisse.

Neque eō magis ab inceptō Catilīna dēstitit, sed īnfestīs sīgnīs Rōmam petēns Antōniī exercitū opprimitur. Quam atrōciter dīmicātum sit, exitus docuit; nēmŏ hostium bellō superfuit; quem quisque in pūgnandō cēperat locum, eum āmissā animā tegēbat. Catilīna longē ā suīs inter hostium cadāvera repertus est; pulcherrimā morte, sī prō patriā sīc concidisset! Senātus populusque Rōmānus Cicerōnem patrem patriae appellāvit. Cicerō ipse in ōrātiōne prō Sullā palam praedicat, cōnsilium patriae servandae fuisse iniectum sibi ā diīs, cum Catilīna coniūrāsset adversus eam. "Ō diī immortālēs," inquit, "vōs profectō incendistis tum animum meum cupiditāte cōnservandae

l. 74. **praefātus**: *proclaiming.*—**sē**: *that he* (*the father*).—**Catilīnae**: *for Catiline*, Dat. of Advantage.

l. 75. **illum**: *him* (*the son*).

l. 76. **genuisse**: Perf. Inf. of **gignō**.

l. 77. **eō**: Abl. of Cause.

l. 78. **Quam ... sit**: *how fierce the battle was* (lit. *how fiercely it was fought*). It is best always to translate such impersonal passives by supplying a Noun from the Verb, e.g. **pūgnātur** = **pūgna pūgnātur**, &c.

l. 79. **dimicātum sit**: Subj. in indirect question.

l. 80. **bellō superfuit**: *survived the battle.*—**quem**: agrees with **locum**, which together are the object of **cēperat**.

l. 81. **eum**: sc. **locum**.

l. 82. **pulcherrimā morte**: Abl. Abs. A Noun and an Adj. may be in the Abl. Abs. without a Participle, because there is no participle of the verb **sum**. The Abl. Abs. is here conditional and may be translated as if = **mors pulcherrima fuisset.**—**prō**: *for* = *in defence of.*

l. 84. **Cicerōnem**: direct object.—**patrem**: pred. obj. Verbs of *calling, choosing*, &c., take two Accusatives of the same person or thing as in English.

l. 86. **fuisse iniectum** (= **iniectum esse**), the passive forms are often thus inverted; **praedicat** is a verb of *saying*, and hence the Acc. with Inf.—**sibi**: Dat. after **in** in composition in **iniectum**.

patriae. Vōs āvocāstis mē ā cōgitātiōnibus omnibus cēterīs et convertistis ad salūtem ūnam patriae. Vōs dēnique praetulistis mentī meae clārissimum lūmen in tenebrīs tantīs errōris et īnscientiae. Tribuam enim vōbīs, quae sunt vestra. Nec vērō possum tantum dare ingeniō meō, ut dīspexerim sponte meā in tempestāte illā turbulentissimā reī pūblicae, quid esset optimum factū."

Paucīs post annīs Cicerōnī diem dīxit Clōdius tribūnus plēbis, quod cīvēs Rōmānōs indictā causā necāvisset. Senātus maestus, tamquam in pūblicō lūctū, veste mūtātā prō eō dēprecābātur. Cicerō, cum posset armīs salūtem suam dēfendere, māluit urbe cēdere, quam suā causā caedem fierī. Proficīscentem omnēs bonī flentēs prōsecūtī sunt. Dein Clōdius ēdictum prōposuit, ut Mārcō Tulliō īgnī et aquā interdīcerētur; illīus domum et vīllās incendit. Sed

l. 90. **convertistis** : sc. **mē** from the preceding line.—**ūnam** : *alone.*

l. 91. **mentī** : cf. note on **sibi**, l. 86.

l. 92. **quae** : sc. **ea**, *those things*, as anteced. and obj. of **tribuam.**

l. 94. **ut dispexerim** = **ut dīcam mē dīspexisse**, *as to say that I* (*should have*) *perceived.*—**sponte meā** : *of myself* (lit. *of my own accord*).

l. 95. **quid** : interrog. *what* (= *what thing*).—**optimum factū** : *best to do.*

l. 96. **paucīs post annīs** : *after a few years* (lit. *afterwards by a few years*); **post** is here an adv. and **paucīs annīs** is an Abl. of Measure.—**diem dīxit** : *accused* (literally, *appointed a day for trial.*)—**Clōdius** : a bitter enemy of Cicero.

l. 97. **quod** : *because.*—**cīvēs Rōmānōs** : the conspirators.—**indictā causā** : *without trying their case.*

l. 98. **veste mūtātā** : *having changed their garments*, i.e. *put on mourning.*

l. 99. **cum** : *although*, is concessive.

l. 100. **urbe** : Abl. of Separation.—**quam** : *rather than*, after the comparative idea in **māluit.**—**suā causā** : *on his account.*

l. 101. **Proficīscentem**: agrees with **eum**, the object of **prōsecūtī sunt.**

l. 102. **ut . . . interdīcerētur** : *that Marcus Tullius should be cut off from fire and water* (lit. *that it should be interdicted* (*prohibited*) *to Marcus Tullius from*, &c.): this is the regular formula for banishment.

vīs illa nōn diūturna fuit; mox enim tōtus ferē populus Rōmānus ingentī dēsīderiō Cicerōnis reditum flāgitāre coepit et māximō omnium ōrdinum studiō Cicerō in patriam revocātus est. Nihil per tōtam vītam Cicerōnī itinere, quō in patriam rediit, accidit iūcundius. Obviam eī redeuntī ab ūniversīs itum est; domus ēius pūblicā pecūniā restitūta est.

Gravissimae illā tempestāte inter Caesarem et Pompēium ortae sunt inimīcitiae, ut rēs nisi bellō dirimī nōn posse vidērētur. Cicerō quidem summō studiō ēnītēbātur, ut eōs inter sē reconciliāret et ā bellī cīvīlis calamitātibus dēterrēret, sed cum neutrum ad pācem ineundam permovēre posset, Pompēium secūtus est. Sed victō Pompēiō, ā Caesare victōre veniam ūltrō accēpit. Quō interfectō Octāviānum, Caesaris hērēdem, fōvit, Antōnium impūgnāvit effēcitque, ut ā senātū hostis iūdicārētur.

l. 104. **ferē**: note its position.—**populus Rōmānus**: the adj. **Rōmānus** regularly follows its noun.

l. 105. **Cicerōnis**: depends upon **reditum.**

l. 107. **Nihil**: subj. of **accidit.**—**itinere, quō**: *than that journey, by which.*—**itinere**: Abl. of Measure after **iūcundius.**—**quō**: Abl. of Means.

l. 108. **iūcundius**: *more pleasant*, neut. of comparative agreeing with **nihil.**—**Obviam . . . itum est**: *all went to meet . . .* (lit. *it was gone to meet by all*).—**eī redeuntī**: *him returning*, Dat. after **obviam īre.**

l. 111. **Gravissimae**: agrees with **inimīcitiae.**—**tempestāte**: Abl. of Time When.

l. 112. **ut . . . vidērētur**: *so that it seemed impossible to settle the difficulty save by war* (lit. *so that the difficulty seemed not able to be settled*). In Latin, instead of the impersonal construction with the Acc. and Inf. (i.e. **rem dirimī nōn posse**), the personal constr. with the Nom. and Inf. is preferred with the pass. of **videō**, &c., save in the compound tenses.

l. 114. **inter sē**: *to each other;* reciprocal relations are regularly expressed by **inter.**

l. 115. **dēterrēret**: sc. **eōs.**

l. 117. **Quō interfectō**: *at whose death* (lit. *who being killed*).—**Octāviānum**: later called Augustus, by which name he is commonly known.

l. 119. **hostis**: pred. Nom. after **iūdicārētur.**

Sed Antōnius, initā cum Octāviānō societāte, Cicerōnem iam diū sibī inimīcum prōscrīpsit. Quā rē audītā Cicerō trānsversīs itineribus in vīllam, quae ā marī proximē aberat, fūgit indeque nāvem cōnscendit, in Macedoniam trānsitūrus. Unde aliquotiēns in altum prōvēctum cum modo ventī adversī rettulissent, modo ipse iactātiōnem maris patī nōn posset, taedium tandem eum et fugae et vītae cēpit regressusque ad vīllam, "Moriar," inquit, "in patriā saepe servātā." Satis cōnstat, adventantibus percussōribus, servōs fortiter fidēliterque parātōs fuisse ad dīmicandum, ipsum dēpōnī lectīcam et quiētōs patī, quod sors inīqua cōgeret, iūssisse. Prōminentī ex lectīcā et immōtam cervīcem praebentī caput praecīsum est. Manūs quoque abscīsae; caput relātum est ad Antōnium ēiusque iūssū cum dextrā manū in rōstrīs positum.

Quam diū rēs pūblica Rōmāna per eōs gerēbātur, quibus sē ipsa commīserat, in eam cūrās cōgitātiōnēsque ferē

l. 120. **societāte** : the second triumvirate.

l. 122. **trānsversīs itineribus** : *by side-paths.*—**quae . . . aberat** : *which was nearest to the sea.*

l. 123. **trānsitūrus** : cf. note on **vindicātūrus**, CAESAR, l. 101.

l. 124. **Unde**, &c.: begin the sentence with **cum**, and transl. **unde** as if **inde.**—**prōvēctum** : agrees with **eum**, obj. of **rettulissent** (from **referō**) : transl. *as he was sailing.*—**modo . . . modo** : *now . . . now.*

l. 126. **et fugae et vītae** : depend upon **taedium**, the subject of **cēpit.**

l. 127. **regressus** : *returning.*

l. 128. **saepe servātā** : transl. by a Rel. clause, *which I have*, &c.—**Satis cōnstat** : *it is well known*, followed by the Acc. and Inf. **servōs . . . fuisse** and **ipsum . . . iūssisse.**—**adventantibus** : *when*, &c.

l. 130. **dēpōnī lectīcam** : *the litter to be put down.*—**quiētōs** (sc. **eōs**) **patī** : *and them to suffer quietly*, the Adj. in the pred. being often trans. as an Adverb in Eng. —**quod** : *what*, here = **id quod**, *that which.*

l. 131. **Prominentī . . . praebentī** : agree with **eī**, Dat. of Disadvantage, which is best transl. by a Gen. *his.* Transl. the participles with *as he*, &c., making **caput** their object and *it* the subj. of **praecīsum est.**

l. 135. **Quam diū** : *as long as.*

omnēs suās cōnferēbat Cicerō et plūs operae pōnēbat in agendō quam in scrībendō. Cum autem dominātū ūnīus Iūliī Caesaris omnia tenērentur, nōn sē angōribus dēdidit nec indīgnīs homine doctō voluptātibus. Fugiēns cōnspectum Forī urbisque rūra peragrābat, abdēbatque sē quantum licēbat, et sōlus erat. Nihil agere autem cum animus nōn posset, exīstimāvit honestissimē molestiās posse dēpōnī, sī sē ad philosophiam rettulisset, cuī adulēscēns multum temporis tribuerat, et omne studium cūramque convertit ad scrībendum; atque ut cīvibus etiam ōtiōsus aliquid prōdesse posset, ēlabōrāvit, ut doctiōrēs fierent et sapientiōrēs, plūraque brevī tempore ēversā rē pūblicā scrīpsit, quam multīs annīs eā stante scrīpserat. Sīc fācundiae et Latīnārum lītterārum parēns ēvāsit pāruitque virōrum sapientium praeceptō, quī docent nōn sōlum ex malīs ēligere minima oportēre, sed etiam excerpere ex hīs ipsīs, sī quid īnsit bonī.

Multa exstant facētē ab eō dicta. Cum Lentulum, ge-

l. 137. **plūs . . . pōnēbat** : *spent more labor.*

l. 138. **ūnīus** : *alone.*

l. 140. **homine doctō** : Abl. depending on **indīgnīs**, which agrees with **voluptātibus.**—**cōnspectum** : object of **fugiēns**, but **rūra** of **peragrābat.**

l. 142. **Nihil agere . . . nōn posset** : *must be active* (lit. *could not do nothing*).

l. 144. **adulēscēns** : *when a young man.*

l. 146 **ut** : denotes Purpose.—**etiam ōtiōsus** : *even though idle.*

l. 147. **aliquid** : used adverbially, *somewhat, in some respect.*—**fierent** : *might become.*

l. 148. **ēversā . . . pūblicā** : *since the state,* &c.

l. 149. **eā stante** : *while it was,* &c.

l. 150. **Latīnārum lītterārum** : *Latin literature.*—**parēns ēvāsit** : *he became,* &c.

l. 151. **praeceptō** : Dat. after **pāruit.**

l. 152. **minima** : *the least of evils.*—**oportēre** : *that one ought.*—**hīs ipsīs**: sc. **malīs.**—**sī . . . bonī** : *whatever good is in them* (lit. *if there is anything of good in them*).

l. 154. **facētē dicta** : *witty sayings* (lit. *things said wittily*).

nerum suum, exiguae statūrae hominem, vīdisset longō gladiō accinctum, "Quis," inquit, "generum meum ad gladium adligāvit?"

Mātrōna quaedam, iūniōrem sē quam erat simulāns, dictitābat sē trīgintā tantum annōs habēre; cuī Cicerō, "Vērum est," inquit, "nam hōc vīgintī annōs audiō."

Caesar, alterō cōnsule mortuō diē Decembris ūltimā, Canīnium cōnsulem hōrā septimā in reliquam diēī partem renūntiāverat; quem cum plērīque īrent salūtātum dē mōre, "Fēstīnēmus," inquit Cicerō, "priusquam abeat magistrātū." Dē eōdem Canīniō, scrīpsit Cicerō: "Fuit mīrificā vigilantiā Canīnius, quī tōtō suō cōnsulātū somnum nōn vīderit."

l. 158. **iūniōrem . . . simulāns**: *pretending to be younger than she was.*

l. 159. **trīgintā . . . habēre**: *was only thirty years old.*

l. 160. **hōc**: Acc. after **audiō**.—**audiō**: *I have been hearing.*

l. 161. **alterō . . . mortuō**: Abl. Abs.—**diē . . . ūltimā**; Abl. of Time When.

l. 162. **cōnsulem**: *as consul.*

l. 163. **salūtātum**: *to salute him.*

l. 164. **dē mōre**: *according to custom.*—**Fēstīnēmus**: *let us hasten*, Hortatory Subjv.—**priusquam abeat**: because he was consul for only a few hours.—**abeat**: Subjv. is used with **priusquam** and **antequam**, when the action is designed and denotes a Purpose.; **priusquam** may here be resolved into *too soon for him to* = *in order that he may not go*, &c.

l. 166. **vigilantiā**: Abl. of Quality.—**tōtō**: *during his whole*, &c.

APPENDIX.

PARADIGMS.

NOUNS.

Declension I.

table (f.).

SINGULAR.—Nom.	mēnsa,		PLURAL.—Nom.	mēnsae,	
Gen.	mēnsae,		Gen.	mēnsārum,	
Dat.	mēnsae,		Dat.	mēnsīs,	
Acc.	mēnsam,		Acc.	mēnsās,	
Voc.	mēnsa,		Voc.	mēnsae,	
Abl.	mēnsā.		Abl.	mēnsīs.	

Declension II.

SINGULAR.

	master (m.).	*gift* (n.).	*field* (m.).
Nom.	dominus,	dōnum,	ager,
Gen.	dominī,	dōnī,	agrī,
Dat.	dominō,	dōnō,	agrō,
Acc.	dominum,	dōnum,	agrum,
Voc.	domine,	dōnum,	ager,
Abl.	dominō.	dōnō.	agrō.

PLURAL.

Nom.	dominī,	dōna,	agrī,
Gen.	dominōrum,	dōnōrum,	agrōrum,
Dat.	dominīs,	dōnīs,	agrīs,
Acc.	dominōs,	dōna,	agrōs,
Voc.	dominī,	dōna,	agrī,
Abl.	dominīs.	dōnīs.	agrīs.

SINGULAR.

	son (m.).	*boy* (m.).	*man* (m.).	*talent* (n.).
Nom.	fīlius,	puer,	vir,	ingenium,
Gen.	fīliī, fīlī,	pueri,	virī,	ingeniī, ingenī,
Dat.	fīliō,	puerō,	virō,	ingeniō,
Acc.	fīlium,	puerum,	virum,	ingenium,
Voc.	fīlī,	puer,	vir,	ingenium,
Abl.	fīliō.	puerō.	virō.	ingeniō.

PLURAL.

Nom.	fīliī,	puerī,	virī,	ingenia,
Gen.	fīliōrum,	puerōrum,	virōrum,	ingeniōrum,
Dat.	fīliīs,	puerīs,	virīs,	ingeniīs,
Acc.	fīliōs,	puerōs,	virōs,	ingenia,
Voc.	fīliī,	puerī,	virī,	ingenia,
Abl.	fīliīs.	puerīs.	virīs.	ingeniīs.

Declension III.

SINGULAR.

	chief (m.).	*king* (m.).	*soldier* (m.).	*age* (f.).
Nom.	prīnceps,	rēx,	mīles,	aetās,
Gen.	prīncipis,	rēgis,	mīlitis,	aetātis,
Dat.	prīncipī,	rēgī,	mīlitī,	aetātī,
Acc.	prīncipem,	rēgem,	mīlitem,	aetātem,
Voc.	prīnceps,	rēx,	mīles,	aetās,
Abl.	prīncipe.	rēge.	mīlite.	aetāte.

PLURAL.

Nom.	prīncipēs,	rēgēs,	mīlitēs,	aetātēs,
Gen.	prīncipum,	rēgum,	mīlitum,	aetātum,
Dat.	prīncipibus,	rēgibus,	mīlitibus,	aetātibus,
Acc.	prīncipēs,	rēgēs,	mīlitēs,	aetātēs,
Voc.	prīncipēs,	rēgēs,	mīlitēs,	aetātēs,
Abl.	prīncipibus.	rēgibus.	mīlitibus.	aetātibus.

SINGULAR.

	foot (m.).	*guard* (m.).	*virtue* (f.).	*head* (n.).
Nom.	pēs,	cūstōs,	virtūs,	caput,
Gen.	ped**is**,	cūstōd**is**,	virtūt**is**,	capit**is**,
Dat.	ped**ī**,	cūstōd**ī**,	virtūt**ī**,	capit**ī**,
Acc.	ped**em**,	cūstōd**em**,	virtūt**em**,	caput,
Voc.	pēs,	cūstōs,	virtūs,	caput,
Abl.	ped**e**.	cūstōd**e**.	virtūt**e**.	capit**e**.

PLURAL.

Nom.	ped**ēs**,	cūstōd**ēs**,	virtūt**ēs**,	capit**a**,
Gen.	ped**um**,	cūstōd**um**,	virtūt**um**,	capit**um**,
Dat.	ped**ibus**,	cūstōd**ibus**,	virtūt**ibus**,	capit**ibus**,
Acc.	ped**ēs**,	cūstōd**ēs**,	virtūt**ēs**,	capit**a**,
Voc.	ped**ēs**,	cūstōd**ēs**,	virtūt**ēs**,	capit**a**,
Abl.	ped**ibus**.	cūstōd**ibus**.	virtūt**ibus**.	capit**ibus**.

SINGULAR.

	consul (m.).	*lion* (m.).	*image* (f.)	*name* (n.).
Nom.	cōnsul,	leŏ,	imāgō,	nōmen,
Gen.	cōnsul**is**,	leōn**is**,	imāgin**is**,	nōmin**is**,
Dat.	cōnsul**ī**,	leōn**ī**,	imāgin**ī**,	nōmin**ī**,
Acc.	cōnsul**em**,	leōn**em**,	imāgin**em**,	nōmen,
Voc.	cōnsul,	leŏ,	imāgō,	nōmen,
Abl.	cōnsul**e**.	leōn**e**.	imāgin**e**.	nōmin**e**.

PLURAL.

Nom.	cōnsul**ēs**,	leōn**ēs**,	imāgin**ēs**,	nōmin**a**,
Gen.	cōnsul**um**,	leōn**um**,	imāgin**um**,	nōmin**um**,
Dat.	cōnsul**ibus**,	leōn**ibus**,	imāgin**ibus**,	nōmin**ibus**,
Acc.	cōnsul**ēs**,	leōn**ēs**,	imāgin**ēs**,	nōmin**a**,
Voc.	cōnsul**ēs**,	leōn**ēs**,	imāgin**ēs**,	nōmin**a**,
Abl.	cōnsul**ibus**.	leōn**ibus**.	imāgin**ibus**.	nōmin**ibus**.

		toil (m.).	*father* (m.).	*sea* (n.).
SING.—	Nom.	labor,	pater,	aequor,
	Gen.	labōr**is**,	patr**is**,	aequor**is**,
	Dat.	labōr**ī**,	patr**ī**,	aequor**ī**,
	Acc.	labōr**em**,	patr**em**,	aequor,
	Voc.	labor,	pater,	aequor,
	Abl.	labōr**e**.	patr**e**.	aequor**e**.

PLUR.—Nom.	labōrēs,	patrēs,	aequora,
Gen.	labōrum,	patrum,	aequorum,
Dat.	labōribus,	patribus,	aequoribus,
Acc.	labōrēs,	patrēs,	aequora,
Voc.	labōrēs,	patrēs,	aequora,
Abl.	labōribus.	patribus.	aequoribus.

SINGULAR.

	flower (m.)	*right* (n.).	*kind* (n.).	*body* (n.).
Nom.	flōs,	iūs,	genus,	corpus,
Gen.	flōris,	iūris,	generis,	corporis,
Dat.	flōrī,	iūrī,	generī,	corporī,
Acc.	flōrem,	iūs,	genus,	corpus,
Voc.	flōs,	iūs,	genus,	corpus,
Abl.	flōre.	iūre.	genere.	corpore.

PLURAL.

Nom.	flōrēs,	iūra,	genera,	corpora,
Gen.	flōrum,	iūrum,	generum,	corporum,
Dat.	flōribus,	iūribus,	generibus,	corporibus,
Acc.	flōrēs,	iūra,	genera,	corpora,
Voc.	flōrēs,	iūra,	genera,	corpora,
Abl.	flōribus.	iūribus.	generibus.	corporibus.

SINGULAR.

	hill (m.).	*tower* (f.).	*cough* (f.).	*fox* (f.).
Nom.	collis,	turris,	tussis,	vulpēs,
Gen.	collis,	turris,	tussis,	vulpis,
Dat.	collī,	turrī,	tussī,	vulpī,
Acc.	collem,	turrim (-em),	tussim,	vulpem,
Voc.	collis,	turris,	tussis,	vulpēs,
Abl.	colle.	turrī (-e).	tussī.	vulpe.

PLURAL.

Nom.	collēs,	turrēs,	tussēs,	vulpēs,
Gen.	collium,	turrium,	tussium,	vulpium,
Dat.	collibus,	turribus,	tussibus,	vulpibus,
Acc.	collīs (-ēs),	turrīs (-ēs),	tussīs (-ēs),	vulpīs (-ēs),
Voc.	collēs,	turrēs,	tussēs,	vulpēs,
Abl.	collibus.	turribus.	tussibus.	vulpibus.

SINGULAR.

	city (f.).	*citadel* (f.).	*part* (f.).	*mountain* (m.).
Nom.	urbs,	arx,	pars,	mōns,
Gen.	urbis,	arcis,	partis,	montis,
Dat.	urbī,	arcī,	partī,	montī,
Acc.	urbem,	arcem,	partem,	montem,
Voc.	urbs,	arx,	pars,	mōns,
Abl.	urbe.	arce.	parte.	monte.

PLURAL.

Nom.	urbēs,	arcēs,	partēs,	montēs,
Gen.	urbium,	arcium,	partium,	montium,
Dat.	urbibus,	arcibus,	partibus,	montibus,
Acc.	urbēs (-īs),	arcēs (-īs),	partēs (-īs),	montēs (-īs),
Voc.	urbēs,	arcēs,	partēs,	montēs,
Abl.	urbibus.	arcibus.	partibus.	montibus.

		sea (n.).	*animal* (n.).	*spur* (n.).
SING.—	Nom.	mare,	animal,	calcar,
	Gen.	maris,	animālis,	calcāris,
	Dat.	marī,	animālī,	calcārī,
	Acc.	mare,	animal,	calcar,
	Voc.	mare,	animal,	calcar,
	Abl.	marī.	animālī.	calcārī.
PLUR.—	Nom.	maria,	animālia,	calcāria,
	Gen.	marum,	animālium,	calcārium,
	Dat.	maribus,	animālibus,	calcāribus,
	Acc.	maria,	animālia,	calcāria,
	Voc.	maria,	animālia,	calcāria,
	Abl.	maribus.	animālibus.	calcāribus.

Irregular Nouns.

		ox (m.).	*old man* (m.).	*snow* (f.).	*force* (f.).
SING.—	Nom.	bōs,	senex,	nix,	vīs,
	Gen.	bovis,	senis,	nivis,	vīs,
	Dat.	bovī,	senī,	nivī,	vī,
	Acc.	bovem,	senem,	nivem,	vim,
	Voc.	bōs,	senex,	nix,	vīs,
	Abl.	bove.	sene.	nive.	vī.

PLUR.—Nom.	bovēs,	senēs,	nivēs,	vīrēs,
Gen.	boum,	senum,	nivium,	vīrium,
Dat.	bōbus (būbus),	senibus,	nivibus,	vīribus,
Acc.	bovēs,	senēs,	nivēs,	vīrēs,
Voc.	bovēs,	senēs,	nivēs,	vīrēs,
Abl.	bōbus (būbus).	senibus.	nivibus.	vīribus.

	SG.—*flesh* (f.).	PL.	SG.—*bone* (n.).	PL.	SG.—*Jupiter* (m.).
Nom.	carō,	carnēs,	os,	ossa,	Iūppiter,
Gen.	carnis,	carnium,	ossis,	ossium,	Iovis,
Dat.	carnī,	carnibus,	ossī,	ossibus,	Iovī,
Acc.	carnem,	carnēs,	os,	ossa,	Iovem,
Voc.	carō,	carnēs,	os,	ossa,	Iūppiter,
Abl.	carne.	carnibus.	osse.	ossibus.	Iove.

Declension IV.

SINGULAR.

	fruit (m.).	*bow* (m.).	*house* (f.).	*horn* (n.)
Nom.	frūctus,	arcus,	domus,	cornū,
Gen.	frūctūs,	arcūs,	domūs,	cornūs,
Dat.	frūctuī (frūctū),	arcuī (arcū),	domuī,	cornū,
Acc.	frūctum,	arcum,	domum,	cornū,
Voc.	frūctus,	arcus,	domus,	cornū,
Abl.	frūctū.	arcū.	domō.	cornū.

PLURAL.

Nom.	frūctūs,	arcūs,	domūs,	cornua,
Gen.	frūctuum,	arcuum,	domōrum,	cornuum,
Dat.	frūctibus,	arcubus,	domibus,	cornibus,
Acc.	frūctūs,	arcūs,	domūs, domōs,	cornua,
Voc.	frūctūs,	arcūs,	domūs,	cornua,
Abl.	frūctibus.	arcubus.	domibus.	cornibus.

Declension V.

	SING.	PLUR.	SING.	PLUR.
Nom.	rēs (f.), *thing.*	rēs,	diēs (m.), *day.*	diēs,
Gen.	reī,	rērum,	diēī,	diērum,
Dat.	reī,	rēbus,	diēī,	diēbus,
Acc.	rem,	rēs,	diem,	diēs,
Voc.	rēs,	rēs,	diēs,	diēs,
Abl.	rē.	rēbus.	diē.	diēbus.

ADJECTIVES.

Declensions I. and II.

SINGULAR.

	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	bonus (*good*),	bona,	bonum,
Gen.	bonī,	bonae,	bonī,
Dat.	bonō,	bonae,	bonō,
Acc.	bonum,	bonam,	bonum,
Voc.	bone,	bona,	bonum,
Abl.	bonō,	bonā,	bonō.

PLURAL.

Nom.	bonī,	bonae,	bona,
Gen.	bonōrum,	bonārum,	bonōrum,
Dat.	bonīs,	bonīs,	bonīs,
Acc.	bonōs,	bonās,	bona,
Voc.	bonī,	bonae,	bona,
Abl.	bonīs,	bonīs,	bonīs.

SINGULAR.

Nom.	piger (*lazy*),	pigra,	pigrum,
Gen.	pigrī,	pigrae,	pigrī,
Dat.	pigrō,	pigrae,	pigrō,
Acc.	pigrum,	pigram,	pigrum,
Voc.	piger,	pigra,	pigrum,
Abl.	pigrō,	pigrā,	pigrō.

PLURAL.

Nom.	pigrī,	pigrae,	pigra,
Gen.	pigrōrum,	pigrārum,	pigrōrum,
Dat.	pigrīs,	pigrīs,	pigrīs,
Acc.	pigrōs,	pigrās,	pigra,
Voc.	pigrī,	pigrae,	pigra,
Abl.	pigrīs,	pigrīs,	pigrīs.

SINGULAR.

	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	miser (*wretched*),	misera,	miserum,
Gen.	miserī,	miserae,	miserī,
Dat.	miserō,	miserae,	miserō,
Acc.	miserum,	miseram,	miserum,
Voc.	miser,	misera,	miserum,
Abl.	miserō,	miserā,	miserō.

PLURAL.

Nom.	miserī,	miserae,	misera,
Gen.	miserōrum,	miserārum,	miserōrum,
Dat.	miserīs,	miserīs,	miserīs,
Acc.	miserōs,	miserās,	misera,
Voc.	miserī,	miserae,	misera,
Abl.	miserīs,	miserīs,	miserīs.

Declension III.

Consonant Stems.

SINGULAR.

	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	vetus (*old*),	vetus,	vetus,
Gen.	veteris,	veteris,	veteris,
Dat.	veterī,	veterī,	veterī,
Acc.	veterem,	veterem,	vetus,
Voc.	vetus,	vetus,	vetus,
Abl.	vetere (veterī),	vetere (veterī),	vetere (veterī).

PLURAL.

Nom.	veterēs,	veterēs,	vetera,
Gen.	veterum,	veterum,	veterum,
Dat.	veteribus,	veteribus,	veteribus,
Acc.	veterēs (veterīs),	veterēs (veterīs),	vetera,
Voc.	veterēs,	veterēs,	vetera,
Abl.	veteribus,	veteribus,	veteribus.

SINGULAR.

	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	facilis (*easy*),	facilis,	facile,
Gen.	facilis,	facilis,	facilis,
Dat.	facilī,	facilī,	facilī,
Acc.	facilem,	facilem,	facile,
Voc.	facilis,	facilis,	facile,
Abl.	facilī,	facilī,	facilī.

PLURAL.

Nom.	facilēs,	facilēs,	facilia,
Gen.	facilium,	facilium,	facilium,
Dat.	facilibus,	facilibus,	facilibus,
Acc.	facilēs (-īs),	facilēs (-īs),	facilia,
Voc.	facilēs,	facilēs,	facilia,
Abl.	facilibus,	facilibus,	facilibus.

SINGULAR.

Nom.	fēlix (*lucky*),	fēlix,	fēlix,
Gen.	fēlīcis,	fēlīcis,	fēlīcis,
Dat.	fēlīcī,	fēlīcī,	fēlīcī,
Acc.	fēlīcem,	fēlīcem,	fēlix,
Voc.	fēlix,	fēlix,	fēlix,
Abl.	fēlīcī (-e),	fēlīcī (-e),	fēlīcī (-e).

PLURAL.

Nom.	fēlīcēs,	fēlīcēs,	fēlīcia,
Gen.	fēlīcium,	fēlīcium,	fēlīcium,
Dat.	fēlīcibus,	fēlīcibus,	fēlīcibus,
Acc.	fēlīcēs,	fēlīcēs,	fēlīcia,
Voc.	fēlīcēs,	fēlīcēs,	fēlīcia,
Abl.	fēlīcibus,	fēlīcibus,	fēlīcibus.

SINGULAR.

Nom.	prūdēns (*prudent*),	prūdēns,	prūdēns,
Gen.	prūdentis,	prūdentis,	prūdentis,
Dat.	prūdentī,	prūdentī,	prūdentī,
Acc.	prūdentem,	prūdentem,	prūdēns,
Voc.	prūdēns,	prūdēns,	prūdēns,
Abl.	prūdentī,	prūdentī,	prūdentī.

PLURAL.

	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	prūdentēs,	prūdentēs,	prūdentia,
Gen.	prūdentium,	prūdentium,	prūdentium,
Dat.	prūdentibus,	prūdentibus,	prūdentibus,
Acc.	prūdentēs	prūdentēs	prūdentia,
Voc.	prūdentēs,	prūdentēs,	prūdentia,
Abl.	prūdentibus,	prūdentibus,	prūdentibus.

SINGULAR.

Nom.	ācer (*sharp*),	ācris,	ācre,
Gen.	ācris,	ācris,	ācris,
Dat.	ācrī,	ācrī,	ācrī,
Acc.	ācrem,	ācrem,	ācre,
Voc.	ācer,	ācris,	ācre,
Abl.	ācrī,	ācrī,	ācrī.

PLURAL.

Nom.	ācrēs,	ācrēs,	ācria,
Gen.	ācrium,	ācrium,	ācrium,
Dat.	ācribus,	ācribus,	ācribus,
Acc.	ācrēs (ācrīs),	ācrēs (ācrīs),	ācria,
Voc.	ācrēs,	ācrēs,	ācria,
Abl.	ācribus,	ācribus,	ācribus.

Irregular Adjectives.

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	alius,	alia,	aliud,	aliī,	aliae,	alia,
Gen.	alīus,	alīus,	alīus,	aliōrum,	aliārum,	aliōrum,
Dat.	aliī,	aliī,	aliī,	aliīs,	aliīs,	aliīs,
Acc.	alium,	aliam,	aliud,	aliōs,	aliās,	alia,
Abl.	aliō,	aliā,	aliō.	aliīs,	aliīs,	aliīs.

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
Nom.	ūnus,	ūna,	ūnum,	ūnī,	ūnae,	ūna,
Gen.	ūnīus,	ūnīus,	ūnīus,	ūnōrum,	ūnārum,	ūnōrum,
Dat.	ūnī,	ūnī,	ūnī,	ūnīs,	ūnīs,	ūnīs,
Acc.	ūnum,	ūnam,	ūnum,	ūnōs,	ūnās,	ūna,
Abl.	ūnō,	ūnā,	ūnō.	ūnīs,	ūnīs,	ūnīs.

	M.	F.	N.	M. and F.	N.	Sing.	Plur.
N.	duo (*two*),	duae,	duo,	trēs,	tria,	mīlle,	mīlia,
G.	duōrum,	duārum,	duōrum,	trium,	trium,	mīlle,	mīlium,
D.	duōbus,	duābus,	duōbus,	tribus,	tribus,	mīlle,	mīlibus,
Ac.	duōs (duo),	duās,	duo,	trēs,	tria,	mīlle,	mīlia,
V.	duo,	duae,	duo,	trēs,	tria,	mīlle,	mīlia,
Ab.	duōbus,	duābus,	duōbus.	tribus,	tribus.	mīlle,	mīlibus.

Comparatives.

	Singular.			Plural.		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N.	altior,	altior,	altius,	altiōrēs,	altiōrēs,	altiōra,
G.	altiōris,	altiōris,	altiōris,	altiōrum,	altiōrum,	altiōrum,
D.	altiōrī,	altiōrī,	altiōrī,	altiōribus,	altiōribus,	altiōribus,
Ac.	altiōrem,	altiōrem,	altius,	altiōrēs,	altiōrēs,	altiōra,
V.	altior,	altior,	altius,	altiōrēs,	altiōrēs,	altiōra,
Ab.	altiōre,	altiōre,	altiōre.	altiōribus,	altiōribus,	altiōribus.

Irregular Comparatives.

bonus (*good*),	melior,	optimus.
malus (*bad*),	pēior,	pessimus.
dīves (*rich*),	dītior,	dītissimus.
multus (*much*),	plūs,	plūrimus.
māgnus (*great*),	māior,	māximus.
parvus (*small*),	minor,	minimus.
vetus (*old*),	vetustior,	veterrimus.

Numerals.

Cardinals.	Ordinals.	Distributives.
1. ūnus,	prīmus, *first*.	singulī, *one by one*.
2. duo,	secundus,	bīnī.
3. trēs,	tertius,	ternī (trīnī).
4. quattuor,	quārtus,	quaternī.
5. quīnque,	quīntus,	quīnī.
6. sex,	sextus,	sēnī.
7. septem,	septimus,	septēnī.
8. octō,	octāvus,	octōnī.
9. novem,	nōnus,	novēnī.
10. decem,	decimus,	dēnī.
11. ūndecim,	ūndecimus,	ūndēnī.
12. duodecim,	duodecimus,	duodēnī.
13. tredecim,	tertius decimus,	ternī dēnī.

14.	quattuordecim,	quārtus decimus,	quaternī dēnī.
15.	quīndecim,	quīntus decimus,	quīnī dēnī.
16.	sēdecim,	sextus decimus,	sēnī dēnī.
17.	septendecim,	septimus decimus,	septēnī dēnī.
18.	duodēvīgintī,	duodēvīcēsimus,	duodēvīcēnī.
19.	ūndēvīgintī,	ūndēvīcēsimus,	ūndēvīcēnī.
20.	vīgintī,	vīcēsimus,	vīcēnī.
21.	vīgintī ūnus, / ūnus et vīgintī,	vīcēsimus prīmus,	vīcēnī singulī.
30.	trīgintā,	trīcēsimus,	trīcēnī.
40.	quadrāgintā,	quadrāgēsimus,	quadrāgēnī.
50.	quīnquāgintā,	quīnquāgēsimus,	quīnquāgēnī.
60.	sexāgintā,	sexāgēsimus,	sexāgēnī.
70.	septuāgintā,	septuāgēsimus,	septuāgēnī.
80.	octōgintā,	octōgēsimus,	octōgēnī.
90.	nōnāgintā,	nōnāgēsimus,	nōnāgēnī.
100.	centum,	centēsimus,	centēnī.
101.	centum(et)ūnus,	centēsimus prīmus,	centēnī(et)singulī.
200.	ducentī, -ae, -a,	ducentēsimus,	ducēnī.
300.	trecentī,	trecentēsimus,	trecēnī.
400.	quadringentī,	quadringentēsimus,	quadringēnī.
500.	quīngentī,	quīngentēsimus,	quīngēnī.
600.	sescentī,	sescentēsimus,	sescēnī.
700.	septingentī,	septingentēsimus,	septingēnī.
800.	octingentī,	octingentēsimus,	octingēnī.
900.	nōngentī,	nōngentēsimus,	nōngēnī.
1,000.	mīlle,	mīllēsimus,	mīllēnī.
5,000.	quīnque mīlia,	quīnquiēns mīllēsimus,	quīna mīlia.
10,000.	decem mīlia,	deciēns mīllēsimus,	dēna mīlia.
100,000.	centum mīlia,	centiēns mīllēsimus,	centēna mīlia.

PRONOUNS.

Personal Pronouns.

	1st pers., **ego**, *I.*		2d, **tu**, *you.*		3d (Reflex.), **suī**, *himself.*	
	Sing.	Plur.	Sing.	Plur.	Sing.	Plur.
Nom.	ego,	nōs,	tū,	vōs,	—	—
Gen.	meī,	nostrum (nostrī),	tuī,	vestrum (vestrī), (vostrum, vostrī),	suī,	suī,
Dat.	mihī,	nōbīs,	tibī,	vōbīs,	sibī,	sibī,
Acc.	mē,	nōs,	tē,	vōs,	sē (sēsē),	sē (sēsē),
Abl.	mē.	nōbīs.	tē.	vōbīs.	sē (sēsē).	sē (sēsē).

Demonstrative Pronouns.

hīc, *this.*

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	hīc,	haec,	hōc,	hī,	hae,	haec,
Gen.	hūius,	hūius,	hūius,	hōrum,	hārum,	hōrum,
Dat.	huīc,	huīc,	huīc,	hīs,	hīs,	hīs,
Acc.	hunc,	hanc,	hōc,	hōs,	hās,	haec,
Abl.	hōc,	hāc,	hōc.	hīs,	hīs,	hīs.

iste, *that.*

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
Nom.	iste,	ista,	istud,	istī,	istae,	ista,
Gen.	istīus,	istīus,	istīus,	istōrum,	istārum,	istōrum,
Dat.	istī,	istī,	istī,	istīs,	istīs,	istīs,
Acc.	istum,	istam,	istud,	istōs,	istās,	ista,
Abl.	istō,	istā,	istō.	istīs,	istīs,	istīs.

ille, *that.*

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
Nom.	ille,	illa,	illud,	illī,	illae,	illa,
Gen.	illīus,	illīus,	illīus,	illōrum,	illārum,	illōrum,
Dat.	illī,	illī,	illī,	illīs,	illīs,	illīs,
Acc.	illum,	illam,	illud,	illōs,	illās,	illa,
Abl.	illō,	illā,	illō.	illīs,	illīs,	illīs.

is, *that.*

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
Nom.	is,	ea,	id,	eī (iī),	eae,	ea,
Gen.	ēius,	ēius,	ēius,	eōrum,	eārum,	eōrum,
Dat.	eī,	eī,	eī,	eīs (iīs),	eīs (iīs),	eīs (iīs),
Acc.	eum,	eam,	id,	eōs,	eās,	ea,
Abl.	eō,	eā,	eō.	eīs (iīs),	eīs (iīs),	eīs (iīs).

ipse, *self*.

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	ipse,	ipsa,	ipsum,	ipsī,	ipsae,	ipsa,
Gen.	ipsīus,	ipsīus,	ipsīus,	ipsōrum,	ipsārum,	ipsōrum,
Dat.	ipsī,	ipsī,	ipsī,	ipsīs,	ipsīs,	ipsīs,
Acc.	ipsum,	ipsam,	ipsum,	ipsōs,	ipsās,	ipsa,
Abl.	ipsō,	ipsā,	ipsō.	ipsīs,	ipsīs,	ipsīs.

īdem, *the same*.

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
N.	īdem,	eadem,	idem,	eīdem (iīdem),	eaedem,	eadem,
G.	ēiusdem,	ēiusdem,	ēiusdem,	eōrundem,	eārundem,	eōrundem,
D.	eīdem,	eīdem,	eīdem,	eīsdem (iīsdem),	eīsdem (iīsdem),	eīsdem (iīsdem),
Ac.	eundem,	eandem,	idem,	eōsdem,	eāsdem,	eadem,
Ab.	eōdem,	eādem,	eōdem.	eīsdem (iīsdem),	eīsdem (iīsdem),	eīsdem (iīsdem).

Relative Pronoun.

quī, *who*.

	SINGULAR.			PLURAL.		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	quī,	quae,	quod,	quī,	quae,	quae,
Gen.	cūius,	cūius,	cūius,	quōrum,	quārum,	quōrum,
Dat.	cuī,	cuī,	cuī,	quibus,	quibus,	quibus,
Acc.	quem,	quam,	quod,	quōs,	quās,	quae,
Abl.	quō,	quā,	quō.	quibus,	quibus,	quibus.

Interrogative Pronoun.

quis, *who?*

	SINGULAR.		PLURAL.		
	M. and F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	quis,	quid,	quī,	quae,	quae,
Gen.	cūius,	cūius,	quōrum,	quārum,	quōrum,
Dat.	cuī,	cuī,	quibus,	quibus,	quibus,
Acc.	quem,	quid,	quōs,	quās,	quae,
Abl.	quō,	quō.	quibus,	quibus,	quibus.

Interrogative Adjective.

quī, *what?*

	Singular.			Plural.		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	quī,	quae,	quod,	quī,	quae,	quae,
Gen.	cūius,	cūius,	cūius,	quōrum,	quārum,	quōrum,
Dat.	cuī,	cuī,	cuī,	quibus,	quibus,	quibus,
Acc.	quem,	quam,	quod,	quōs,	quās,	quae,
Abl.	quō,	quā,	quō.	quibus,	quibus,	quibus.

Indefinite Pronouns.

aliquis, *some.*

	Singular.			Plural.		
	M.	F.	N.	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	aliquis,	aliqua,	aliquid,	aliquī,	aliquae,	aliqua,
Gen.	alicūius,	alicūius,	alicūius,	aliquōrum,	aliquārum,	aliquōrum,
Dat.	alicuī,	alicuī,	alicuī,	aliquibus,	aliquibus,	aliquibus,
Acc.	aliquem,	aliquam,	aliquid,	aliquōs,	aliquās,	aliqua,
Abl.	aliquō,	aliquā,	aliquō.	aliquibus,	aliquibus,	aliquibus.

Aliquī is used instead of **aliquis**, and **aliquod** instead of **aliquid**, as adjective forms.

quīdam, *a, a certain.*

	Singular.		
	M.	F.	N.
Nom.	quīdam,	quaedam,	quiddam,
Gen.	cūiusdam,	cūiusdam,	cūiusdam,
Dat.	cuīdam,	cuīdam,	cuīdam,
Acc.	quendam,	quandam,	quiddam,
Abl.	quōdam,	quādam,	quōdam.
	Plural.		
Nom.	quīdam,	quaedam,	quaedam,
Gen.	quōrundam,	quārundam,	quōrundam,
Dat.	quibusdam,	quibusdam,	quibusdam,
Acc.	quōsdam,	quāsdam,	quaedam,
Abl.	quibusdam,	quibusdam,	quibusdam.

Quoddam is used instead of **quiddam** as an adjective.

VERBS.

First Conjugation. Stem in A.

PRINCIPAL PARTS:

	PRES. IND.	PRES. INF.	PERF. IND.	SUPINE.	
ACTIVE—	amō,	amāre,	amāvī,	amātum	(*love*).
PASSIVE—	amor,	amārī,	amātus sum.		

ACTIVE.		PASSIVE.	
	INDICATIVE.		
PRESENT.		PRESENT.	
SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
amō,	amāmus,	amor,	amāmur,
amās,	amātis,	amāris (-re),	amāminī,
amat.	amant.	amātur.	amantur.
IMPERFECT.		IMPERFECT.	
amābam,	amābāmus,	amābar,	amābāmur,
amābās,	amābātis,	amābāris (-re),	amābāminī,
amābat.	amābant.	amābātur.	amābantur.
FUTURE.		FUTURE.	
amābō,	amābimus,	amābor,	amābimur,
amābis,	amābitis,	amāberis (-re),	amābiminī,
amābit.	amābunt.	amābitur.	amābuntur.
PERFECT.		PERFECT.	
amāvī,	amāvimus,	amātus sum,	amātī sumus,
amāvistī,	amāvistis,	amātus es,	amātī estis,
amāvit.	amāvērunt (amāvēre).	amātus est.	amātī sunt.
PLUPERFECT.		PLUPERFECT.	
amāveram,	amāverāmus,	amātus eram,	amātī erāmus,
amāverās,	amāverātis,	amātus erās,	amātī erātis,
amāverat.	amāverant.	amātus erat.	amātī erant.
FUTURE PERFECT.		FUTURE PERFECT.	
amāverō,	amāverimus,	amātus erō,	amātī erimus,
amāveris,	amāveritis,	amātus eris,	amātī eritis,
amāverit.	amāverint.	amātus erit.	amātī erunt.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present.		Present.	
SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
amem,	amēmus,	amer,	amēmur,
amēs,	amētis,	amēris (-re),	amēminī,
amet.	ament.	amētur.	amentur.
Imperfect.		**Imperfect.**	
amārem,	amārēmus,	amārer,	amārēmur,
amārēs,	amārētis,	amārēris (-re),	amārēminī,
amāret.	amārent.	amārētur.	amārentur.
Perfect.		**Perfect.**	
amāverim,	amāverimus,	amātus sim,	amātī sīmus,
amāveris,	amāveritis,	amātus sīs,	amātī sītis,
amāverit.	amāverint.	amātus sit.	amātī sint.
Pluperfect.		**Pluperfect.**	
amāvissem,	amāvissēmus,	amātus essem,	amātī essēmus,
amāvissēs,	amāvissētis,	amātus essēs,	amātī essētis,
amāvisset.	amāvissent.	amātus esset.	amātī essent.

IMPERATIVE.

Present.		Present.	
amā.	amāte.	amāre.	amāminī.
Future.		**Future.**	
amātō,	amātōte,	amātor,	
amātō.	amantō.	amātor.	amantor.

INFINITIVES.

Pres. amāre.	Pres. amārī.
Perf. amāvisse.	Perf. amātum esse.
Fut. amātūrum [esse].	Fut. amātum īrī.

PARTICIPLES.

Pres. amāns.	Perf. amātus.
Fut. amātūrus.	Gerundive. amandus

GERUND (verbal noun).	SUPINE.
Gen. amandī,	
Dat. amandō,	
Acc. amandum,	Acc. amātum,
Abl. amandō.	Abl. amātū.

Second Conjugation. Stem in ē.

PRINCIPAL PARTS : ACTIVE — **moneō, monēre, monuī, monitum** (*warn*).
PASSIVE—**moneor, monērī, monitus sum.**

ACTIVE.		PASSIVE.	
	INDICATIVE.		
PRESENT.		PRESENT.	
SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
moneō,	monēmus,	moneor,	monēmur,
monēs,	monētis,	monēris (-re),	monēminī,
monet.	monent.	monētur.	monentur.
IMPERFECT.		IMPERFECT.	
monēbam, &c.		monēbar, &c.	
FUTURE.		FUTURE.	
monēbō, &c.		monēbor, &c.	
PERFECT.		PERFECT.	
monuī,	monuimus,	monitus sum, &c.	
monuistī,	monuistis,		
monuit.	monuērunt (monuēre).		
PLUPERFECT.		PLUPERFECT.	
monueram, &c.		monitus eram, &c.	
FUTURE PERFECT.		FUTURE PERFECT.	
monuerō, &c.		monitus erō, &c.	
	SUBJUNCTIVE.		
PRESENT.		PRESENT.	
moneam,	moneāmus,	monear,	moneāmur,
moneās,	moneātis,	moneāris (-re),	moneāminī,
moneat.	moneant.	moneātur.	moneantur.
IMPERFECT.		IMPERFECT.	
monērem, &c.		monērer, &c.	
PERFECT.		PERFECT.	
monuerim, &c.		monitus sim, &c.	
PLUPERFECT.		PLUPERFECT.	
monuissem, &c.		monitus essem, &c.	

IMPERATIVE.

PRES.	monē.	monēte.	PRES.	monēre.	monēminī.
FUT.	monētō, monētō.	monētōte, monentō.	FUT.	monētor, monētor.	monentor.

INFINITIVES.

PRES.	monēre.	PRES.	monērī.
PERF.	monuisse.	PERF.	monitum esse.
FUT.	monitūrum [esse].	FUT.	monitum īrī.

PARTICIPLES.

PRES.	monēns.	PERF.	monitus.
FUT.	monitūrus.	GERUNDIVE.	monendus.

	GERUND.		SUPINE.
GEN.	monendī,		
DAT.	monendō,		
ACC.	monendum,	ACC.	monitum.
ABL.	monendō.	ABL.	monitū.

Third Conjugation. Stem in ĕ.

PRINCIPAL PARTS : ACTIVE — emō, emere, ēmī, ēmptum (*buy*).
PASSIVE—emor, emī, ēmptus sum.

ACTIVE.		PASSIVE.	
INDICATIVE.			
PRESENT.		PRESENT.	
SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
emō,	emimus,	emor,	emimur,
emis,	emitis,	emeris (-re),	eminī,
emit.	emunt.	emitur.	emuntur.
IMPERFECT.		IMPERFECT.	
emēbam, &c.		emēbar, &c.	
FUTURE.		FUTURE.	
emam,	emēmus,	emar,	emēmur,
emēs,	emētis,	emēris (-re),	emēminī,
emet.	ement.	emētur.	ementur.
PERFECT.		PERFECT.	
ēmī,	ēmimus,	ēmptus sum, &c.	
ēmistī,	ēmistis,		
ēmit.	ēmērunt (ēmēre).		

PLUPERFECT.	PLUPERFECT.
ēmeram, &c.	ēmptus eram, &c.
FUTURE PERFECT.	FUTURE PERFECT.
ēmerō, &c.	ēmptus erō, &c.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.	PRESENT.
emam, emāmus,	emar, emāmur,
emās, emātis,	emāris (-re), emāminī,
emat. emant.	emātur. emantur.
IMPERFECT.	IMPERFECT.
emerem, &c.	emerer, &c.
PERFECT.	PERFECT.
ēmerim, &c.	ēmptus sim, &c.
PLUPERFECT.	PLUPERFECT.
ēmissem, &c.	ēmptus essem, &c.

IMPERATIVE.

PRES. eme. emite.	PRES. emere. emiminī.
FUT. emitō, emitōte,	FUT. emitor,
emitō. emuntō.	emitor. emuntor.

INFINITIVES.

PRES. emere.	PRES. emī.
PERF. ēmisse.	PERF. ēmptum esse.
FUT. ēmptūrum [esse].	FUT. ēmptum īrī.

PARTICIPLES.

PRES. emēns.	PERF. ēmptus.
FUT. ēmptūrus.	GERUNDIVE. emendus.

GERUND.		SUPINE.
GEN. emendī,		
DAT. emendō,		
ACC. emendum,	ACC.	ēmptum,
ABL. emendō.	ABL.	ēmptū.

Third Conjugation.—*Continued.*

PRINCIPAL PARTS : ACTIVE — **capiō, capere, cēpī, captum** (*take*).
PASSIVE—**capior, capī, captus sum.**

ACTIVE.		PASSIVE.	
INDICATIVE.			
PRESENT.		PRESENT.	
SINGULAR.	PLURAL.	SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
capiō,	capimus,	capior,	capimur,
capis,	capitis,	caperis (-re),	capiminī,
capit.	capiunt.	capitur.	capiuntur.
IMPERFECT.		IMPERFECT.	
capiēbam, &c.		capiēbar, &c.	
FUTURE.		FUTURE.	
capiam,	capiēmus,	capiar,	capiēmur,
capiēs,	capiētis,	capiēris (-re),	capiēminī,
capiet.	capient.	capiētur.	capientur.
PERFECT.		PERFECT.	
cēpī, &c.		captus sum, &c.	
PLUPERFECT.		PLUPERFECT.	
cēperam, &c.		captus eram, &c.	
FUTURE PERFECT.		FUTURE PERFECT.	
cēperō, &c.		captus erō, &c.	
SUBJUNCTIVE.			
PRESENT.		PRESENT.	
capiam,	capiāmus,	capiar,	capiāmur,
capiās,	capiātis,	capiāris (-re),	capiāminī,
capiat.	capiant.	capiātur.	capiantur.
IMPERFECT.		IMPERFECT.	
caperem, &c.		caperer, &c.	
PERFECT.		PERFECT.	
cēperim, etc.		captus sim, etc.	
PLUPERFECT.		PLUPERFECT.	
cēpissem, &c.		captus essem, &c.	

IMPERATIVE.

PRES.	cape.	capite.	PRES.	capere.	capimini.
FUT.	capitō, capitō.	capitōte, capiuntō.	FUT.	capitor, capitor.	capiuntor.

INFINITIVES.

PRES.	capere.	PRES.	capī.
PERF.	cēpisse.	PERF.	captum esse.
FUT.	captūrum [esse].	FUT.	captum īrī.

PARTICIPLES.

PRES.	capiēns.	PERF.	captus.
FUT.	captūrus.	GERUNDIVE.	capiendus.

	GERUND.	SUPINE.
GEN.	capiendī,	
DAT.	capiendō,	
ACC.	capiendum,	ACC. captum,
ABL.	capiendō.	ABL. captū.

Fourth Conjugation.—Stem in ī.

PRINCIPAL PARTS : ACTIVE — audiō, audīre, audīvī, audītum (*hear*).
PASSIVE—audior, audīrī, audītus sum.

ACTIVE.

INDICATIVE.

PRESENT.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
audiō,	audīmus,
audīs,	audītis,
audit.	audiunt.

IMPERFECT.

audiēbam, &c.

FUTURE.

audiam,	audiēmus,
audiēs,	audiētis,
audiet.	audient.

PASSIVE.

INDICATIVE.

PRESENT.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
audior,	audīmur,
audīris (-re),	audīminī,
audītur.	audiuntur.

IMPERFECT.

audiēbar, &c.

FUTURE.

audiar,	audiēmur,
audiēris (-re),	audiēminī,
audiētur.	audientur.

PERFECT.	PERFECT.
audīvī, &c.	audītus sum, &c.
PLUPERFECT.	PLUPERFECT.
audīveram, &c.	audītus eram, &c.
FUTURE PERFECT.	FUTURE PERFECT.
audīverō, &c.	audītus erō, &c.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.		PRESENT.	
audiam,	audiāmus,	audiar,	audiāmur,
audiās,	audiātis,	audiāris (-re),	audiāminī,
audiat.	audiant.	audiātur.	audiantur.

IMPERFECT.	IMPERFECT.
audīrem, &c.	audīrer, &c.
PERFECT.	PERFECT.
audīverim, &c.	audītus sim, &c.
PLUPERFECT.	PLUPERFECT.
audīvissem, &c.	audītus essem, &c.

IMPERATIVE.

PRES.	audī.	audīte.	PRES.	audīre.	audīminī.
FUT.	audītō,	audītōte,	FUT.	audītor,	
	audītō.	audiuntō.		audītor.	audiuntor.

INFINITIVES.

PRES.	audīre.	PRES.	audīrī.
PERF.	audīvisse.	PERF.	audītum esse.
FUT.	audītūrum [esse].	FUT.	audītum īrī.

PARTICIPLES.

PRES.	audiēns.	PERF.	audītus.
FUT.	audītūrus.	GERUNDIVE.	audiendus.

GERUND.		SUPINE.	
GEN.	audiendī,		
DAT.	audiendō,		
ACC.	audiendum,	ACC.	audītum,
ABL.	audiendō.	ABL.	audītū.

Irregular Verbs: SUM, POSSUM, PRŌSUM, FERŌ, EŌ, ADEOR, VOLŌ, NŌLŌ, MĀLŌ, FĪŌ.

PRINCIPAL PARTS: **sum, esse, fuī** (*be*).

INDICATIVE.

PRESENT.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
sum,	sumus,
es,	estis,
est.	sunt.

IMPERFECT.

eram,	erāmus,
erās,	erātis,
erat.	erant.

FUTURE.

erō,	erimus,
eris,	eritis,
erit.	erunt.

PERFECT.

fuī,	fuimus,
fuistī,	fuistis,
fuit.	fuērunt (-re).

PLUPERFECT.

fueram,	fuerāmus,
fuerās,	fuerātis,
fuerat.	fuerant.

FUTURE PERFECT.

fuerō,	fuerimus,
fueris,	fueritis,
fuerit.	fuerint.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.

SINGULAR.	PLURAL.
sim,	sīmus,
sīs,	sītis,
sit.	sint.

IMPERFECT.

essem,	essēmus,
essēs,	essētis,
esset.	essent.

PERFECT.

fuerim,	fuerimus,
fueris,	fueritis,
fuerit.	fuerint.

PLUPERFECT.

fuissem,	fuissēmus,
fuissēs,	fuissētis,
fuisset.	fuissent.

IMPERATIVE.

PRES.	es.	este.
FUT.	estō,	estōte,
	estō.	suntō.

INFINITIVES.

PRES. esse.
PERF. fuisse.
FUT. futūrum esse.

PARTICIPLE.

FUT. futūrus.

PRINCIPAL PARTS : **possum, posse, potuī** (*be able*).

INDICATIVE.		SUBJUNCTIVE.	
PRESENT.		PRESENT.	
possum,	possumus,	possim,	possīmus,
potes,	potestis,	possīs,	possītis,
potest.	possunt.	possit.	possint.
IMPERFECT.		IMPERFECT.	
poteram,	poterāmus,	possem,	possēmus,
poterās,	poterātis,	possēs,	possētis,
poterat.	poterant.	posset.	possent.
FUTURE.			
poterō,	poterimus,		
poteris,	poteritis,		
poterit.	poterunt.		
PERFECT.		PERFECT.	
potuī, &c.		potuerim, &c.	
PLUPERFECT.		PLUPERFECT.	
potueram, &c.		potuissem, &c.	
FUTURE PERFECT.			
potuerō, &c.			

INFINITIVES.	PARTICIPLE.
PRES. posse.	PRES. potēns.
PERF. potuisse.	

PRINCIPAL PARTS : **prōsum, prōdesse, prōfuī** (*help*).

INDICATIVE.		SUBJUNCTIVE.	
PRESENT.		PRESENT.	
prōsum,	prōsumus,	prōsim,	prōsīmus,
prōdes,	prōdestis,	prōsīs,	prōsītis,
prōdest.	prōsunt.	prōsit.	prōsint.
IMPERFECT.		IMPERFECT.	
prōderam, &c.		prōdessem, &c.	
FUTURE.			
prōderō, &c.			

PERFECT.	PERFECT.
prōfuī, &c.	prōfuerim, &c.
PLUPERFECT.	PLUPERFECT.
prōfueram, &c.	prōfuissem, &c.
FUTURE PERFECT.	
prōfuerō, &c.	

IMPERATIVE.		INFINITIVES.
PRES. prōdes.	prōdeste.	PRES. prōdesse.
FUT. prōdestō,	prōdestōte,	PERF. prōfuisse.
prōdestō.	prōsuntō.	FUT. prōfutūrum esse.

PARTICIPLE.

FUT. prōfutūrus.

PRINCIPAL PARTS : ACTIVE — **ferō, ferre, tulī, lātum** (*bear*).
PASSIVE—**feror, ferrī, lātus sum.**

ACTIVE.		PASSIVE.	
INDICATIVE.			
PRESENT.		PRESENT.	
ferō,	ferimus,	feror,	ferimur,
fers,	fertis,	ferris,	feriminī,
fert.	ferunt.	fertur.	feruntur.
IMPERFECT.		IMPERFECT.	
ferēbam, &c.		ferēbar, &c.	
FUTURE.		FUTURE.	
feram, &c.		ferar, &c.	
PERFECT.		PERFECT.	
tulī, &c.		lātus sum, &c.	
PLUPERFECT.		PLUPERFECT.	
tuleram, &c.		lātus eram, &c.	
FUTURE PERFECT.		FUTURE PERFECT	
tulerō, &c.		lātus erō, &c.	

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.		PRESENT.	
feram, &c.		ferar, &c.	
IMPERFECT.		IMPERFECT.	
ferrem,	ferrēmus,	ferrer,	ferrēmur,
ferrēs,	errētis,	ferrēris (-re),	ferrēminī,
ferret.	ferrent.	ferrētur.	ferrentur.
PERFECT.		PERFECT.	
tulerim, &c.		lātus sim, &c.	
PLUPERFECT.		PLUPERFECT.	
tulissem, &c.		lātus essem, &c.	

IMPERATIVE.

PRES.	fer.	ferte.	PRES.	ferre.	feriminī.
FUT.	fertō,	fertōte,	FUT.	fertor,	
	fertō.	feruntō.		fertor.	feruntor.

INFINITIVES.

PRES.	ferre.	PRES.	ferrī.
PERF.	tulisse.	PERF.	lātum esse.
FUT.	lātūrum esse.	FUT.	lātum īrī.

PARTICIPLES.

PRES.	ferēns.	PERF.	lātus.
FUT.	lātūrus.	GERUNDIVE.	ferendus.

GERUND.		SUPINE.	
GEN.	ferendī,		
DAT.	ferendō,		
ACC.	ferendum,	ACC.	lātum,
ABL.	ferendō.	ABL.	lātū.

PRINCIPAL PARTS : **eō, īre, īvī (iī), itum** (*go*).

INDICATIVE. PRESENT.		SUBJUNCTIVE. PRESENT.
eō,	īmus,	eam, etc.
īs,	ītis,	
it.	eunt.	

IMPERFECT.	IMPERFECT.
ībam, &c.	īrem, &c.
FUTURE.	
ībō, &c.	
PERFECT.	PERFECT.
īvī (iī), &c.	īverim (ierim), &c.
PLUPERFECT.	PLUPERFECT.
īveram (ieram), &c.	īvissem (īssem), &c.
FUTURE PERFECT.	
īverō (ierō), &c.	

IMPERATIVE.		INFINITIVES.
PRES. ī.	īte.	PRES. īre.
FUT. ītō,	ītōte,	PERF. īvisse.
ītō.	euntō.	FUT. itūrum esse.

GERUND.	SUPINE.	PARTICIPLES.
GEN. eundī,		PRES. iēns, GEN. euntis.
DAT. eundō,		FUT. itūrus.
ACC. eundum,	ACC. itum,	
ABL. eundō.	ABL. itū.	

The passive of **eō** occurs only in composition, except in the third person. The forms in composition are as follows :

PASSIVE OF **adeō**.

PRINCIPAL PARTS : **adeor, adīrī, aditus sum** (*be approached*).

INDICATIVE.		SUBJUNCTIVE.
PRESENT.		PRESENT.
adeor,	adīmur,	adear, &c.
adīris,	adīminī,	
adītur.	adeuntur.	
IMPERFECT.		IMPERFECT.
adībar, &c.		adīrer, &c.

FUTURE.
adībor, &c.

PERFECT.
aditus sum, &c.

PERFECT.
aditus sim, &c.

PLUPERFECT.
aditus eram, &c.

PLUPERFECT.
aditus essem, &c.

FUTURE PERFECT.
aditus erō, &c.

INFINITIVES.

PRES. adīrī.
PERF. aditum esse.

PARTICIPLES.

PERF. aditus.
FUT. adeundus.

PRINCIPAL PARTS: **volō, velle, voluī** (*wish*).
nōlō, nōlle, nōluī (*be unwilling*).
mālō, mālle, māluī (*prefer*).

INDICATIVE.

PRESENT.	PRESENT.	PRESENT.
volō, volumus,	nōlō, nōlumus,	mālō, mālumus,
vīs, vultis,	nōn vīs, nōn vultis,	māvīs, māvultis,
vult. volunt.	nōn vult. nōlunt.	māvult. mālunt.
IMPERFECT.	IMPERFECT.	IMPERFECT.
volēbam, &c.	nōlēbam, &c.	mālēbam, &c.
FUTURE.	FUTURE.	FUTURE.
volam, &c.	nōlam, &c.	mālam, &c.
PERFECT.	PERFECT.	PERFECT.
voluī, &c.	nōluī, &c.	māluī, &c.
PLUPERFECT.	PLUPERFECT.	PLUPERFECT.
volueram, &c.	nōlueram, &c.	mālueram, &c.
FUTURE PERFECT.	FUTURE PERFECT.	FUTURE PERFECT.
voluerō, &c.	nōluerō, &c.	māluerō, &c.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRESENT.	PRESENT.	PRESENT.
velim, velīmus,	nōlim, nōlīmus,	mālim, mālīmus,
velīs, velītis,	nōlīs, nōlītis,	mālīs, mālītis,
velit. velint.	nōlit. nōlint.	mālit. mālint.
IMPERFECT.	IMPERFECT.	IMPERFECT.
vellem, vellēmus,	nōllem, nōllēmus,	māllem, māllēmus,
vellēs, vellētis,	nōllēs, nōllētis.	māllēs, māllētis,
vellet. vellent.	nōllet. nōllent.	māllet. māllent.
PERFECT.	PERFECT.	PERFECT.
voluerim, &c.	nōluerim, &c.	māluerim, &c.
PLUPERFECT.	PLUPERFECT.	PLUPERFECT.
voluissem, &c.	nōluissem, &c.	māluissem, &c.

IMPERATIVE.

PRES.	nōlī, nōlīte.
FUT.	nōlītō, nōlītōte, nōlītō. nōluntō.

INFINITIVES.

PRES. velle.	PRES. nōlle.	PRES. mālle.
PERF. voluisse.	PERF. nōluisse.	PERF. māluisse.

PARTICIPLES.

PRES. volēns.	PRES. nōlēns.	

PRINCIPAL PARTS : **fīō, fierī, factus sum** (*be made, become*).

INDICATIVE.		SUBJUNCTIVE.	
PRESENT.		PRESENT.	
fīō,	(fīmus,)	fīam,	fīāmus,
fīs,	(fītis,)	fīās,	fīātis,
fit.	fīunt.	fīat.	fīant.
IMPERFECT.		IMPERFECT.	
fīēbam, &c.		fierem,	fierēmus,
		fierēs,	fierētis,
		fieret.	fierent.

FUTURE.

fīam,	fīēmus,
fīēs,	fīētis,
fīet,	fient.

PERFECT.

factus sum, &c.

PERFECT.

factus sim, &c.

PLUPERFECT.

factus eram, &c.

PLUPERFECT.

factus essem, &c.

FUTURE.

factus erō, &c.

IMPERATIVE.

PRES.	fī.	fīte.
FUT.	fītō,	fītōte,
	fītō.	fīuntō.

INFINITIVES.

PRES.	fierī.
PERF.	factum esse.
FUT.	factum īrī.

PARTICIPLES.

PERF. factus.
GERUNDIVE. faciendus.

Deponent Verbs.

PRINCIPAL PARTS :	1st Conj.	**hortor, hortārī, hortātus sum** (*urge*).
	2d Conj.	**vereor, verērī, veritus sum** (*fear*).
	3d Conj.	**loquor, loquī, locūtus sum** (*speak*).
	4th Conj.	**mentior, mentīrī, mentītus sum** (*lie*).

INDICATIVE.

PRES.	hortor,	vereor,	loquor,	mentior,
	hortāris (-re),	verēris (-re),	loqueris (-re),	mentīris (-re),
	hortātur.	verētur.	loquitur.	mentītur.
	hortāmur,	verēmur,	loquimur,	mentīmur,
	hortāminī,	verēminī,	loquiminī,	mentīminī,
	hortantur.	verentur.	loquuntur.	mentiuntur.
IMPF.	hortābar.	verēbar.	loquēbar.	mentiēbar.
FUT.	hortābor.	verēbor.	loquar.	mentiar.
PERF.	hortātus sum.	veritus sum.	locūtus sum.	mentītus sum.
PLUPF.	hortātus eram.	veritus eram.	locūtus eram.	mentītus eram.
FUT. PF.	hortātus erō.	veritus erō.	locūtus erō.	mentītus erō.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

PRES.	horter.	verear.	loquar.	mentiar.
IMPF.	hortārer.	verērer.	loquerer.	mentīrer.
PERF.	hortātus sim.	veritus sim.	locūtus sim.	mentītus sim.
PLUPF.	hortātus essem.	veritus essem.	locūtus essem.	mentītus essem.

IMPERATIVE.

PRES.	hortāre.	verēre.	loquere.	mentīre.
FUT.	hortātor.	verētor.	loquitor.	mentītor.

INFINITIVES.

PRES.	hortārī.	verērī.	loquī.	mentīrī.
PERF.	hortātum esse.	veritum esse.	locūtum esse.	mentītum esse.
FUT.	hortātūrum [esse].	veritūrum [esse].	locūtūrum [esse].	mentītūrum [esse].

PARTICIPLES.

PRES.	hortāns.	verēns.	loquēns.	mentiēns.
PERF.	hortātus.	veritus.	locūtus.	mentītus.
FUT.	hortātūrus.	veritūrus.	locūtūrus.	mentītūrus
GERUNDIVE.	hortandus.	verendus.	loquendus.	mentiendus

GERUND.

GEN.	hortandī.	verendī.	loquendī.	mentiendī.

SUPINE.

ACC.	hortātum.	veritum.	locūtum.	mentītum.

VOCABULARY.

LATIN–ENGLISH.

A

ā or **ab**, prep. with abl. [cf. Eng. **of**, **off**] originally implying separation, *from away, from, out of ;* agency, *by ;* time, *since, after ;* direction or place, *from, at, on, in ;* **ā dextrō (sinistrō) cornū**, *on the right (left) wing ;* **ā novissimō agmine**, *in the rear.*

abdō, **-ere**, **-didī**, **-ditum**, v. tr. *hide.*

abdūcō [**ab**, *off* + **dūcō**, *lead*], **-dūcere**, **-dūxī**, **-ductum**, v. tr. *lead away, lead off*, ABDUCT.

aberrō [**ab**, *off* + **errō**, *wander*], **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātum**, v. intr. *wander off, go astray.*

abiciō [**ab**, *off* + **iaciō**, *throw*], **-icere**, **-iēcī**, **-iectum**, v. tr. *throw off, throw away, cast off.*

ablātus, perf. part. pass. of **auferō**.

abscīdō [**abs**, *off* + **caedō**, *cut*], **-ere**, **-cīdī**, **-cīsum**, v. tr. *cut off.*

absēns, **-tis**, adj. [part. of **absum**] *absent.*

absolvō [**ab**, *off, from* + **solvō**, *loose*], **-solvere**, **-solvī**, **-solūtum**, v. tr. *free from, clear, acquit*, ABSOLVE.

abstineō [**abs**, *off, from* + **teneō**, *hold*], **-tinēre**, **-tinuī**, **-tentum**, v. tr. *keep back, hold off ; refrain from*, ABSTAIN.

absum [**ab**, *off, from* + **sum**, *am*], **-esse**, **āfuī**, **āfutūrus**, v. intr. with abl. *be away, be distant*, BE ABSENT : **proximē absum**, *am nearest.*

abūtor [**ab**, *off, from* + **ūtor**, *use*], **-ūtī**, **-ūsus sum**, dep. v. with abl. *misuse, abuse.*

ac, conj. See **atque**.

Acca, **-ae**, f. *Acca Larentia*, wife of Faustulus and foster-mother of Romulus and Remus.

accēdō [**ad**, *to* + **cēdō**, *go away*], **-cēdere**, **-cessī**, **-cessūrus**, v. intr. *go to, approach.*

accidō [**ad**, *to* + **cadō**, *fall*], **-cidere**, **-cidī**, ——, v. intr. *fall upon, come to pass, happen.*

accingō [**ad**, *to* + **cingō**, *gird*], **-ere**, **-nxī**, **-nctum**, v. tr. *gird on, bind on.*

accipiō [**ad**, *to* + **capiō**, *take*], **-ere**, **-cēpī**, **-ceptum**, *receive, accept.*

accommodō [**ad**, *to* + **commodō**, *fit*], **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātum**, v. tr. *fit to, adapt, apply.*

accurrō [**ad**, *to* + **currō**, *run*], **-currere**, **-cucurrī** or **-currī**, **-cursum**, v. intr. *run to, hasten up to.*

accūsō [**ad**, *to* + **causa**, *cause*, originally = **ad causam prōvocāre**], **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātum**, v. tr. *call to account, accuse.*

ācer, **ācris**, **ācre**, adj. [√ AC-, *sharp*] *sharp, keen, eager, active ;* comp. **ācrior**, superl. **ācerrimus.**

aciēs, **ēī**, f. [√ AC-, *sharp*] *edge ; line of battle.*

ācriter, adv. [**ācer**, *sharp*] *sharply, keenly, eagerly, fiercely ;* comp. **ācrius**, superl. **ācerrimē.**

acūtus, **-a**, **-um**, adj. [part. of **acuō**, *sharpen*] *sharpened, sharp, keen*, ACUTE.

ad, prep. with accus. usually denoting motion, *to, towards ;* place, *near, at ;* purpose with gerund and gerundive, *for, for the purpose of, in order to.*

addō [**ad**, *to* + **dō**, *give*], **-dere**, **-didī**, **-ditum**, v. tr. *add.*

addūcō [**ad**, *to* + **dūcō**, *lead*], **-dūcere**, **-dūxī**, **-ductum**, v. tr. *lead on, induce, influence.*

adductus [part. of **addūcō**, *lead on*], *led on, induced, influenced.*

adeō, adv. [**ad**, *to* + **eō**, *that point, thither*] *to this, so far, so, so much, so very, to such a degree.*

adeō [**ad**, *to* + **eō**, *go*], **-īre, -īvī** or **-iī, -itum**, v. intr. *go to, approach, enter upon.*

adferō [**ad**, *to* + **ferō**, *bring*], **-ferre, attulī, adlātum** or **allātum**, v. tr. *bear to, bring to, report.*

adficiō [**ad**, *to* + **faciō**, *make*], **-ere, -fēcī, -fectum**, v. tr. *affect, treat, afflict.*

adfīnis, -is, m. and f. [**ad**, *near* + **fīnis**, end] *relation by marriage.*

adfīrmō [**ad**, *to* + **fīrmō**, strengthen], **-āre, -āvī, -ātum**, v. tr. *strengthen,* AFFIRM.

adhibeō [**ad**, *to* + **habeō**, *hold*], **-hibēre, -hibuī, -hibitum**, v. tr. *hold to, bring to, apply, employ, consult.*

adhortātiō, -ōnis, f. [**adhortor**, *exhort*] *exhortation, encouragement.*

adligō [**ad**, *to* + **ligō**, *bind*], **-āre, -āvī, -ātum**, v. tr. *bind to.*

administrō [**ad**, *to* + **ministrō**, *tend*], **-āre, -āvī, -ātum**, v. tr. *direct, rule, manage, control,* ADMINISTER.

admīrātiō, -ōnis, f. [**admīror**, *admire*] *admiration.*

admīror [**ad**, *at* + **mīror**, *wonder*], **-ārī, -ātus sum**, dep. v. tr. *regard with wonder, wonder at,* ADMIRE.

admoveō [**ad**, *up to* + **moveō**, *move*], **-movēre, -mōvī, -mōtum**, v. tr. *move up to, move to, bring near.*

adolēscō [**ad**, *up* + **olēscō**, *grow*], **-olēscere, -olēvī, -olētum**, v. intr. *grow up, come to maturity.*

adripiō [**ad**, *at* + **rapiō**, *snatch*], **-ere, -ripuī, -reptum**, v. tr. *snatch at, seize, grasp.*

adsīdō [**ad**, *upon* + **sīdō**, *sit*], **-ere, -sēdī**, ——, v. intr. *sit upon, sit down.*

adsurgō [**ad**, *up* + **surgō**, *rise*], **-ere, -surrēxī, -surrēctum**, v. intr. *rise up, rise.*

adsum [**ad**, *at, near* + **sum**, *am*], **-esse, adfuī** or **affuī, adfutūrus** or **affutūrus**, v. intr. with dat. *be here, be present.*

adulēscēns, -entis, m. and f. [**adolēscō**, *grow up*] *youth, young person.*

adultus, -a, -um [part. of **adolēscō**, *grow up*], *grown up, grown,* ADULT.

adventō [intens. of **adveniō**], **-āre,** ——, ——, v. intr. *advance, approach.*

adventus, -ūs, m. [**adveniō**, *arrive*] *approach, arrival,* ADVENT.

adversārius, -ī, m. [**adversus**, *adverse*] *enemy, adversary.*

adversum. See **adversus.**

adversus, -a, -um [part. of **advertō**, *turn towards*], *turned towards, in front, unfavorable,* ADVERSE.

adversus and **adversum**, prep. with accus. [**ad**, *towards* + **vertō**, *turn*] *towards, opposite to, against.*

aedēs, -is, f. *temple.*

aedificō [**aedēs**, *temple* + **faciō**, *make*], **-āre, -āvī, -ātum**, v. tr. *build,* EDIFY.

Aedīlis, -is, m. AEDILE.

Aeduus, -ī, m. *an Aeduan*, a member of a Gallic tribe.

aeger, aegra, aegrum, adj. *ill, sick, feeble, weak.*

aegrē, adv. *painfully, unwillingly.*

aegritūdō, -inis, f. [**aeger**, *sick*] *sickness, vexation.*

Aegyptus, -ī, f. EGYPT.

aemulātiō, -ōnis, f. [**aemulor**, *rival*] *rivalry, emulation.*

aequālis, -is, m. and f. [**aequus**, *equal*] *contemporary, comrade.*

aequor, -oris, n. [**aequus**, *level*] *a level surface, the sea.*

aerārium, -ī, n. [**aerārius**, *of copper*] *the part of the temple of Saturn at Rome in which the public treasure was kept; the treasury.*

aes, aeris, n. *copper, money;* **aes aliēnum**, *debt.*

aestās, -ātis, f. *summer.*

aetās, -ātis, f. [for **aevitās** from **aevum**, *age*] *time of life, age.*

afferō, see **adferō**.

affīrmō, see **adfīrmō**.

Āfrica, -ae, f. *Libya*, the country of the Carthaginians; sometimes AFRICA, referring to the whole continent.

Āfricānus, -a, -um, adj. [**Āfrica**, *Africa*] *African*.

ager, agrī, m. [cf. Eng. *acre*] *field, territory*.

agger, aggeris, m. *mound, wall, rampart*.

aggredior [**ad**, *to* + **gradior**, *go*], **-ī, aggressus sum**, v. tr. *approach, advance; attack*.

agitō [freq. of **agō**, *drive*], **-āre, -āvī, -ātum**, v. tr. *drive, chase, shake*, AGITATE.

āgmen, -inis, n. [**agō**, *drive*] *that which is driven; army on the march, column*.

āgnōscō [**ad**, *to oneself* + **gnōscō**, *get knowledge of*], **-ere, -ōvī, -itum**, v. tr. *recognize*.

agō, agere, ēgī, āctum, v. tr. *drive, lead, do, pass*, ACT : **āctum est**, *it is all over with, all is lost*.

agricola, -ae, m. [**ager**, *field* + **colō**, *till*] *farmer*.

āla, -ae, f. *wing*.

Alba, -ae, f. [**albus**, *white*] *Alba*, or *Alba Longa*, the long white city, the name of an ancient city in Latium.

Albānus, -ī, m. [**Alba**] *an Alban*, a citizen of Alba Longa.

albus, -a, -um, adj. *white*.

ālea, -ae, f. *a game with dice; die*.

Alexander, -rī, m. *Alexander the Great*, King of Macedon.

aliās, adv. [**alius**, *another*] *at another time, at some other time*.

aliēnus, -a, -um, adj. [**alius**, *another*] *another's, of another*. See **aes**.

aliquamdiū, adv. *for awhile*.

aliquandō, adv. *at some time, finally*.

aliquī, aliqua, aliquod, indef. pron. adj. [√ ALI-, *some or other* + **quī**, *who*] *some, any*.

aliquis, aliqua, aliquod, indef. pron. [√ ALI-, *some or other* + **quī**, *who*] *someone, anyone*.

aliquot, indef. num. adj. *some, several*.

aliquotiēns, adv. *several times*.

alius, -a, -ud, adj. [√ ALI-, *other*] *another, other*; **alius ... alius**, *one ... another*.

Allobrogēs, -um, m. *the Allobroges*, a Celtic tribe in Gaul.

alō [√ AL-, *feed*], **alere, aluī, altum** or **alitum**, v. tr. *feed, support, nourish*.

Alpēs, -ium, f. *the Alps*.

alter, -tera, -terum, pron. adj. [√ AL- or ALI-, *other*] *the other* (*of two*), *the second*; **alter ... alter**, *the one ... the other*.

altitūdō, -inis, f. [**altus**, *high*] *height, depth*, ALTITUDE.

altum, -ī, n. [**altus**, *high, deep*] *the deep sea; deep*.

altus, -a, -um, adj. [part. of **alō**, *feed*] *nourished; high, lofty, deep*.

alveus, -ī, m. *hollow, cavity, boat*.

ambitiō, -ōnis, f. [**ambiō**, *go around*] *ambition*.

ambulō [**am** (**ambi-**) *about* + √ BA-, *go*], **-āre, -āvī, -ātum**, v. intr. *go about, take a walk, walk*.

amīcitia, -ae, f. [**amīcus**, *friend*] *friendship, alliance*.

amīcus, -ī, m. [**amō**, *love*] *loved one, friend*.

amīcus, -a, um, adj. [**amō**, *love*] *loving, kind, friendly*.

āmittō [**ā**, *from* + **mittō**, *send*], **-mittere, -mīsī, -missum**, v. tr. *send away, let go; lose*.

amō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr. *love, be fond of*.

amor, -ōris, m. [**amō**, *love*] *love*.

ampliō [**amplius**, *more*], **-āre, āvī, -ātum**, v. tr. *widen, enlarge, extend*.

amplius, adv. also indecl. subst. and adj.

[comp. of **amplus**, *large*, and **amplē**, *largely*] *more, further, longer, more than.*

Amūlius, -ī, m. *Amulius*, son of Proca, King of Alba, and uncle of Romulus and Remus, whom he tried to murder.

ancilla, -ae, f. *maid-servant, maid.*

angor, -ōris, m. *anguish, strangling.*

angustia, -ae, f. sing. rare, usually pl. **angustiae, -ārum**, f. [**angustus**, *narrow*] *narrowness, difficulty.*

angustus, -a, -um, adj. [cf. **angō**, *throttle*] *narrow.*

anima, -ae, f. [√AN-, *breathe*] *air, breath, life.*

animadvertō [**animus**, *attention* + **advertō**, *turn*], **-ere, -ī, -versum**, v. tr. and intr. *give attention to, attend to, consider, observe ; punish.*

animal, -ālis, n. [**anima**, *breath*] *living being, animal.*

animus, -ī, m. [√AN-, *breathe*] *intellect, mind, attention.*

annōna, -ae, f. [**annus**, *year*] *a year's produce.*

annus, -ī, m. *year.*

ante, prep. with acc. *before.*

anteā, adv. [**ante**, *before* + **ea**, *these things*] *before, formerly.*

anteeō [**ante**, *before* + **eō**, *go*], **-īre, -īvī** or **-iī**, ——, v. intr. *go before, precede.*

Antiochus, -ī, m. *Antiochus*, a Greek philosopher and teacher.

antīquus, -a, -um, adj. [**ante**, *before*] *old, ancient, antique.*

Antōnius, -ī, m. *Marcus Antonius*, member of second triumvirate : *Caius Antonius Hybrida*, Cicero's colleague in his consulship.

ānulus, -ī, m. *ring.*

anxius, -a, -um, adj. [cf. **angō**, *throttle*] *troubled*, ANXIOUS.

aper, aprī, m. *wild-boar.*

aperiō, -īre, -eruī, -ertum, v. tr. *open, show, make known.*

appellō [**ad**, *to* + **pellō**, *drive*], **-āre, -āvī, -ātum**, v. tr. *address, call by name, call, name*, APPEAL.

Appenninus, -a, -um, adj. [sc. **mōns**] *the Appenines.*

apprehendō [**ad**, *at* + **-prehendō**, *catch*], **-ere, -ndī, -nsum**, v. tr. *catch at, seize.*

appropinquō [**ad**, *to* + **propinquō**, *draw near*], **-āre, -āvī, -ātum**, v. tr. *draw near to, approach, come near.*

aptus, -a, -um, adj. *fit, suitable, fitted.*

apud, prep. with acc. *with, by, near, among, before, in the presence of, at the house of : in the works of.*

aqua, -ae, f. *water.*

aquilifer, -ferī, m. [**aquila**, *eagle* + √FER-, *carry*] *eagle-bearer, standard-bearer.*

Aquītānus, -ī, m. *an Aquitanian*, an inhabitant of Aquitania in Gaul.

āra, -ae, f. *altar.*

arātrum, -ī, n. [**arō**, *plough*] *a plough.*

arbitrium, -ī, n. [**arbitror**, *judge*] *judgment, wish, will.*

arbitror [**arbiter**, *a judge*], **-ārī, -ātus sum**, dep. v. tr. *judge, believe, think.*

arbor, -oris, f. *tree.*

arceō [√ARC-, *make secure*], **-ēre, -uī**, ——, v. tr. *shut up ; keep off.*

arcessītus, -a, -um [part. of **arcessō**, *summon*], *invited, summoned.*

arcessō [intens. of **accēdō**, *approach*], **-ere, -īvī, -ītum**, v. tr. *cause to come, call, summon, invite.*

arcus, -ūs, m. *bow.*

arduus, -a, -um, adj. *steep, hard, difficult*, ARDUOUS.

Ariovistus, -ī, m. *Ariovistus*, king of the Suēbī.

Aristidēs, -is, m. [Ἀριστείδης] *Aristides*, an Athenian general and statesman, who was called *the Just* on account of his integrity.

arma, -ōrum, n. pl. [**armō**, *arm*] ARMS.

armātus, -a, -um [part. of **armō**, *arm*], *armed, in arms.*

Armenia, -ae, f. *Armenia.*

armilla, -ae, f. [cf. **armus,** *shoulder*] *bracelet, armlet.*

arō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr. *plough.*

Arpīnum, -ī, n. *Arpinum,* a city about fifty miles S. E. of Rome.

arrogantia, -ae, f. [**adrogāns,** *assuming*] ARROGANCE, *insolence, pride.*

ars, artis, f. [1 √ AR-, *fit*] *practical skill,* ART; *knowledge, stratagem.*

arx, arcis, f. [**arceō,** *shut in*] *castle, citadel, fortress.*

asinus, -ī, m. *ass, beast of burden.*

asper, -era, -erum, adj. [**ab,** *without* + **spēs,** *hope*] *without hope; hostile, cruel, rough.*

āspernor [**ab,** *from* + **spernor,** *remove*], **-ātus sum,** v. dep. tr. *reject, despise.*

asȳlum, -ī, n. [Gr. ἄσυλον, *place of refuge*] *place of refuge,* ASYLUM.

at, advers. conj. *but;* cf. **sed, autem.**

āter, ātra, ātrum, adj. *black.*

Athēnae, -ārum, f. [Gr. Ἀθῆναι] *Athens,* chief city of Greece, situated in Attica, in the southeastern part of central Greece.

Athēniēnsis, -is, m. and f. [**Athēnae**] *an Athenian.*

atque, coörd. conj. [**ad,** *in addition to* + **que,** *and*] (used before vowels and consonants, **āc** only before consonants) *and, and also, and moreover.*

atrōciter, adv. [**atrōx,** *cruel*] *savagely, fiercely, cruelly.*

atrōx, gen. **-ōcis,** adj. *savage, fierce, cruel.*

auctōritās, -ātis, f. [**auctor,** *author*] *power,* AUTHORITY.

audācia, -ae, f. [**audāx,** *bold*] *daring, boldness,* AUDACITY.

audāx, -ācis, adj. [**audeō,** *dare*] *daring, bold,* AUDACIOUS.

audeō [for **avideō,** from √ 1 AV-, *desire*], **-ēre, ausus sum,** semi-dep. tr. v. *venture, dare.*

audiō [2 √ AV-, *notice*], **-īre, -īvī, -ītum,** v. tr. *hear.*

auferō [**abs,** *away* + **ferō,** *bear*], **auferre, abstulī, ablātum,** v. tr. *take away, carry away, bear off, remove.*

augeō [√ AUG-, *increase*], **-ēre, auxī, auctum,** v. tr. *increase, spread, augment.*

augurium, -ī, n. [**augur,** *augur*] *observance of omens, divination,* AUGURY.

Augustus, -ī, m. [**augustus,** *consecrated*] *Augustus,* the cognomen given to Octavius Caesar after he became emperor.

augustus, -a, -um, adj. [**augeō,** *increase*] *increased; consecrated, majestic,* AUGUST.

aureus, -a, -um, adj. [**aurum,** *gold*] *of gold, golden.*

auspicium, -ī n. [**auspex,** *augur,* from **avis,** *bird* + √ SPEC-, *see*], *divination from the flight of birds, augury from birds, divination, augury:* **auspicia adhibēre,** *to consult the auguries from birds.*

aut, disjunc. conj. marking an important difference, *or;* corrective or emphatic, *or at least, or rather, or else:* **aut ... aut,** *either ... or.*

autem, advers. conj. (never first word in a clause) *but, however, moreover;* cf. **at** and **sed.**

auxēre = **auxērunt,** 3d pl. perf. of **augeō.**

auxilium, -ī, n. [cf. **augeō,** *increase*] *help, aid;* pl. *auxiliary troops, auxiliaries.*

avāritia, -ae, f. [**avārus,** *greedy*] *greed,* AVARICE.

avārus, -a, -um, adj. [1 √ AV-, *desire*] *greedy, covetous,* AVARICIOUS.

avidus, -a, -um, adj. [1 √ AV-, *delight*] *desirous, eager, greedy for.*

avis, -is, f. [3 √ AV-, *blow, waft*] *bird.*

āvocō [**ā** *from* + **vocō,** *call*], **-āre, -āvī, -ātum** v. tr. *call off, call away.*

avus, -ī, m. *grandfather, ancestor.*

B

barbarus, -ī, m. [Gr. βάρβαρος] BARBARIAN.

beātus, -a, -um [part. of **beō**, *bless*], *blessed, happy.*

Belga, -ae, m. *a Belgian*, an inhabitant of Northern Gaul.

bellicōsus, -a, -um, adj. [**bellum,** *war*] *fond of war, warlike.*

bellō [**bellum,** *war*], **-āre, -āvī, -ātum,** v. tr. *to war, carry on war, make war.*

bellum, -ī, n. [for **duellum,** √ DVA-, *apart*] *war, conflict.*

bene, adv. [**bonus,** *good*] *well.*

beneficium, -ī, n. [**bene,** *well* + **faciō,** *do*] *favor, kindness, service, benefit.*

benīgnē, adv. [**benīgnus,** *kind*] *kindly, courteously, in a friendly manner.*

benīgnus, -a, -um, adj. [**bene,** *well* + √ GEN-, *born*] *well-born, kind, friendly,* BENIGNANT.

bēstia, -ae, f. *beast.*

bibliothēca, -ae, f. *library.*

Bibulus, -ī, m. *Marcus Bibulus*, consul with Julius Caesar.

bis, adv. *twice.*

bona, -ōrum, n. [**bonus,** *good*] *goods, property.*

bonus, -a, um, adj. *good*; comp. **melior,** superl. **optimus.**

bōs, bovis, m. and f. [Gr. βοῦς] *ox, cow.*

bracchium, -ī, n. *arm.*

brevis, brevis, breve, adj. *short,* BRIEF.

Britannia, -ae, f. *Britain.*

Britannus, -ī, m. *a Briton.*

Brundisium, -ī, n. *Brundisium*, a seaport in Southern Italy.

Brūtus, -ī, m. *Marcus Junius Brutus*, one of the conspirators against Caesar.

C

cadāver, -eris, n. [√ CAD-, *fall*] *dead body, corpse, carcass.*

cadō [√ CAD-, fall], **-ere, cecidī, cāsum,** v. intr. *fall, die, be slain.*

caedēs, -is, f. [**caedō,** *cut, kill*] *killing, slaughter, murder.*

caelum, -ī, n. *sky, heaven, climate, air.*

Caesar, -aris, m. *Caesar, Caius Julius*, a famous Roman general, statesman, and writer.

calamitās, -ātis, f. *loss, injury, disaster, misfortune,* CALAMITY.

calcar, -āris, n. [**calx,** *heel*] *spur.*

Calpurnia, -ae, f. *Calpurnia*, wife of Caesar.

calvitium, -ī, n. [**calvus,** *bald*] *baldness.*

calvus, -a, -um, adj. *bald, hairless.*

Calvus, -ī, m. *Caius Licinius Macer Calvus*, a poet, who lampooned Julius Caesar.

Campānus, -a, -um, adj. *Campanian.*

campester, -tris, -tre, adj. [**campus,** *plain*] *of a level field, flat, level.*

campus, -ī, m. *plain, field.*

Canīnius, -ī, m. *Caius Caninius Rebilus*, consul for a few hours.

cantō [freq. of **canō,** *sing*], **-āre, -āvī, -ātum,** v. tr. *sing.*

caper, caprī, m. *he-goat.*

capiō [√ CAP-, *take*], **capere, cēpī, captum,** v. tr. *take, seize,* CAPTURE.

Capitōlium -ī, n. [**caput,** *head*] THE CAPITOL, a temple on the southern spur of the Capitoline Hill, erected in honor of Jupiter, Juno, and Minerva; also used for the *Capitoline Hill*, on which the Capitol stood.

capra, -ae, f. *she-goat:* **Caprae Palūs,** *the Goat's Pool*, the place in the Campus Martius whence Romulus disappeared.

captīvus, -ī, m. [**capiō,** *take*] *prisoner,* CAPTIVE.

captō [**capiō,** *take*], **-āre, -āvī, -ātum,** v. tr. *seize, take, capture.*

Capua, -ae, f. *Capua*, a prosperous city of Campania in Italy.

caput, -itis, n. *the head;* CAPITAL.

carcer, -eris, m. *prison, jail.*

carmen, -inis, n. *song, poem.*

carpō, -ere, -sī, -tum, v. tr. *pick, pluck.*

carrus, -ī, m. *wagon,* CAR, CART.

Carthāgō, -inis, f. *Carthage,* a large city on the coast of Northern Africa, near the modern Tunis.

cārus, -a, -um, adj. *dear, precious, beloved:* **cārē,** adv. *dearly.*

casa, -ae, f. *a small house, cottage, hut.*

Casca, -ae, m. *Caius Servilius Casca,* one of the conspirators against Caesar.

Cassius, -ī, m. *Caius Cassius Longinus,* one of the conspirators against Caesar.

castellum, -ī, n. [dimin. of **castrum,** *camp*] *fort, stronghold, redoubt, castle.*

castra, -ōrum, n. pl. *camp.*

cāsus, -ūs, m. [**cadō,** *fall*] *a falling; chance; misfortune, loss.*

catēna, -ae, f. *chain, fetter.*

Catilīna, -ae, m. *Lucius Sergius Catiline,* a notorious conspirator of Rome and opponent of Cicero, whom he tried to murder.

Catō, -ōnis, m. [**catus,** *sagacious*] *Marcus Porcius Cato Uticensis,* a famous Roman.

Catullus, -ī, m. *Caius Valerius Catullus,* a great Roman lyric poet.

catulus, -ī, m. [dimin. of **catus,** *cat*] *a young animal, whelp, puppy, cub.*

causa, -ae, f. *cause, reason; excuse; case at law:* Abl. **causā** (always after the Gen. case), *for the sake of:* **causam dīcere,** *to plead a case.*

caveō [√ CAV-, *watch*], **-ēre, cāvī, cautum,** v. tr. *watch, beware of, take care.*

cēdō [√ CAD-, *fall*], **-ere, cessī, cessum,** v. intr. *withdraw, yield.*

celeber, -bris, -bre, adj. [√ CEL-, *drive*] *frequented, renowned, famous.*

celebrō [**celeber,** *famous*], **-āre, -āvī, -ātum,** v. tr. *crowd, praise, make famous, honor, celebrate.*

celer, -eris, -ere, adj. [√ CEL-, *drive*] *swift, quick:* comp. **celerior;** superl. **celerrimus.**

celeritās, -ātis, f. [**celer,** *swift*] *swiftness, speed, celerity.*

celeriter, adv. [**celer,** *swift*] *swiftly, speedily, quickly;* comp. **celerius,** superl. **celerrimē.**

cēlō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr. *hide, keep secret, conceal.*

cēna, -ae, f. *dinner.*

cēnseō, -ēre, -uī, -um, v. tr. *reckon; think, deem, be of opinion.*

centēsimus, -a, -um, num. adj. [**centum,** *hundred*] *hundredth.*

centum, num. adj. indecl. *hundred,* CENT.

centuria, -ae, f. [**centum,** *hundred*] *a division of a hundred men,* A CENTURY.

centuriō, -ōnis, m. [**centuria,** *century*] *commander of a century, captain,* CENTURION.

certāmen, -inis, n. [**certō,** *struggle*] *battle, struggle, decisive contest.*

certē, adv. [**certus,** *certain*] *really, surely, certainly.*

certō [**certus,** *certain*], **-āre, -āvī, -ātum,** v. tr. *match, fight, combat.*

certus, -a, -um, adj. [part. of **cernō,** *decide*] *decided, fixed, certain:* **certiōrem aliquem facere,** *inform someone;* **certior fīō,** *I am informed.*

cervīx, -īcis, f. *neck.*

cervus, -ī, m. *a stag.*

cessō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr. and intr. *delay, stop; be idle, cease.*

(cēterus), -a, -um, adj. *other;* as a subst. *rest, remainder.*

Chrīstus, -ī, m. [Gr. χριστός, *anointed*] CHRIST.

Chrȳsogonus, -ī, m. *Lucius Cornelius Chrysogonus,* a freedman of Sulla.

cibus, -ī, m. *food.*

cicer, -eris, n. *chick-pea.*

Cicerō, -ōnis, m. [**cicer,** *chick-pea*] *Marcus Tullius Cicero,* a family name of the Tullian gens, of whom Marcus Tullius

Cicero, the famous orator, statesman, and writer, is most widely known.

Cinna, -ae, m. *Cinna.*

circā, adv. and prep. with acc. *around, round about.*

circum, adv. and prep. with acc. [acc. of **circus,** *circle*] *around, round about, near.*

circumarō [**circum,** *around* + **arō,** *plough*], **-āre, -āvī, -ātum,** v. tr. *plough around.*

citerior, citerior, citerius, gen. **-ōris,** adj. comp. (no positive) *on this side, nearer, next;* superl. **citimus.**

cīvicus, -a, -um, adj. [**cīvis,** *citizen*] *civic.*

cīvīlis, -is, -e, adj. [**cīvis,** *citizen*] *civil.*

cīvis, -is, m. and f. [√CI-, *rest, lie*] *citizen.*

cīvitās, -ātis, f. [**cīvis,** *citizen*] *body of citizens; state.*

clādēs, -is, f. [√CEL-, *strike*] *destruction, defeat, death.*

clam, adv. *secretly.*

clāmitō [freq. of **clāmō,** *cry out*], **-āre, -āvī, -ātum,** v. tr. *cry aloud, call loudly.*

clāmō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr. and intr. [√CAL-, *call*] *cry aloud, call loudly.*

clāmor, -ōris, m. [√CAL-, *call*] *loud call, shout, cry.*

clārus, -a, -um, adj. [√CAL-, *call*] *called; bright,* CLEAR; *famous, glorious, eminent.*

classis, -is, f. [√CAL-, *call*] CLASS; *fleet.*

clēmenter, adv. [**clēmēns,** *mild*] *mildly, mercifully.*

cliēns, -entis, m. CLIENT.

clipeus, -ī, m. *round shield,* made of metal.

Clōdius, -ī, m. *Publius Clodius Pulcher,* Cicero's bitterest enemy.

Clūsīnus, -a, -um, adj. [**Clūsium**] *belonging to Clusium:* as a subst. *an inhabitant of Clusium.*

Cocles, -itis, *one-eyed,* surname of Horatius, who defended the bridge against Porsenna's attack on Rome.

coepī, perf. ind. of **coepiō,** q. v.

(coepiō, -ere), coepī, coeptum, v. tr. *begin, commence:* only the perfect tenses are found in classical Latin.

coerceō [**con,** *completely* + **arceō,** *enclose*], **-ēre, -uī, -itum,** v. tr. *close on all sides; restrain, repress, control.*

cōgitātiō, -ōnis, f. [**cōgitō,** *think*] *thinking, thought, design, plan.*

cōgnōmen, -inis, n. [**com,** *with, added* + (g)**nōmen,** *name*] *surname, family name, name.*

cōgnōscō [**com,** intens. + (g)**nōscō,** *know*], **-ere, -gnōvī, -gnitum,** v. tr. *learn, know, understand,* RECOGNIZE.

cōgō [**com,** *together* + **agō,** *drive*], **cōgere, coēgī, coāctum,** v. tr. *drive together, force, compel, collect.*

cohors, cohortis, f. COHORT.

collis, -is, m. *hill.*

collocō [**com,** *together* + **locō,** *place*], **-āre, -āvī, -ātum,** v. tr. *place together, collect into one place.*

colloquium, -ī, n. [**colloquor,** *converse*] *conversation, conference,* COLLOQUY.

colō [√COL-, *till*], **-ere, coluī, cultum,** v. tr. *till;* CULTIVATE; *care for, honor, worship.*

columba, -ae, f. *dove, pigeon.*

combūrō [**con,** *completely* + **būrō,** *burn*], **-ere, -ūssī, -ūstum,** v. tr. *burn up.*

comes, -itis, m. and f. [**com,** *with* + √I-, *go*] *comrade, companion.*

cōmitās, -ātis, f. [**cōmis,** *kind*] *courtesy, kindness.*

comitium, -ī, n. [**com,** *together* + √I-, *go*] *The Comitium, place of coming together,* next to the Forum, where the elections took place.

comitor [**comes,** *companion*], **-ārī, -ātus sum,** dep. v. tr. *accompany, attend.*

commeātus, -ūs, m. [**commeō,** *go and come*] *going to and fro; leave of absence; provisions, supplies.*

committō [**com**, *together* + **mittō**, *send*], **-ere, -mīsī, -missum**, v. tr. *unite, begin, intrust, commit.*

commodum, -ī, n. [**commodus**, *with due measure*] *convenience, advantage, profit.*

commodus, -a, -um, adj. [**com**, *with* + **modus**, *measure*] *suitable, fit, agreeable, advantageous.*

commonēfaciō [**com**, intens. + **moneō**, *warn* + **faciō**, *make*], **-ere, -fēcī, -factum**, v. tr. *warn, admonish, remind.*

commoveō [**com**, *together* + **moveō**, *move*], **-ēre, -mōvī, -mōtum**, v. tr. *move, arouse, excite.*

commūniō [**com**, intens. + **mūniō**, *fortify*], **-īre, -īvī, -ītum**, v. tr. *fortify, intrench.*

commūnis, commūnis, commūne, gen. **-is**, adj. [**com**, *together* + √MU-, *bind*] *bound together, common, general.*

commūtō [**com**, intens. + **mūtō**, *change*], **-āre, -āvī, -ātum**, v. tr. *change, change completely.*

compār, -paris, adj. [**com**, *with* + **pār**, *equal*] *like, equal.*

1. **comparō** [**com**, *completely* + **parō**, *prepare*], **-āre, -āvī, -ātum**, v. tr. *prepare, make ready, gain, get, secure.*

2. **comparō** [**compār**, *equal*], **-āre, -āvī, -ātum**, v. tr. *bring together as equals, match, compare.*

(**compēs, -pedis**), f. sing. only in abl. *chain, shackle, fetter.*

compellō [**com**, *together* + **pellō**, *drive*], **-pellere, -pulī, -pulsum**, *drive together, force*, COMPEL.

compleō [**com**, intens. *completely* + **pleō**, *fill*], **-plēre, -plēvī, -plētum**, v. tr. *fill up, fill full.*

complūrēs, complūrēs, complūra and **complūria**, adj. [**com**, intens. + **plūrēs**, *many, more*] *more, not a few, many.*

comprehendō [**com**, intens. + **prehendō**, *seize*], **-ere, -hendī, -hēnsum**, v. tr. *seize, arrest.*

comprimō [**com**, *together* + **premō**, *press*], **-ere, -pressī, -pressum**, v. tr. *press together, restrain, put down, check, subdue.*

concēdō [**con**, *completely* + **cēdō**, *go*], **-cēdere, -cēssī, -cēssum**, v. intr. *go away, yield*, CONCEDE, *allow.*

concidō [**con**, *together* + **cadō**, *fall*], **-ere, -cidī**, ——, v. intr. *fall together, fall, perish, be slain.*

concilio [**concilium**, *meeting*], **-āre, -āvī, -ātum**, v. tr. *bring together, unite*, CONCILIATE; *win, obtain.*

concitō [**con**, intensive + **citō**, *rouse*], **-āre, -āvī, -ātum**, v. tr. *rouse, urge, incite, cause.*

concordia, -ae, f. [**concors-**, *of the same mind*] *concord, harmony, union.*

concupiscō [**con**, intens. + **cupiō**, *desire*], **-ere, -cupīvī, -cupītum**, v. tr. *long for, strive after.*

condō [**con**, *together* + √DA-, *put*], **-dere, -didī, -ditum**, v. tr. *put together, build, hide.*

condoleō [**con**, intens. + **doleō**, *be pained*], **-dolēre, -doluī**, ——, v. intr. *be pained, suffer, be sorry.*

cōnferō [**con**, *together* + **ferō**, *bring*], **-ferre, -tulī, conlātum** and **collātum**, v. tr. *bring together, collect*, CONFER; **sē cōnferre**, *betake oneself, go.*

cōnfestim, adv. *immediately.*

cōnficiō [**con**, *completely* + **faciō**, *make*], **-ficere, -fēcī, -fectum**, v. tr. *make, accomplish, finish, wear out.*

cōnfirmō [**con**, intens. + **firmō**, *strengthen*], **-āre, -āvī, -ātum**, v. tr. *make firm, strengthen, establish.*

cōnfīō [**con**, *together* + **fīō**, *flow*], **-āre, -āvī, -ātum**, v. tr. *flow together, cause, arouse.*

cōnfluō [**con**, *together* + **fluō**, *flow*], **-ere, -flūxī**, ——, *flow together, gather, assemble.*

cōnfodiō [**com**, *completely* + **fodiō**, *dig*], **-ere, -fōdī, -fossum**, v. tr. *dig up; transfix, stab.*

confugiō [**con**, *together* + **fugiō**, *flee*],

-fugere, -fūgī, ——, v. tr. *flee, flee for refuge.*

congruō, -ere, -uī, ——, v. intr. *coincide, agree.*

coniciō [**con,** *together* + **iaciō,** *throw*], **-icere, -iēci, -iectum,** v. tr. *throw together, throw, put, unite.*

coniūnx or **coniux, -iugis,** m. and f. [**con,** *together* + √IUG-, *bind*] *married person, husband, wife.*

coniūrātiō, -ōnis, f. [**coniūrō,** *swear together*] *a swearing together, alliance, plot, conspiracy.*

coniūrātus, -ī, m. [**coniūrō,** *conspire*] *conspirator.*

coniūrō [**con,** *together* + **iūrō,** *swear*], **-āre, -āvī, -ātum,** v. tr. *swear together, conspire.*

conlēga, -ae, m. *colleague, associate.*

conlocō, see **collocō.**

cōnor, -ārī, -ātus sum, dep. v. tr. *try, attempt, endeavor.*

cōnscendō [**con,** intens. + **scandō,** *climb*], **-ere, -scendī, -scēnsum,** v. tr. *climb; embark.*

cōnscrībō [**con,** *together* + **scrībō,** *write*], **-scrībere, -scrīpsī, -scrīptum,** v. tr. *write together, enlist, enroll.*

cōnscientia, -ae, f. [**cōnscius,** *conscious*] *knowledge, consciousness.*

cōnserō [**con,** *together* + **serō,** *twine*], **-ere, -seruī, -sertum,** v. tr. *join together, connect;* with **manum, manūs,** *fight hand to hand.*

cōnservō [**con,** *together* + **servō,** *save*] **-āre, -āvī, -ātum,** v. tr. *save together, save, preserve.*

cōnsīderō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr. *look at, regard attentively.*

cōnsilium, -ī, n. [cf. **cōnsulō,** *consult*] *consulting body, council; deliberation; plan, purpose, design; prudence, wisdom.*

cōnsistō [**con,** *completely* + **sistō,** *stand*], **-sistere, -stitī, -stitum,** v. intr. *stand still, stand, halt.*

cōnspectus, -ūs, m. [**cōnspiciō,** *perceive*] *sight, view.*

cōnspiciō [**con,** *together* + **speciō,** *look*], **-spicere, -spēxī, -spectum,** v. tr. *look at closely, perceive, see.*

cōnspicor [**con,** *together* + **speciō,** *look*], **-ārī, -ātus sum,** dep. v. tr. *get sight of, perceive, see.*

cōnstantia, -ae, f. [**cōnstāns,** *firm*] *firmness, strength, constancy.*

cōnstat, see **cōnstō.**

cōnsternō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr. *confound, dismay, terrify.*

cōnstituō [**com,** intens. + **statuō,** *set*], **-ere, -uī, -ūtum,** v. tr. *arrange, draw up, select, manage, determine, decide.*

cōnstitūtum, -ī, n. [**cōnstituō,** *determine*] *agreement, appointment.*

cōnstō [**con,** *together* + **stō,** *stand*], **-āre, -stitī, -stātūrus,** v. intr. *agree:* impers. **satis cōnstat,** *it is well known.*

cōnsuēsco [**con,** intens. + **suēscō,** *accustom*], **-suēscere, -suēvī, -suētum,** v. intr. *accustom, accustom oneself, become accustomed.*

cōnsul, -ulis, m. [**cōnsulō,** *consult*] *consul.*

cōnsulātus, -ūs, m. [**cōnsul,** *consul*] *consulship.*

cōnsulō, -ere, -uī, -ultum, v. tr. *deliberate, consult, take measures, resolve.*

contemplor, -ārī, -ātus sum, dep. v. tr. *gaze at, look at, contemplate.*

contendō [**con,** intens. + **tendō,** *stretch*], **-ere, -tendī, -tentum,** v. intr. *stretch tight; march rapidly, hasten; ask, entreat.*

contentiō, -ōnis, f. [**con,** intens. + √TEN-, *stretch*] *struggle, dispute, contest.*

contentus, -a, -um, adj. [part. of **continēō,** *hold in*] CONTENTED, with abl.

continēō [**con,** *together* + **teneō,** *hold*], **-ēre, -tinuī, -tentum,** v. tr. *hold in, hold together, restrain, contain.*

continuō, adv. [**continuus,** *joining*] *immediately.*

cōntiō, -ōnis, f. [for **conventiō** from **con,** *together* + √ VEN-, *come*] *a coming together, meeting, assembly.*

contrā, adv. and prep. with acc.: adv. *opposite, face to face; on the contrary:* prep. *against, in the face of, contrary to.*

contrahō [**con,** *together* + **trahō,** *draw*] **-ere, -trāxī, -trāctum,** v. tr. *draw together, collect.*

contrārius, -a, -um, adj. [**contrā,** *over against*] *lying over against, opposite,* with dat.

conūbium, -ī, n. [**con,** *together* + **nūbō,** *marry*] *marriage, right of marriage.*

conveniō [**con,** *together* + **veniō,** *come*], **-īre, -vēnī, -ventum,** v. intr. *come together, assemble, meet,* CONVENE.

convertō [**con,** *completely* + **vertō,** *turn*], **-vertere, -vertī, -versum,** v. tr. *turn completely, turn, fix, direct,* CONVERT.

convincō, -ere, -vīcī, -victum, v. tr. [**com,** intens. + **vincō,** *conquer*] *overcome, convict.*

convocō [**con,** *together* + **vocō,** *call*], **-āre, -āvī, -ātum,** v. tr. *call together, assemble, summon.*

coörior [**con,** intens. + **orior,** *rise*], **-īrī, -ortus sum,** dep. v. intr. *come forth, arise.*

cophinus, -ī, m. *basket.*

cōpia, -ae, f. [for **co-opia** from **com,** intens. + **ops,** *wealth*] *abundance, plenty:* pl. **cōpiae, -ārum,** *forces, troops.*

cor, cordis, n. *heart.*

Corinthus, -ī, f. *Corinth,* a city of Greece, situated on the Isthmus of Corinth, now Corinto.

Cornēlia, -ae, f. *Cornelia,* daughter of Cinna.

cornū, -ūs, n. *horn, wing (of an army).*

corōna, -ae, f. *wreath, crown.*

corpus, -oris, n. *body.*

corrigō [**con,** intens. + **regō,** *keep straight*], **-ere, -rēxī, -rēctum,** v. tr. *make straight, improve, correct.*

crās, adv. *to-morrow.*

Crassus, -ī, *Marcus Crassus,* called *Dives* on account of his wealth.

crēdō [√ CRAT-, *faith* + √ DA-, *give, put*], **-ere, -didī, -ditum,** v. tr. *put faith in, trust, believe, suppose, think.*

Cremōna, -ae, f. *Cremona,* a town in Cisalpine Gaul.

creō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr. *bring forth, make, choose,* CREATE.

crīnis, -is, m. *hair.*

cruciō [**crux,** *cross*], **-āre, -āvī, -ātum,** v. tr. *put on the rack, torture, crucify.*

crux, crucis, f. *cross, gallows.*

cuculus, -ī, m. *starling.*

cūius, gen. sing. of **quī** and of **quis.**

culex, -icis, m. *gnat.*

culpa, -ae, f. *fault, error, guilt, blame.*

culpō [**culpa,** *blame*], **-āre, -āvī, -ātum,** v. tr. *blame, find fault with.*

culter, -trī, m. [√ CEL-, *strike*] *knife.*

cultus, -ūs, m. [√ COL-, *till*] *labor, care; style, refinement, luxury.*

cum, conj. of time, *when, while, as long as;* of cause, *since, as, inasmuch as;* of concession, *though, although:* **cum ... tum,** *both ... and, while ... especially.*

cum, prep. with abl., *with, along with, in company with.*

cupiditās, -ātis, f. [**cupidus,** *desirous*] *desire, ambition.*

cupidus, -a, -um, adj. [**cupiō,** *desire*] *desirous of, eager for, greedy, covetous;* with gen.

cupiō, -ere, -īvī, -ītum, v. tr. *long for, desire, wish.*

cūr, adv. interrog. *why? wherefore?*

cūra, -ae, f. [cf. **cūrō,** *care*] *care, trouble, attention.*

cūria, -ae, f. *curia,* one of the ten divisions into which each of the three tribes of patricians was divided; *senate-house, place of meeting of the senate.*

cūrō [cf. **cūra,** *care*], **-āre, -āvī, -ātum,** v. tr. *care for, take care of.*

currō, currere, cucurrī, cursum, v. intr. *run.*

currus, -ūs, m. [**currō,** *run*] *chariot, car.*

cursus, -ūs, m. [cf. **currō,** *run*] *running, course, voyage.*

cūstōdiō [**cūstōs,** *guard*], **-īre, -īvī, -ītum,** v. tr. *watch, guard, defend.*

cūstōs, -ōdis, m. and f. *guard, watch, defender.*

Cȳrus, -ī, m. *Cyrus the Great,* founder of the Persian empire.

D

Dācī, -ōrum, m. *the Dacians,* people on north bank of the Danube.

damnō [**damnum,** *loss*], **-āre, -āvī, -ātum,** v. tr. *adjudge guilty, condemn.*

dē, prep. with abl. denoting separation, *from;* of place and motion, *from, out of;* of time, *after, during, in;* of source, *from, out of;* of cause, *on account of, through;* of relation, *about, concerning.*

dea, -ae, f. [**deus,** *god*] *goddess.*

dēbeō [**dē,** *from* + **habeō,** *hold*], **-ēre, -uī, -itum,** v. tr. *withhold; owe, be due; ought, must, should.*

dēbilis, -is, -e, adj. [**dē,** *not* + **habilis,** *manageable*] *weak; lame, disabled.*

dēcēdō [**dē,** *from* + **cēdō,** *go*], **-ere, -cessī, -cessum,** v. intr. *go from, depart, withdraw; die.*

decem, indecl. num. adj. *ten.*

December, -bris, -bre, adj. [**decem,** *ten*] *of the tenth, tenth month, December.*

deceō, -ēre, -uī, ——, used only in 3d pers. sing. *be seemly, become, be proper, be suitable.*

dēcernō [**dē,** *from* + **cernō,** *separate*], **-ere, -crēvī, -crētum,** v. tr. *separate from, decide, determine, vote.*

decimus, -a, -um, num. adj. *tenth;* with sextus, *sixteenth.*

dēcipiō [**dē,** *away* + **capiō,** *take*], **-ere, -cēpī, -ceptum,** v. tr. *cheat, deceive.*

dēdeceō [**dē,** *away* + **deceō,** *become*], **-ēre, -uī,** ——, used only in 3d pers. sing. *be unseemly, be unbecoming, be improper.*

dēditiō, -ōnis, f. [**dēdō,** *surrender*] *a giving up, surrender.*

dēdō [**dē,** *away* + **dō,** *give*] **-ere, -didī, -ditum,** v. tr. *give away, give up, surrender.*

dēfendō [**dē,** *from, off* + **fendō,** *ward*], **-ere, -fendī, -fēnsum,** v. tr. *ward off, guard, defend.*

dēferō [**dē,** *down* + **ferō,** *bear*], **-ferre, -tulī, -lātum,** v. tr. *remove, report, submit, announce.*

dēfessus, -a, -um, adj. *tired out, tired, worn out.*

dēfōrmitās, -ātis, f. [**dēfōrmis,** *ugly*] *ugliness, deformity.*

dēfungor [**dē,** intens. + **fungor,** *perform*], **-ī, dēfūnctus sum,** dep. v. intr. *perform, finish,* with abl.

dēhonestō [**dē,** *from* + **honestō,** *honor*], **-āre, -āvī,** ——, v. tr. *dishonor, disgrace.*

dēiciō [**dē,** *down* + **iaciō,** *throw*], **-ere, -iēcī, -iectum,** v. tr. *throw down, hurl down, bring down.*

deinde or **dein,** adv. *then, next, thereafter.*

dēlectō [intens. of **dēliciō,** *entice*], **-āre, -āvī, -ātum,** v. tr. *allure, charm,* DELIGHT.

dēleō, -ēre, -ēvī, -ētum, v. tr. *erase, blot out, destroy, delete.*

dēligō [**dē,** *out of* + **legō,** *gather*], **-ere, -lēgī, -lēctum,** v. tr. *pick out, gather, choose.*

Delphī, -ōrum, m. *Delphi,* a town of Phocis, in central Greece, now Castri, where the famous oracle of Apollo and Diana was.

dēmigrō [**dē,** *from* + **migrō,** *depart*], **-āre, -āvī, -ātum,** v. intr. *move, depart, migrate.*

dēmōnstrō [**dē,** *from* + **mōnstrō,** *show*], **-āre, -āvī, -ātum,** v. tr. *show,* DEMONSTRATE.

dēnegō [dē, inten. + **negō**, *deny*], **-āre, -āvī, -ātum**, v. tr. *deny, refuse.*

dēnique, adv. *at last, at length, finally; in fact, in a word.*

dēnūntiō [dē, *from* + **nūntiō**, *declare*], **-āre, -āvī, -ātum**, v. tr. *declare, announce, order.*

dēpōnō [dē, *down* + **pōnō**, *put*], **-ere, -posuī, -positum**, v. tr. *put down, deposit.*

dēprecor [dē, *from* + **precor**, *pray*], **-ārī, -ātus sum**, dep. v. tr. *avert by prayer, pray, plead.*

dēprehendō [dē, *down* + **prehendō**, *snatch*], **-ere, -ndī -nsum**, v. tr. *take away, seize, capture.*

dēscendō [dē, *down* + **scandō**, *climb*], **-ere, -ndī, -nsum**, v. tr. *climb down, descend.*

dēserō [dē, *un* + **serō**, *bind*], **-ere, -ruī, -rtum**, v. tr. *leave, abandon, desert.*

dēsīderium, **-ī**, n. [**dēsīderō**, *desire*] *longing for, desire; want, need; grief.*

dēsiliō [dē, *down* + **saliō**, *leap*], **-īre, -iluī, -sultum**, v. intr. *leap down, dismount.*

dēsistō [dē, *off* + **sistō**, *stand*], **-ere, -stitī, -stitum**, v. intr. *leave off, desist from, cease.*

dēstinō [dē, int. + √STA-, *stand*], **-āre, -āvī, -ātum**, v. tr. *make fast, design.*

dēsum [dē, *from* + **sum**, *am*], **esse, -fuī, -futūrus**, v. intr. *be absent, lack, be wanting.*

dētegō [dē, *un* + **tegō**, *cover*], **-ere, -tēxī, -tēctum**, v. tr. *uncover, expose.*

dēterreō [dē, *from* + **terreō**, *frighten*], **-ēre, -uī, -itum**, v. tr. *deter, restrain, hinder.*

dētineō [dē, *down* + **teneō**, *hold*], **-ēre, -tinuī, -tentum**, v. tr. *hold back, restrain, detain.*

dētrahō [dē, *from* + **trahō**, *draw*], **-ere, -trāxī, -trāctum**, v. tr. *draw from, pull down, take off, take down.*

deus, **-ī**, m. [√ DIV-, *shine, bright*] *god, deity.*

dēvincō [dē, int. + **vincō**, *conquer*], **-ere, -vīcī, -victum**, v. tr. *conquer, defeat.*

dexter, -era, -erum, and **-tra, -trum**, adj. *right.*

dextra, **-ae**, f. [adj. from **dexter**, sc. **manus**], *right hand.*

diadēma, **-atis**, n. *royal crown, diadem.*

Dīāna, **-ae**, f. [for **Divāna**, from √ DIV-, *bright, shine*] *Diana*, ancient Roman goddess of the moon, afterwards identified with the Greek Artemis, goddess of the chase.

dīcō [√ DIC-, *show*], **-ere, dīxī, dictum**, v. tr. *say, speak, tell, call, name;* **causam dīcere**, *plead a case:* **diem dīcere**, *make an accusation against.*

dictātor, **-ōris**, m. [**dictō**, *dictate*] DICTATOR, a chief magistrate, to whom unlimited powers were granted.

dictitō [freq. of **dīcō**, *say*], **-āre, -āvī, -ātum**, v. tr. *say often, say frequently.*

diēs, **-ēī**, m., and sometimes fem. in sing. [√ DI-, *shine*], *day, time:* **in diēs**, *daily, day by day;* **diem dīcō**, *make an accusation against.*

differō [**dis**, *apart* + **ferō**, *bear*], **-ferre, distulī, dīlātum**, v. tr. *bear apart, scatter, put off, defer*, DIFFER.

difficilis, **-is, -e**, adj. [**dis**, negative + **facilis**, *easy*] DIFFICULT, *hard, perilous.*

dignitās, **-ātis**, f. [**dignus**, *worthy*] *worth, dignity, rank, authority.*

dignus, **-a, -um**, adj. *worthy, deserving.*

diligēns, **-entis**, adj. [part. of **diligō**, *love*] *industrious, attentive*, DILIGENT.

diligenter, adv. [**diligēns**, *diligent*] *industriously, attentively*, DILIGENTLY.

dīligentia, **-ae**, f. [**diligēns**, *diligent*] *industry, attentiveness*, DILIGENCE.

diligō [**dis**, *apart* + **legō**, *choose*], **-ere, -lēxī, -lēctum**, v. tr. *choose apart, esteem, love.*

dīmicō [**dis**, intens. + **micō**, *move to and fro*], **-āre, -āvī, -ātum**, v. tr. *fight struggle.*

dīmittō [**dis**, *away* + **mittō**, *send*], **-ere,**

-mīsī, -missum, v. tr. *send away*, DISMISS.

dīrigō [**dis**, intens. + **rēgō**, *lay straight*], **-ere, -rēxī, -rēctum**, v. tr. *arrange, send, aim, steer*, DIRECT.

dirimō [**dis**, *apart* + **emō**, *take*], **-ere, -ēmī, -ēmptum**, v. tr. *separate; end, settle.*

disertus, -a, -um, adj. [part. of **disserō**, *set in order*] *skilful, clever, fluent, eloquent.*

dīripiō [**dis**, *apart* + **rapiō**, *snatch*], **-ere, -uī, -reptum**, v. tr. *snatch apart, plunder, pillage.*

discēdō [**dis**, *apart* + **cēdō**, *go*], **-ere, -cessī, -cessum**, v. intr. *go apart, depart, withdraw, go off.*

discipulus, -ī, m. [**discō**, *learn*] *learner, pupil*, DISCIPLE.

discō [√ DIC-, *show*], **-ere, didicī**, ——, v. tr. *learn.*

discurrō [**dis**, *apart* + **currō**, *run*], **-currere, -currī** and **-cucurrī, -cursum**, v. intr. *run different ways, run to and fro, wander.*

dispiciō [**dis**, *apart* + **speciō**, *see*], **-ere, -spexī, -spectum**, v. tr. *discern, perceive, distinguish.*

displiceō [**dis**, neg. + **placeō**, *please*], **-ēre, -uī, -itum**, v. tr. *displease.*

dispōnō [**dis**, *apart* + **pōnō**, *put*], **-ere, -posuī, -positum**, v. tr. *place apart, arrange*, DISPOSE.

disputō [**dis**, intens. + **putō**, *think*], **-āre, -āvī, -ātum**, v. tr. *argue, discuss, dispute.*

dissimilis, -is, -e, adj. [**dis**, neg. + **similis**, *like*], *unlike, different*, DISSIMILAR.

dissimulō [**dis**, neg. + **simulō**, *make like*], **-āre, -āvī, -ātum**, v. tr. *make unlike, hide, conceal.*

distribuō [**dis**, *apart* + **tribuō**, *grant*], **-ere, -uī, -ūtum**, v. tr. *divide*, DISTRIBUTE.

diū, adv. [cf. **diēs**, *day*] *all day; long, for a long time:* comp. **diūtius**; superl. **diūtissimē.**

diūtius, adv. comp. of **diū**, *longer.*

diūturnus, -a, -um, adj. [**diū**, *long time*] *of long duration, lasting, long.*

dīversus, -a, -um, adj. [part. of **dīvertō**, *turn different ways*] *turned different ways, opposite, contrary.*

dīves, -itis [cf. **dīs**], *rich, wealthy.*

dīvidō [**dis**, *apart* + √ VID-, *see*], **-ere, -vīsī, -vīsum**, v. tr. *part*, DIVIDE, *share, distribute.*

dīvīnitus, adv. [**dīvīnus**, *divine*] *from heaven, by divine influence.*

Dīvitiacus, -ī, m. *Divitiacus*, a chief of the Aeduans.

dīvitiae, -ārum, f. [**dīves**, *rich*] *riches, wealth.*

dō [√ 1 DA-, *give*], **dare, dedī, datum**, v. tr. *give, put:* **poenās dare**, *suffer punishment.*

doceō [√ DIC-, *show*], **-ēre, -uī, doctum**, v. tr. *show, teach.*

doctrīna, -ae, f. [**doctor**, *teacher*] *teaching, learning; erudition, wisdom.*

doctus, -a, -um, adj. [**doceō**, *teach*], *taught, learned.*

doleō, -ēre, -uī, -itūrus, v. intr. *be pained, suffer.*

dolor, -ōris, m. [**doleō**, *be pained*] *pain, grief.*

dolōsē, adv. [**dolōsus**, *crafty*] *craftily, deceitfully.*

dominātiō, -ōnis, f. [**dominor**, *be lord*] *rule, power.*

dominātus, -ūs, m. [**dominor**, *be lord*] *rule, command, tyranny.*

dominor [**dominus**, *lord*], **-ārī, -ātus sum**, dep. v. intr. *be lord, be master, rule.*

dominus, -ī, m. [cf. **domō**, *tame*] *master, lord.*

domus, -ūs, f. *house, dwelling;* loc. **domī**, *at home;* acc. **domum**, *homewards, to the house;* abl. **domō**, *from home.*

dōnec, conj. *as long as, while, until.*

dōnō [**dō**, *give*], **-āre, -āvī, -ātum**, v. tr. *give, present*, DONATE.

dōnum, -ī, n. [**dō,** *give*] *gift, present.*

dorsum, -ī, n. *ridge, back.*

dubitō [**dubius,** *doubtful*], **-āre, -āvī, -ātum,** v. tr. *be in doubt,* DOUBT, *hesitate.*

dubius, -a, -um, adj. [√ DVA-, *apart, two*] *moving two ways, uncertain, doubtful.*

ducentēsimus, -a, -um, num. adj. [**ducentī,** *two hundred*] *two hundredth.*

ducentī, -ae, -a, num. adj. [**duo,** *two* + **centum,** *hundred*] *two hundred.*

dūcō [√ DVC-, *lead*], **-ere, dūxī, ductum,** v. tr. *lead, guide, construct, make; think, consider:* **in mātrimōnium dūcere,** *lead in marriage, marry.*

dulcis, -is, -e, adj. *sweet, agreeable, pleasant.*

dum, conj. *while, as long as, until.*

dummodo, cond. conj. *provided that.*

duo, duae, duo, num. adj. [√ DVA-, *two*] *two.*

duodecim, num. adj. [**duo,** *two* + **decem,** *ten*] *twelve.*

duodēnī, -ae, -a, num. adj. distr. *twelve each, twelve apiece.*

dux, ducis, m. and f. [√ DVC-, *lead*] *leader, guide, commander.*

Dȳrrāchium, -ī, n. *Dyrrachium,* a city on the coast of Illyria, where those coming from Italy landed.

E

ē, see **ex.**

ecquid, interrog. adv. *at all?*

ēdictum, -ī, n. [**ēdīcō,** *declare*] *proclamation, edict.*

ēdō [**ex,** *out of* + 2 DA-, *put*], **-ere, -didī, -ditum,** *put forth, bear, produce, tell, show.*

ēdūcō [**ex,** *out* + **dūcō,** *lead*], **-dūcere, dūxī, -ductum,** v. tr. *lead forth.*

ēducō [cf. **ēdūcō,** *lead out*], **-āre, -āvī, -ātum,** v. tr. *bring up,* EDUCATE.

efferō [**ex,** *out* + **ferō,** *bear*], **efferre, extulī, ēlātum,** v. tr. *carry out, take away,* ELATE.

efficiō [**ex,** *thoroughly* + **faciō,** *do, make*], **-ficere, -fēcī, -fectum,** v. tr. *work out, bring to pass, effect, make.*

effāgitō [**ex,** int. + **flāgitō,** *demand*], **-āre, -āvī, -ātum,** v. tr. *demand urgently, request.*

effundō [**ex,** *out* + **fundō,** *pour*], **-fundere, -fūdī, -fūsum,** v. tr. *pour out, pour forth, spread abroad, overflow.*

effūsus, part. of **effundō,** *overflowed.*

ego, pers. pron. *I.*

ēgredior [**ex,** *out* + **gradior,** *walk*], **ēgredī, ēgressus sum,** dep. v. intr. *go out, go away, go from.*

ēgregius, -a, -um, adj. [**ex,** *out* + **grex,** *flock*] *select, distinguished, noble.*

ēheu, interj. *alas.*

ēlabor [**ex,** *out* + **labor,** *slip*], **-ī, ēlapsus sum,** v. intr. dep. *slip away, escape.*

ēlaborō [**ex,** *forth* + **laborō,** *labor*], **-āre, -āvī, -ātum,** v. tr. *labor, endeavor, take pains.*

elephantus, -ī, m. *elephant.*

ēligō [**ex,** *out* + **legō,** *choose*], **-ere, -lēgī, -lēctum,** v. tr. *choose out, choose, select.*

ēloquentia, -ae, f. [**ēloquēns,** *eloquent*] *eloquence.*

ēmergō [**ex,** *out* + **mergō,** *dip*], **-ere, -mersī, -mersum,** v. intr. *come forth, emerge.* [*chase.*

emō, -ere, ēmī, ēmptum, v. tr. *buy, pur-*

enim, conj. (never first word in a clause) *for, namely, in fact.*

ēnītor [**ex,** *forth* + **nītor,** *strain*], **-ī, -nīxus** or **-nīsus,** dep. v. tr. *force away out, endeavor, strive.*

eō, adv. [**is,** *this*] *to that place, thither.*

eō [√ I-, *go*], **īre, īvī** or **iī, itum,** v. intr. *go.*

Epamīnōndās, -ae, m. *Epaminondas,* a celebrated general and statesman of Thebes.

Ephesius, -a, -um, adj. [**Ephesus**] *Ephesian, of Ephesus.*

epigramma, -atis, n. *inscription, epigram.*

Ēpīrus, -ī, f. *Epirus,* a province in northern Greece.

epistula, -ae, f. *a written communication, letter.*

eques, -itis, m. [**equus,** *horse*] *horseman, rider; cavalryman, knight.*

equester, -tris, -tre, adj. [**eques,** *horseman*] *equestrian, cavalry, of knights.*

equitātus, -ūs, m. [**eques,** *horseman*] *body of horsemen, cavalry.*

equitō [**eques,** *horseman*], **-āre, -āvī, -ātum,** v. intr. *ride.*

equus, -ī, m. *horse.*

errō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. intr. *wander, wander away, err.*

error, -ōris, m. [cf. **errō,** *wander*] *wandering, error, doubt, uncertainty.*

ērudītus, -a, -um, adj. [part. of **ērudiō,** *train*] *trained, educated, learned.*

ērumpō [**ex,** *forth* + **rumpō,** *break*] *burst forth,* **-ere, -rūpī, -ruptum,** v. intr. *break out.*

ēruptiō, -ōnis, f. [**ērumpō,** *burst forth*] *a bursting forth, sally.*

et, adv. and conj. 1, as adv. *also, too, even;* 2, as conj. *and, and yet:* **et . . . et,** *both . . . and.*

etiam, adv. [**et,** *and* + **iam,** *now*] *even yet, still, also, even now.*

Etruscī, -ōrum, m. the ETRUSCANS, the inhabitants of Etruria.

Eurīpidēs, -is, m. *Euripides,* a Greek dramatic poet.

Eurōpa, -ae, f. EUROPE.

ēvādō [**ex,** *out* + **vādō,** *go*], **-ere, -vāsī, -vāsum,** v. intr. *come out, go forth, escape,* EVADE.

ēvertō [**ē,** *out* + **vertō,** *turn*], **-ere, -tī, -sum,** v. tr. *overturn, overthrow, ruin, destroy.*

ēvocō [**ex,** *out* + **vocō,** *call*], **-āre, -āvī, -ātum,** v. tr. *call out, call forth, summon,* EVOKE.

ex, or before consonants, **ē,** prep. with abl. *out, out of, from;* of place, *out of, from;* of time, *from, since;* of source and material, *from, of;* of cause, *from, by reason of;* of measure and correspondence, *to, according to:* **ex mōre rēgis,** *after the manner of* or *like a king.*

excelsus, -a, -um, adj. [part. of **excellō,** *be eminent*] *elevated, high, tall; noble, illustrious.*

excerpō [**ex,** *out* + **carpō,** *pick*], **-ere, -psī, -ptum,** v. tr. *pick out, choose, select, gather.*

excipiō [**ex,** *out* + **capiō,** *take*], **-ere, -cēpī, -ceptum,** v. tr. *take out; receive, welcome; capture.*

excitō [freq. of **excieō,** *call out*], **-āre, -āvī, -ātum,** v. tr. *call out, summon, wake, rouse,* EXCITE.

exclāmō [**ex,** *out* + **clāmō,** *cry*], **-āre, -āvī, -ātum,** v. tr. *cry out,* EXCLAIM.

exclūdō [**ex,** *out* + **claudō,** *shut*], **-ere, -clūsī, -clūsum,** v. tr. *shut out, hinder, prevent,* EXCLUDE.

excūsō [**ex,** *free from* + **causa,** *judicial process*], **-āre, -āvī, -ātum,** v. tr. EXCUSE.

exerceō [**ex,** *out* + **arceō,** *shut*], **-ēre, -uī, -itum,** v. tr. *shut out of an enclosure, employ, train,* EXERCISE.

exercitus, -ūs, m. [**exerceō,** *train*] *the thing trained, army.*

exiguus, -a, -um, adj. *little, small, short.*

exitus, -ūs, m. [**ex,** *out* + √I-, *go*] *a going out, end, lot, death.*

eximius, -a, -um, adj. [cf. **eximō,** *take out*] *taken out, selected; uncommon, distinguished.*

eximō [**ex,** *out* + **emō,** *take*], **-ere, -ēmī, -ēmptum,** v. tr. *take out, remove, deliver, release.*

exitium, -ī, n. [**ex,** *out* + I-, *go*] *ruin, death, destruction.*

expediō [**ex,** *out* + **pēs,** *foot*], **-īre, -īvī, -ītum,** v. tr. *set free, make ready; procure, secure.*

expellō [**ex,** *out* + **pellō,** *drive*], **-ere, -pulī, -pulsum,** v. tr. *drive out, expel.*

experior, -īrī, -pertus sum, dep. v. tr. *try, prove; contend with, meet with.*

expetō [**ex,** *out* + **petō,** *seek*], **-ere, -īvī** or **-iī, -ītum,** v. tr. *seek out.*

explōrātor, -ōris, m. [**explōrō,** *investigate*] *a spy, scout.*

explōrō [**ex,** *out* + **plōrō,** *seek*], **-āre, -āvī, -ātum,** v. tr. *investigate, try, spy,* EXPLORE.

expōnō [**ex,** *forth* + **pōnō,** *put*], **-pōnere, -posuī, -positum,** v. tr. *put forth,* EXPOSE, *abandon; explain.*

expositiō, -ōnis, f. [cf. **expōnō,** *expose*] *a setting forth, exposure, abandonment.*

expūgnātiō, -ōnis, f. [**expūgnō,** *storm*] *a storming, siege.*

expūgnō [**ex,** *out to the end* + **pūgnō,** *fight*], **-āre, -āvī, -ātum,** v. tr. *take by storm, capture, overcome, conquer.*

exsistō [**ex,** *forth* + **sistō,** *stand*], **-ere, -stitī,** ——, v. intr. *stand forth, appear, become, be.*

exspectō [**ex,** *forth* + **spectō,** *look*], **-āre, -āvī, -ātum,** v. tr. *look out for, wait for, await,* EXPECT.

exstō [**ex,** *forth* + **stō,** *stand*], **-stāre,** ——, ——, v. intr. *stand forth, be extant, exist.*

extrā, prep. with acc. [**exter,** *outside*] *outside of, beyond, without.*

extrēmus, -a, -um, adj. [superl. of **exter,** *outside*] *utmost, farthest, last, extreme.*

F

fābula, -ae, f. [√FA-, *say*] *account, story, fable.*

facētē, adv. [**facētus,** *fine*] *finely, gracefully; wittily:* **facētē dicta,** *witticisms.*

facile, adv. [**facilis,** *easy*] *easily, readily.*

facilis, -is, -e, adj. [√FAC-, *make*] *easy, without difficulty.*

facinus, -oris, n. [**faciō,** *do*] *a deed, act; crime.*

faciō [√FAC-, *make, do*], **-ere, -fēcī, -factum,** v. tr. *make, do, build, perform:* **certiōrem aliquem facere,** *inform some one:* pass. **fīō, fierī, factus sum,** *be made, be done, happen:* **certior fīō,** *I am informed.*

fācundia, -ae, f. [**fācundus,** eloquent] *eloquence, command of language.*

faenum, -ī, n. *hay, fodder.*

fāma, -ae, f. [√FA-, *say*] *report, rumor, tradition; renown,* FAME, *character.*

familia, -ae, f. [**famulus,** *servant*] *the slaves in a household, family servants, domestics, household;* FAMILY.

familiāris, -is, -e, adj. [**familia,** *household*] *belonging to a family,* FAMILIAR, *intimate;* **rēs familiāris,** *property.*

fāmōsus, -a, -um, adj. [**fāma,** *report*] *much talked of; slanderous.*

fās, indecl. n. *divine law; right, duty, justice.*

fascēs, -is, m. *bundle;* pl. *fasces.*

fāstī, -ōrum, m. pl. *almanac, calendar.*

fātālis, -is, -e, adj. [**fātum,** *fate*] FATAL, *dangerous.*

faucēs, -ium, f. *throat.*

Faustulus, -ī, m. *Faustulus,* the shepherd that found Romulus and Remus and carried them home to his wife Acca (q. v.) to be brought up.

faustus, -a, -um, adj. *blessed, lucky, happy.*

fāveō, -ēre, fāvī, fautum, v. intr. FAVOR, *befriend,* with dat.

fēlīciter, adv. [**fēlix,** *lucky*] *luckily, fortunately, successfully.*

fēlix, -īx, -īx, gen. **-īcis,** adj. *lucky, fortunate, successful.*

fēmina, -ae, f. *female; woman.*

fera, -ae, f. [**ferus,** *wild*] *wild beast, wild animal.*

ferē, adv. *nearly, almost, about, for the most part.*

ferō [√FER-, *bear*], **ferre, tulī, lātum,** v. tr. *bear, carry; suffer; report, say; bring, render.*

ferōx, -ōx, -ōx, gen. **-ōcis,** adj. [cf. **ferus,** *wild*] *bold, fierce, spirited, impetuous.*

ferreus, -a, -um, adj. [**ferrum,** *iron*] *of iron, made of iron, iron.*

fertilitās, -ātis, f. [**fertilis,** *fertile*] FERTILITY.

ferus, -a, -um, adj. *wild, savage, barbarous.*

fēstīnō [**fēstīnus,** *hasty*], **-āre, -āvī, -ātum,** v. intr. *hasten, be in haste, hurry.*

fidēliter, adv. [**fidēlis,** *faithful*] *faithfully.*

fidēs, -eī, f. [√ FID-, *trust*] *trust, faith, belief; good faith.*

fidus, -a, -um, adj. [√ FID-, *trust*] *trusty, faithful.*

fierī, inf. of **fīō,** used as pass. of **faciō.**

fīlia, -ae, f. *daughter.*

fīlius, -ī, m. *son.*

fīnis, -is, m. *end, boundary, limit:* pl. *territory, country.*

fīnitimus, -a, -um, adj. [**fīnis,** *end*] *adjoining, neighboring.*

fīō, fierī, factus sum, used as pass. of **faciō** (q. v.), *be done, be made, happen.*

firmō [**firmus,** *strong*], **-āre, -āvī, -ātum,** v. tr. *make firm; strengthen, secure, fortify.*

firmus, -a, -um, adj. *strong, firm, powerful.*

flāgitō [√ FLAG-, *blaze*], **-āre, -āvī, -ātum,** v. tr. *demand, entreat.*

fleō [√ FLU-, *flow*], **flēre, flēvī, flētum,** v. intr. *weep, cry, wail.*

flōreō [**flōs,** *flower*], **-ēre, -uī,** ——, *flourish, be successful.*

flōs, flōris, m. *flower, blossom.*

fluctus, -ūs, m. [√ FLU-, *flow*] *flood, wave.*

flūmen, -inis, n. [√ FLU-, *flow*] *flood, river, stream.*

foedus, -eris, n. [√ FID-, *bind, trust*] *league, treaty, agreement.*

fōns, fontis, m. [√ FU-, *pour*] *fountain, spring,* FOUNT.

fore, foret, see **sum.**

fōrma, -ae, f. FORM, *shape, figure, looks.*

formīdō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr. *dread, fear.*

forte, adv. [abl. of **fors,** *chance*] *by chance, by accident, perhaps.*

fortis, -is, -e, gen. **is,** adj. *strong; brave, manly.*

fortissimē, adv. superl. of **fortiter.**

fortiter, adv. [**fortis,** *strong*] *strongly, bravely, boldly.*

fortitūdō, -inis, f. [**fortis,** *brave*] *strength, bravery, manliness, boldness.*

fortūna, -ae, f. [**fors,** *chance*] *chance, fate, fortune;* the goddess *Fortune.*

forum, -ī, n. [cf. **foris,** *out of doors*] *an open space, market-place, forum.* Forum Rōmānum, an open space between the Capitoline and Palatine hills, surrounded by porticos and shops, where the commercial and political life centred.

fossa, -ae, f. [**fossus,** *dug*] *ditch, trench.*

foveō, -ēre, fōvī, fōtum, v. tr. *warm; favor, assist, support.*

fabricō [**fabrica,** *workshop*], **-āre, -āvī, -ātum,** v. tr. *make, build, construct.*

fragor, -ōris, m. [√ FRAG-, *break*] *crash, noise, thunder.*

frangō, -ere, frēgī, frāctum, v. tr. *break.*

frāter, frātris, m. *brother.*

fretum, -ī, n. *strait, sound.*

frīgus, -oris, n. *cold.*

frōns, frontis, m. *forehead; front:* **ā fronte,** *in front.*

frūctus, -ūs, m. [cf. **fruor,** *enjoy*] *enjoyment; produce, crops, fruit.*

frūmentārius, -a, -um, adj. [**frūmentum,** *corn*] *of corn, fertile in corn;* **rēs frūmentāria,** *corn, supply of corn, provisions.*

frūmentum, -ī, n. [cf. **fruor,** *enjoy*] *corn, grain.*

fruor, fruī, frūctus sum, dep. v. with abl. *delight in, enjoy.*

frūstrā, adv. [cf. **fraus,** *deception*] *in error; in vain.*

fuga, -ae, f. [√ FVG-, *flee*] *flight.*

fugiō [√ FVG-, *flee*], **fugere, fūgī, fugitūrus,** v. intr. *flee, take flight.*

fugō [**fuga,** *flight*], **-āre, -āvī, -ātum,** v. tr. *put to flight, rout.*

fulmen, -inis, n. *lightning.*

futūrum esse, fut. inf. of **sum.**

Fulvius, -ī, m. *Aulus Fulvius,* one of Catiline's followers.

fundō [√ FVD-, *pour*], **-ere, fūdī, fūsum,** v. tr. *pour; scatter, rout.*

fungor, fungī, fūnctus sum, dep. v. with abl. *busy oneself, be engaged in, perform.*

fūnus, -eris, n. *burial, funeral.*

furor, -ōris, m. [**furō,** *rage*] *rage, passion, madness, fury.*

G

Gādēs, -ium, f. *Gades,* a town in southern part of Spain, now *Cadiz.*

Gāius, -ī, m. praenomen of Julius Caesar.

Gallia, -ae, f. GAUL, which included the country that is now France, Belgium, Holland, and the western parts of Germany and Switzerland.

Gallus, -ī, m. a GAUL.

Gallus, -a, -um, adj. OF GAUL, *Gallic.*

gaudeō, -ēre, gāvīsus sum, semi-dep. v. tr. *be glad, rejoice.*

gaudium, -ī, n. [cf. **gaudeō,** *rejoice*] *joy, delight.*

geminus, -a, -um, adj. *twin-born;* as a subst. plur. **gemini, -ōrum,** *twins.*

Genāva, -ae, f. *Geneva,* a town of the Allobroges on the shores of Lake Lemannus.

gener, -erī, m. [√ GEN-, *beget*] *son-in-law, daughter's husband.*

genitus, -a, -um, perf. pass. part. of **gignō,** *born.*

gēns, gentis, f. [√ GEN-, *beget*] *race, family, people, nation.*

genus, -eris, n. [√ GEN-, *beget*] *race, family; rank; class, kind, order.*

Germānus, -ī, m. a GERMAN.

gerō [√ GES-, *carry*], **gerere, gessī, gestum,** v. tr. *carry, bear, wear:* **bellum gerere,** *manage, wage a war:* **sē gerere,** *bear oneself, act, behave.*

gignō [√ GEN-, *beget*], **-ere, genuī, genitum,** v. intr. *beget, bear.*

gladius, -ī, m. *sword.*

glōria, -ae, f. GLORY, *fame, renown, honor.*

Graecia, -ae, f. GREECE.

Graecus, -ī, m. a GREEK.

grānum, -ī, n. *grain, seed.*

graphium, -ī, n. *writing-style, pen.*

grātia, -ae, f. [**grātus,** *pleasing*] *favor, regard; thanks, gratitude; influence, honor.*

grātiā [abl. of preceding], *for the sake of.*

grātus, -a, -um, adj. *dear, pleasing, pleasant, agreeable,* GRATEFUL, *thankful.*

gravis, -is, -e, adj. *heavy, severe, earnest, bitter,* GRAVE.

graviter, adv. [**gravis,** *heavy*] *heavily, severely, vehemently.*

gubernātor, -ōris, m. [**gubernō,** *steer*] *steersman, helmsman.*

H

habeō [√ HAB-, *hold*], **-ēre, -uī, -itum,** v. tr. *have, hold, keep.*

habitō [freq. of **habeō,** *hold*], **-āre, -āvī, -ātum,** v. intr. and tr. *dwell, live, inhabit.*

Hannibal, -alis, m. *Hannibal,* a great general of Carthage, who came near overthrowing Rome in the Second Punic War.

haruspex, -icis, m. *haruspex, soothsayer.*

hasta, -ae, f. *staff, spear.*

haud, adv. *not, not at all ;* in good prose only with adjectives and adverbs.

Helvētius, -a, -um, adj. a HELVETIAN, a Celtic tribe living between Iura, Lacus Lemannus, Rhodanus and Rhenus, and divided into four cantons.

Herculēs, -is, m. *Hercules*, son of Jupiter and Alcmena, the god of strength.

herī, adv. *yesterday.*

hērēs, -ēdis, m. and f. *heir.*

Hermēs, -ae, m. *Hermes, bust of Hermes*, which was placed on a square pillar before the doors of Athenian houses in honor of the god.

hīberna, -ōrum, n. pl. [**hiems**, *winter*] *winter-quarters.*

hīc, adv. *in this place, here, hereupon.*

hīc, haec, hōc, gen. **hūius**, dem. pron. *this, this of mine ;* as a pers. pron. *he, she, it*, pl. *they.*

hiems, -emis, f. *winter, winter-time, storm.*

hinc, adv. *from this place, hence.*

Hispānia, -ae, f. *Spain.*

historia, -ae, f. *history.*

hodiē, adv. [from **hōc diē**, *on this day*] *to-day.*

homŏ, -inis, m. and f. *human being, person, man.*

honestē, adv. [**honestus**, *honorable*] *honorably.*

honor, -ōris, m. *honor, esteem ; public office.*

hōra, -ae, f. *hour.*

Horātius, -I, m. *Horatius*, name of a Roman gens. See **Cocles.**

Horātius, -I, m. *Horace*, a great Roman poet.

hortor, -ārī, -ātus, dep. v. tr. *urge, encourage, exhort.*

hortus, -I, m. *garden.*

hospes, -itis, m. [cf. **hostis**, *stranger, enemy*] *entertainer, host.*

Hostĭlius, -I, m. *Hostilius*, name of a Roman gens : *Tullius Hostilius*, third king of Rome.

hostis, -is, m. and f. *stranger, foreigner, enemy.*

hūc, adv. *hither.*

hūmānitās, -ātis, f. [**hūmānus**, *human*] *human nature ; kindness ; culture, refinement.*

humī [loc. of **humus**, *ground*], *on the ground.*

humilis, -is, -e, adj. [**humus**, *ground*] *low, lowly ; small ; base, mean.*

I

iaceō [√IAC-, *go, send*], **-ēre, -uī**, ——, v. intr. *be thrown, lie.*

iaciō [√IAC-, *go, send*], **-ere, iēcī, iactum**, v. tr. *throw, cast, hurl.*

iactātiō, -ōnis, f. [**iactō**, *throw*] *tossing, shaking, motion.*

iactō [freq. of **iaciō**], **-āre, -āvī, -ātum**, v. tr. *throw, cast, hurl.*

iam, adv. *already, now, at last :* **nōn iam**, *no longer.*

Iāniculum, -I, n. [**Iānus**] *the Janiculum*, one of the hills of Rome, on which the mythical temple of Ianus was situated.

ibi, adv. [**is**] *in that place, there.*

(icō, icere), īcī, ictum, pres. system rare : v. tr. *strike, hit :* with **foedus**, *make a treaty.*

ictus, -a, -um, part. of **icō.**

īdem, eadem, idem, demon. pron. *same ; likewise, also.*

idōneus, -a, -um, *fit, proper, suitable, apt, convenient.*

Īdūs, Īduum, f. *Ides*, the 15th day of March, May, July, and October, but the 13th of the other months.

igitur, conj. (rarely first word of a clause) *therefore, then, accordingly.*

ignāvia, -ae, f. [**ignāvus**, *idle*] *idleness, worthlessness, sloth, cowardice.*

ignis, -is, m. *fire.*

ignōrō [* **ignārus**, *ignorant*, from

√ GNO-, *know*], **-āre, -āvī, -ātum**, v. tr. *not know, be ignorant of.*

ignōscō [**in**, *not* + (g)**nōscō**, *know*], **-ere, -nōvī, -nōtum**, v. intr. *pardon, forgive, indulge.*

ignōtus, -a, -um, *unknown.*

ille, illa, illud, dem. pron. *that (yonder)*: as pers. pron. *he, she, it.*

imāgō, -inis, f. [cf. **imitor**, *imitate*] *imitation, likeness, statue.*

imbellis, -is, -e, adj. [**in-**, *not* + **bellum**, *war*] *unwarlike.*

imber, -bris, m. *rain, shower, violent rain.*

immēnsus, -a, -um, adj. [**in**, *not* + **mēnsus**, *measured*] *not to be measured, immense.*

immortālis, -is, -e, adj. [**in**, *not* + **mortālis**, *mortal*] *not mortal, immortal.*

immōtus, -a, -um, adj. [**in**, *not* + **mōtus**, *moved*] *not moved, undisturbed, unmoved.*

impatiēns, -entis, adj. [**in**, *not* + **patiēns**, *suffering*] *not suffering, impatient.*

impedīmentum, -ī, n. [**impediō**, *hinder*] *that which hinders, impediment*; pl. *baggage.*

impediō [**in**, int. + **pēs**, *foot*], **-īre, -īvī, -ītum**, v. tr. *entangle; hinder, prevent.*

impēnsa, -ae, f. *expenditure, outlay.*

imperātor, -ōris, m. [**imperō**, *command*] *commander, general.*

imperfectus, -a, -um, adj. *unfinished.*

imperium, -ī, n. [**imperō**, *command*] *command, rule, power.*

imperō [**in**, *upon* + **parō**, *put*], **-āre, -āvī, -ātum**, v. intr. with dat. *put upon, command, order, rule; levy.*

impetrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr. *obtain, get, gain.*

impetus, -ūs, m. [**in**, *against* + **petō**, *strive*] *a striving against; attack, assault.*

impius, -a, -um, adj. [**in**, *not* + **pius**, *dutiful, pious*] *undutiful, unpatriotic, wicked.*

impōnō [**in**, *upon* + **pōnō**, *put*], **-ere, -posuī, -positum**, v. tr. *put* or *place upon; mount, put*; IMPOSE.

impositus, -a, -um, part. of **impōnō**.

imprīmis, adv. [**in**, *in* + **prīmus**, *first*] *especially.*

improbus, -a, -um, adj. [**in**, *not* + **probus**, *good*] *not good, wicked.*

impūgnō [**in**, *against* + **pūgnō**, *fight*], **-āre, -āvī, -ātum**, v. tr. *attack, oppose.*

īmus, *lowest*, superl. of **īnferus**.

in, prep. with acc. or abl. With acc. 1, after verbs of motion, *into, in, upon; against, towards*: 2, of purpose, *for, in order to*: with abl. 1, of place, *in, within, on, over*: 2, of time, *in, during, at.*

incendium, -ī, n. [**in**, *to* + √ CAND-, *glow*] *flame, fire, conflagration.*

incendō [**in**, *into* + √ CAND-, *glow*], **-ere, -ndī, -cēnsum** *set fire to, burn; rouse, incite.*

inceptum, -ī, n. [part. of **incipiō**, *begin*] *beginning, attempt; undertaking.*

incertus, -a, -um, adj. [**in**, *not* + **certus**, *certain*], *uncertain.*

incidō [**in**, *in, on* + **cadō**, *fall*], **-ere, -cidī, ——**, v. intr. *fall in; arise, come upon; happen.*

incitō [**in**, *on* + **citō**, *urge*], **-āre, -āvī, -ātum**, v. tr. *urge on, spur on*, INCITE.

incola, -ae, m. and f. [**incolō**, *inhabit*] *inhabitant.*

incolō [**in**, *in* + **colō**, *till, dwell*], **-ere, -uī, ——**, *be at home, dwell.*

incolumis, -is, -e, adj. *sound, uninjured, safe, unharmed.*

incrēdibilis, -is, -e, adj. [**in**, *not* + **crēdibilis**, *to be believed*] *not to be believed*, INCREDIBLE.

increpō [**in**, intens. + **crepō**, *rattle*], **-āre, -uī, -itum**, v. tr. *make resound, crash, chide, rebuke, scold.*

incumbō [**in**, *upon* + * **cumbō**, *lie*], **-ere, -cubuī, -cubitum**, v. intr. *lean upon; exert oneself; attend to.*

indicium, -ī, n. [**in**, *to* + √ DIC., *point*] *notice, information, sign.*

indicō [**index**, *one who points out*], **-āre, -āvī, -ātum**, v. tr. *point out, show, inform, indicate.*

indīcō [**in**, *to* + **dīco**, *say*] **-ere, -dīxī, -dictum**, v. tr. *declare publicly, announce, pronounce, appoint:* **bellum indīcere**, *declare war against.*

indignor [**indignus**, *unworthy*], **-ārī, -ātus sum**, v. dep. *deem unworthy; be indignant at, be angered at.*

indignus, -a, -um, adj. [**in**, *not* + **dignus**, *worthy*] *unworthy, unbecoming, undeserving.*

indō [**in**, *into, on* + √ DA-, *put*], **-ere, -didī, -ditum**, v. tr. *put into; give, confer.*

indolēs, -is, f. [**indu** (= **in**), *in* + √ OL-, *grow*] *inborn quality, nature, disposition, character.*

indulgeō, -ēre, -dulsī,(-dultum), v. intr. with dat. *be kind to, yield*, INDULGE.

industria, -ae, f. [**industrius**, *active*] *diligence, industry, zeal.*

ineō [**in**, *upon* + **eō**, *go*], **-īre, -īvī (-iī), -itum**, v. intr. *enter upon, enter, go into.*

inferior, -or, -ius, adj. [comp. of **inferus**] *lower*, INFERIOR.

inferō [**in**, *to, against* + **ferō**, *bear*], **-ferre, -tulī, inlātum** or **illātum**, v. tr. *bring in, bring against:* **bellum inferre**, *make war upon*, with dat.: **sē inferre**, *betake oneself, go.*

inferus, -a, -um, adj. *below, beneath, lower;* comp. **inferior**: superl. **īnfimus** or **īmus.**

infēstō [**infēstus**, *disturbed*], **-āre**, ——, ——, v. tr. *make unsafe, annoy, disturb.*

infēstus, -a, -um, adj. *made unsafe, disturbed, hostile.*

infimus, -a, -um, adj. [superl. of **inferus**] *lowest.*

infōrmō [**in**, *to* + **fōrmō**, *give shape*], **-āre, -āvī, -ātum**, v. tr. *shape, fashion; inform, instruct.*

infrēnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr. *bridle.*

ingemō [**in**, *at* + **gemō**, *groan*], **-ere, -uī**, ——, v. intr. *groan at, mourn, lament.*

ingenium, -ī, n. [**in**, *in* + √ GEN-, *beget*] *nature, innate quality, disposition, talent.*

ingēns, -ēns, -ēns, gen. **-entis**, adj. [**in**, *not* + √ GEN-, *beget*] *not natural; very great, vast, huge, enormous.*

iniciō [**in**, *into* + **iaciō**, *throw*], **-ere, -iēcī, -iectum**, v. tr. *throw into; apply; seize; inspire; inject.*

inimīcitia, -ae, f. [**inimīcus**, *unfriendly*] *unfriendliness, enmity, hostility.*

inimīcus, -a, -um, adj. [**in**, *not* + **amīcus**, *friendly*] *unfriendly, hostile:* as a subst. *personal foe, enemy.*

inīquus, -a, -um, adj. [**in**, *not* + **aequus**, *just*] *unjust, wrong.*

initium, -ī, n. [**in**, *upon* + √ I-, *go*] *a going in, entrance; beginning.*

iniūria, -ae, f. [**in**, *against* + **iūs**, *right*] *injustice, wrong, insult, injury.*

inlātus, part. of **inferō.**

innīxus, -a, -um [part. of **innītor**, *lean upon*], *leaning upon, supporting oneself by.*

innumerābilis, -is, -e, adj. [**in**, *not* + **numerābilis**, *to be numbered*] *not to be numbered, countless, innumerable.*

inopia, -ae, f. [**inops**, *needy*] *want, famine, need, poverty.*

inopīnātus, -a, -um, adj. [**in**, *not* + **opīnātus**, *supposed*] *unexpected.*

inquit (placed after one or more words), *said he, says he.*

inrīdeo [**in**, *at* + **rīdeō**, *laugh*], **-ēre, -rīsī, -rīsum**, v. tr. *laugh at, joke, jeer, ridicule.*

inruō [**in**, *against* + **ruō**, *rush*], **-ere, -ruī**, ——, v. intr. *rush in, rush upon, make an attack.*

inscientia, -ae, f. [**inscīō**, *not know*] *ignorance, want of knowledge.*

Inscius, -a, um, adj. [cf. **Insciō**, *not know*] *not knowing, ignorant, unaware.*

Insidiae, -ārum, f. *ambush, snares.*

Insīdeō [**in,** *on* + **sedeō**, *sit*], **-ēre, -sēdī, ——,** v. tr. *sit upon, encamp on.*

Insidior [**insidiae**, *ambush*], **-ārī, -ātus sum,** dep. v. intr. with dat. *lie in ambush, lie in wait for.*

Insigne, -is, n. *mark, proof; standard; honor.*

Insignis, -is, -e, gen. **-is** [**in,** *upon* + **signum**, *sign, mark*], *distinguished by a mark, eminent, distinguished, splendid.*

Insolenter, adv. [**Insolēns**, *unusual*] *unusually, insolently, arrogantly.*

Instituō [**in,** *into* + **statuō**, *place*], **-ere, -uī, -ūtum,** v. tr. *fix, found, train.*

Instruō [**in,** *on* + **struō**, *build*], **-ere, -xī, -ctum,** v. tr. *build on, fit out, draw up, furnish.*

Insuētus, -a, -um, adj. [part. of **Insuēscō**, *be unaccustomed*] *unaccustomed, unusual, inexperienced.*

Insula, -ae, f. *island, isle.*

Insum [**in,** *in, among* + **sum**, *am*], **-esse, -fuī,** v. intr. *be in, be among,* with dat.

intellegō [**inter,** *between* + **legō**, *choose*], **-ere, -ēxī, -ēctum,** v. tr. *perceive, understand.*

inter, prep. with acc. *among, amid, between.*

intercalārius, -a, -um, adj. *intercalary.*

intercalō [**inter,** *between* + **calō**, *call*], **-āre, -āvī, -ātum,** v. tr. *intercalate, insert in the calendar.*

interdīcō [**inter,** *between* + **dīcō**, *speak*], **-ere, -dīxī, -dictum,** v. tr. *forbid, interdict.*

intereā, adv. [**inter,** *among* + **ea**, *these things*] *meanwhile.*

interfector, -ōris, m. [**interficiō**, *kill*] *slayer.*

interficiō [**inter,** *between* + **faciō**, *make*], **-ere, -fēcī, -fectum,** v. tr. *put out of the way, kill, destroy.*

interim, adv. *in the meantime, meanwhile.*

interimō [**inter,** *within* + **emō**, *take*], **-ere, -ēmī, -ēmptum,** v. tr. *take from within, abolish, kill.*

interitus, -ūs, m. [**inter,** *among* + √I-, *go*] *overthrow, destruction, death.*

interrogō [**inter,** *among* + **rogō**, *ask*], **-āre, -āvī, -ātum,** v. tr. *ask, inquire, question.*

interrumpō [**inter,** *between* + **rumpō**, *break*], **-ere, -rūpī, -ruptum,** v. tr. *break apart, break in pieces, destroy.*

intersum [**inter,** *between, among* + **sum**, *am*], **-esse, -fuī, -futūrus,** v. intr. with dat. *be between, be among, be present.*

intumēscō [**in,** intens. + **tumēscō**, *begin to swell*], **-ere, -muī, ——,** v. intr. *rise, swell up, rage.*

invādō [**in,** *into* + **vādō**, *go*], **-ere, -vāsī, -vāsum,** v. intr. *go into, attack,* INVADE.

invehō [**in,** *in* + **vehō**, *carry*], **-ere, -vēxī, -vectum,** v. tr. *carry in;* pass. *ride in, sail in.*

invideō [**in,** *at* + **videō**, *look*], **-ēre, -vīsī, -vīsum,** v. intr. with dat. *look askance at; envy, hate, judge.*

invidia, -ae, f. [**invidus**, *envious*] *envy, jealousy, ill-will, unpopularity.*

invītus, -a, -um, adj. *against the will, unwilling.*

iocus, -ī, m. *play, joke.*

ipse, ipsa, ipsum, demon. adj. and pron. *that* or *this very* (*person*); *self, in person; he, she, it; himself, herself, itself.*

īra, -ae, f. *wrath, anger, passion.*

īrātus, -a, -um, adj. [part. of **īrāscor**, *be angry*] *angered, in anger, angry.*

is, ea, id, demon. pron. *that:* as pers. pron. *he, she, it.*

iste, ista, istud, dem. pron. *that* (*of yours*): as pers. pron. *he, she, it.*

ita, adv. *in this manner, so:* **nōn ita,** *not so, not thus.*

Ītalia, -ae, f. *Italy.*

itaque, conj. [**ita,** *thus* + **que,** *and*] *and so, and thus, accordingly.*

iter, itineris, n. [√ I-, *go*] *a going, journey, march, road, way:* **ex itinere,** *on the march.*

Iuba, -ae, m. *Juba,* a king of Numidia.

iubeō, -ēre, iūssī, iūssum, v. tr. *order, command, urge.*

iūcundus, -a, -um, adj. *pleasant, agreeable, delightful.*

iūdex, -icis, m. and f. [**iūs,** *right, law* + √ DIC-, *point out*] *judge, juror.*

iūdicium, -ī, n. [**iūdex,** *judge*] *judgment, trial; court.*

iūdicō [iūdex, *judge*], **-āre, -āvī, -ātum,** v. tr. *judge; deem, consider; declare, proclaim.*

iugulum, -ī, n. *throat, neck.*

iugum, -ī, n. [√ IUG-, *bind*] *that which binds together, a joke; ridge.*

Iūlia, -ae, f. *Julia.*

Iūlius, -ī, m. *Julius,* the name of a famous Roman gens, to which *Caius Julius Caesar* belonged.

iungō [√ IUG-, *bind*], **-ere, iūnxī, iūnctum,** v. tr. *bind together, unite, yoke.*

iūnior, -ōris, adj. [comp. of **iuvenis,** *young*] *younger.*

Iuppiter, Iovis, Iovī, Iovem, Iove, m. [√ DIV-, *shine* + **pater,** *father*] *Jupiter,* the son of Saturn, the supreme god.

iūs, iūris, n. [√ IV-, *bind*] *that which is binding, law, right, justice.*

iūsiūrandum, iūrisiūrandī, n. [**iūs,** *right* + **iūrō,** *swear*] *oath.*

iūstitia, -ae, f. [**iūstus,** *just*] *justice, equity.*

iuvenis, -is, m. and f. *young person, youth.*

L

labor, -ōris, m. [cf. **labōrō,** *toil*] *toil,* LABOR.

labōriōsē, adv. [**labōriōsus,** *toilsome*] *industriously.*

labōrō [cf. **labor,** *toil*], **-āre, -āvī, -ātum,** v. tr. *work, toil, suffer,* LABOR.

lac, lactis, n. *milk.*

lacerō [**lacer,** *mangled*], **-āre, -āvī, -ātum,** v. tr. *mangle; tear in pieces; wreck, slander, abuse.*

laetus, -a, -um, adj. *glad, merry, cheerful, pleasing.*

laeva, -ae, f. [**laevus,** *left,* sc. **manus**] *left hand.*

lambō, -ere, ——, ——, v. tr. *lick.*

lapis, -idis, m. *stone.*

Lārentia, -ae, f. *Acca Larentia,* wife of Faustulus, the king's shepherd who found Romulus and Remus.

latebra, -ae, f. [cf. **lateō,** *hide*], *hiding-place.*

lateō, -ēre, -uī, ——, v. intr. *lurk, lie hid.*

lātitūdō, -inis, f. [**lātus,** *wide*] *width, latitude.*

latrātus, -ūs, m. [**latrō,** *bark*], *a barking, a bark.*

latrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr. and intr. *bark, bark at.*

lātus, -a, -um, adj. *wide, broad.*

latus, -eris, n. *side, plank.*

laudō [**laus,** *praise*], **-āre, -āvī, -ātum,** v. tr. *praise, laud, commend.*

laurea, -ae, f. *the laurel tree, laurel crown, bay wreath.*

laus, laudis, f. [cf. **laudō,** *praise*] *praise, commendation, fame, glory.*

lectīca, -ae, f. [**lectus,** *couch*] *litter.*

lēgātiō, -ōnis, f. [**lēgō,** *send with a commission*] *embassy, legation.*

lēgātus, -ī, m. [**lēgō,** *send with a commission*] *ambassador, lieutenant.*

legiō, -ōnis, f. [**legō,** *gather*] *a gathering, body of soldiers, legion.*

legō [√ LEG-, *gather*], **-ere, lēgī, lēctum,** v. tr. *gather, collect; choose, appoint.*

Lentulus, -ī, m. *Lucius Cornelius Lentulus,* son-in-law of Cicero.

lentus, -a, -um, adj. [**lēnis,** *soft*] *pliant, slow.*

leŏ, -ōnis, m. *lion.*

lēx, lēgis, f. *law, bill, condition.*

libenter, adv. [**libēns,** *willing*] *willingly, cheerfully, gladly.*

liber, librī, m. *book.*

līber, -era, -erum, adj. *free.*

līberī, -ōrum, m. [**līber,** *free*] *free persons; children.*

līberō [**līber,** *free*], **-āre, -āvī, -ātum,** v. tr. *free, liberate.*

lībertās, -ātis, f. [**līber,** *free*] *freedom, liberty.*

lībertus, -ī, m. [**līber,** *free*] *a freedman.*

licet, -ēre, licuit or **licitum est,** impers. v. *it is permitted, it is allowed; one may.*

līgneus, -a -um, adj. [**līgnum,** *wood*] *wooden, made of wood.*

lineamentum, -ī, n. [**linea,** *string*] *line, mark; feature, lineament.*

lingua, -ae, f. *tongue; language.*

littera, -ae, f. *letter* (of the alphabet): pl. **litterae, -ārum,** f. *letter, epistle; literature.*

lītus, -oris, n. *shore.*

locus, -ī, m. pl. **locī** and **loca,** *place, spot, position.*

longē, adv. [**longus,** *long*] *far, far off; by far.*

longus, -a, -um, adv. *long.*

loquor, loquī, locūtus sum, dep. v. intr. *speak, talk.*

lūctus, -ūs, m. [cf. **lūgeō,** *mourn*] *sorrow, grief, mourning, distress.*

lūcus, -ī, m. [√ LVC-, *shine*] *sacred grove; wood, grove.*

lūdibrium, -ī, n. [**lūdus,** *play*] *mockery, derision.*

(lūdicer), -cra, -crum, adj. [**lūdus,** *play*] *belonging to play, done in sport, sportive.*

lūdō [cf. **lūdus,** *play*], **-ere, lūsī, lūsum,** v. intr. *play.*

lūdus, -ī, m. *play, game; school:* pl. *public games.*

lūgeō, -ēre, lūxī, lūctum, v. tr. *lament, bewail, mourn.*

lūmen, -inis, n. [√ LVC-, *shine*] *light.*

lūna, -ae, f. [√ LVC-, *shine*] *moon.*

lupa, -ae, f. [cf. **lupus,** *wolf*] *she-wolf.*

lupus, -ī, m. [cf. **lupa,** *she-wolf*] *wolf.*

lūstrō [**lūstrum,** *purification*], **-āre, -āvī, -ātum,** v. tr. *light up, review.*

lūx, lūcis, f. [√ LVC-, *shine*] *light; day, daylight;* **prīmā lūce,** *at daybreak.*

lūxuria, -ae, f. [**lūxus**] *luxuriance; luxury, extravagance.*

M

Macedonia, -ae, *Macedonia,* a country north of Greece.

maestus, -a, -um, adj. *sad, sorrowful, gloomy.*

magis, adv. [cf. **māgnus,** *great*] *more, rather.*

magister, -trī, m. *master, teacher, commander.*

magistrātus, -ūs, m. [**magister,** *master*] *office of master, civil office, magistracy; magistrate.*

māgnitūdō, -inis, f. [**māgnus,** *great*] *greatness, size, magnitude.*

māgnopere, adv. [abl. of **māgnum opus,** *great work*] *very much, greatly, exceedingly.*

māgnus, -a, -um, adj. *great, large:* comp. **māior;** superl. **māximus.**

māior, -or, -ius, gen. **-ōris** [comp. of **māgnus**], *greater, larger.*

male, adv. [**malus,** *bad*] *badly, wrongly, unsuccessfully:* comp. **pēius;** superl. **pessimē.**

mālō [**magis,** *rather* + **volō,** *wish*], **mālle, māluī,** ——, v. tr. *wish rather, choose rather, prefer.*

malum, -ī, n. [**malus,** *bad*] *bad thing, evil.*

malus, -a, -um, *bad, evil, not good:* comp. **pēior;** sup. **pessimus.**

mandō [**manus,** *hand* + √ DA-, *put*],

-āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr. *put in hand, order, command.*

maneō [√ MAN-, *stay*], **-ēre, mānsī, mānsum,** v. intr. *stay, remain, wait.*

manō, -āre, -āvī, ——, v. intr. *flow, run; spread.*

manus, -ūs, f. [√ MA-, *measure*] *hand; band, force, troops.*

mare, -is, n. *sea.*

Mare Superum, *the Upper Sea.*

Marius, -ī, m. *Marius.*

Māvs, Mārtis, m. *Mars,* the god of war; *war, battle.*

Mārtius, -a, -um, adj. *of Mars, of March.*

māter, -tris, f. *mother.*

mātrimōnium, -ī, n. [**māter,** *mother*] *wedlock, marriage:* **in mātrimōnium dūcere,** *lead in marriage, marry:* **in mātrimōnium dare,** *give in marriage, marry.*

mātrōna, -ae, f. [**māter,** *mother*] *married woman, wife, mother,* MATRON.

mātūrō [**mātūrus,** *timely*], **-āre, -āvī, -ātum,** v. tr. *ripen; make haste, hasten.*

mātūrus, -a, -um, adj. *mature, ripe, timely, seasonable, proper.*

māximē, adv. [**māximus,** *greatest*] *most, greatly, especially.*

māximus, -a, -um, adj. [sup. of **māgnus**] *greatest, largest.*

medicīna, -ae, f. [**medicus,** *physician*] *the art of healing, medicine.*

medicus, -ī, m. *physician, surgeon.*

meditor, -ārī, -ātus sum, dep. v. tr. *consider, plan, devise.*

melior, -or, -ius, adj. comp. of **bonus,** *better.*

meminī, -isse [√ MAN-, MEN-, *mind*], only used in the perfect tenses, *recall, call to mind, recollect, call to mind.*

memorābilis, -is, -e, adj. [**memor,** *mindful*] *memorable, noteworthy.*

memoria, -ae, f. [**memor,** *mindful*] MEMORY, *remembrance.*

mēns, mentis, f. [√ MAN-, MEN-, *mind*] *mind, feeling, plan.*

mēnsa, -ae, f. [from **mēnsus,** part. of **metior,** *from* √ MA-, *measure*] *table.*

mēnsis, -is, m. [√ MA-, *measure*] *month.*

mentior, -īrī, -ītus sum, dep. v. intr. *lie, tell a lie.*

mercātor, -ōris, m. [**mercor,** *trade*] MERCHANT, *trader.*

Mercurius, -ī, m. MERCURY, the messenger of the gods.

mereō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, v. tr. *deserve, earn, win,* MERIT.

mergō, -ere, mersī, mersum, v. tr. *plunge, sink.*

merx, -cis, f. *goods, wares.*

metuō [**metus,** *fear*], **-ere, -uī,** ——, v. tr. *fear, dread.*

meus, -a, -um, poss. adj. [**mē,** *me*] *of me, my, mine.*

mīles, -itis, m. and f. *soldier.*

Mīlētus, -ī, f. *Miletus,* a city of Ionia in Asia Minor.

mīliēns, *a thousand times.*

mīlitāris, -is, -e, adj. [**mīles,** *soldier*] *of a soldier, of war:* **rēs mīlitāris,** *art of war.*

mīlitia, -ae, f. [**mīles,** *soldier*] *military service:* **mīlitiae** (loc. gen.), *in war, in the field.*

Memmius, -ī, m. *Caius Memmius Gemellus,* a famous Roman.

mīlle, num. adj. indecl. in sing.; pl. **mīlia, mīlium, mīlibus,** n. *thousand.*

Miltiadēs, -is, m. *Miltiades,* a famous Greek general, who defeated the Persians at the battle of Marathon.

minimē, adj. [sup. of **parum,** *little*] *least, least of all, very little; by no means, not at all.*

minimus, -a, -um, adj. [sup. of **parvus,** *small*] *smallest, least.*

minitor [freq. of **minor,** *threaten*], **-ārī, -ātus sum,** dep. v. tr. *threaten, menace.*

minor, -or, -us, gen. **-ōris,** adj. [comp. of **parvus,** *small*] *smaller.*

minor, -ārī, -ātus sum, v. tr. *threaten.*

mīrābilis, -is, -e, adj. [**mīror,** *wonder at*] *wonderful, strange, marvellous.*

mīrificus, -a, -um, adj. [**mīrus,** *wonderful* + √ FAC-, *make*] *wonderful, marvellous.*

mīror [**mīrus,** *wonderful*], **-ārī, -ātus sum,** dep. v. tr. *wonder, wonder at, admire.*

mīrus, -a, -um, adj. [cf. **mīror**] *wonderful, marvellous, amazing.*

miser, -era, -erum, adj. *wretched, unhappy,* MISERABLE.

miseret [**miser,** *wretched*], **-ēre, -uit, -itum est,** impers. v. *it grieves, makes miserable.*

missiō, -ōnis, f. [**mittō,** *send*] *sending; release, discharge.*

mītēscō, -ere [**mītis,** *mild*], v. intr. *become mild* or *mellow, grow gentle.*

Mithridātēs, -is, m. *Mithridates,* king of Pontus.

mittō [√ MIT-, *send*], **-ere, mīsī, missum,** v. tr. *send, let go.*

Mitylēnae, -ārum, f. *Mitylene,* a city of Greece.

moderātiō, -ōnis, f. [**moderor,** *set bounds to*] *moderation, self-control.*

mōdo, adv. [abl. of **modus,** *measure*] *only, merely:* **modo ... modo,** *sometimes ... sometimes.*

modus, -ī, m. *measure, manner, mode.*

moenia, -ium, n. pl. [√ MV-, *shut*] *defensive walls, city walls, walls.*

molestia, -ae, f. [**molestus,** *troublesome*] *trouble, annoyance, vexation.*

molestus, -a, -um, adj. [**mōlēs,** *mass*] *troublesome, annoying.*

mōlior [**mōlēs,** *mass*], **-īrī, -ītus sum,** dep. v. tr. *endeavor, do, undertake.*

Molō, -ōnis, m. *Apollonius Molo,* of Rhodes, a celebrated Greek rhetorician.

mōmentum, -ī, n. [√ MOV-, *move*] *movement; moment, instant.*

moneō [√ MAN-, *mind*], **-ēre, -uī, -itum,** v. tr. *remind, advise, warn.*

mōns, montis, m. [√ MAN-, *project*] MOUNTAIN.

mōnstrō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr. *show, point out.*

mora, -ae, f. *delay.*

morbus, -ī, m. *sickness, disease.*

morior [√ MAR-, *die*], **morīrī** and **morī, mortuus sum,** dep. v. intr. *die.*

moror [**mora,** *delay*], **-ārī, -ātus sum,** dep. v. tr. and intr. *delay, remain, retard, detain.*

mors, mortis, f. [√ MAR-, *die*], *death.*

mōs, mōris, m. [√ MA-, *measure*] *manner, habit, custom; conduct, character.*

mortuus, from **morior.**

moveō [√ MOV-, *move*], **-ēre, mōvī, mōtum,** v. tr. MOVE, *remove.*

mox, adv. *soon, presently.*

mulier, -eris, f. *woman.*

multiplex, -icis, adj. [**multus,** *many* + √ PLEC-, *fold*] *manifold, many.*

multitūdō, -inis, f. [**multus,** *much*] *great number, crowd, multitude.*

multō, adv. [abl. of **multum,** *much*] *by much, much, a great deal.*

multus, -a, -um, adj. *much,* pl. *many:* comp. **plūs;** superl. **plūrimus.**

mundus, -ī, m. *world; heavens.*

mūniō [**moenia,** *defensive walls*], **-īre, -īvī, -ītum,** v. tr. *defend with a wall, fortify; build.*

mūnītiō, -ōnis, f. [**mūniō,** *defend with a wall*] *a fortifying; defence, fortification.*

munus, -eris, n. [√ MV-, *fasten*] *service, office, duty; reward, gift.*

mūrus, -ī, m. [√ MV-, *shut, fasten*] *wall, city wall.*

mūtō [freq. of **moveō,** *move*], **-āre, -āvī, -ātum,** v. tr. *move often; change, alter.*

N

nam, conj. *for.*

nancīscor, nancīscī, nactus or **nanctus sum,** dep. v. tr. *get, find, meet with.*

nārrō [√ GNA-, *know*], **-āre, -āvī, -ātum**, v. tr. *make known, tell, say.*

nāscor [√ GEN-, GNA-, *beget*], **nāscī, nātus sum**, dep. v. intr. *be born, spring from, arise.*

nāsus, -ī, m. *a nose.*

nātiō, -ōnis, f. [cf. **nātus**, *birth*] *a being born; race*, NATION.

nātū [abl. of **nātus**], *by birth; in age.*

nātūra, -ae, f. [√ GEN-, GNA-, *beget*] *birth;* NATURE.

(nātus, -ūs), m. used only in abl. sing. [√ GEN-, GNA-, *beget*] *birth, age.*

naufragium, -ī, n. [**nāvis**, *ship* + √ FRAG-, *break*] *shipwreck.*

nauta, -ae, m. [for **nāvita**, from **nāvis**, *ship*] *sailor.*

nāvicula, -ae, f. [**nāvis**, *ship*] *a small vessel, boat, skiff.*

nāvigium, -ī, n. [**nāvis**, *ship*] *vessel, ship, boat.*

nāvis, -is, f. *ship.*

nē, neg. conj. of purpose, *that not, lest;* with subjv. in wishes, commands, etc., *not.*

-ne, interrog. adv. enclitic: it is not translated and simply asks a question without implying anything as to the answer.

nec, see **neque.**

necessārius, -a, -um, adj. [**necesse**, *necessary*] NECESSARY, *needful.*

necessitās, -ātis, f. [**necesse**, *necessary*] NECESSITY, *need.*

necō [cf. **nex**, *death*], **-āre, -āvī, -ātum**, v. tr. *slay, kill.*

nefās, n. indecl. [**nē**, *not* + **fās**, *divine law*] *something contrary to divine law; sin, crime.*

negō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr. *say no, deny, refuse, say not.*

negōtium, -ī, n. [**nec**, *not* + **ōtium**, *leisure*] *business, occupation; trouble, difficulty.*

nēmŏ, —, dat. **nēminī**, acc. **nēminem**, gen. and abl. supplied by **nūllīus homi-nis** and **nūllō homine**, m. and f. [**nē**, *not, no* + **homō**, *person*] *no one, no man, nobody.*

neque or **nec**, conj. [**nē**, *not* + **que**, *and*] *and not, nor:* **neque . . . neque**, *neither . . . nor.*

neuter, -tra, -trum, pron. and adj. [**nē**, *not* + **uter**, *either*] *neither the one nor the other, neither.*

nex, necis, f. [**necō**, *kill*] *death, murder, slaughter.*

niger, -gra, -grum, adj. *black, dark.*

nihil, n. indecl. [**nī**, *not* + **hīlum**, *a whit*] *nothing.*

nihildum, indec. n. *nothing as yet.*

nisi, conditional conj. [**nī**, *not* + **sī**, *if*] *if not, unless, except.*

nitēns, -ntis, adj. [part. of **niteō**, *shine*] *shining, brilliant; illustrious, distinguished.*

nix, nivis, f. *snow.*

nō, nāre, nāvī, —, v. intr. *swim.*

nōbilis, -is, -e, adj. [√ GNO-, *know*] *well-known, famous; high-born, noble.*

nōbilitās, -ātis, f. [**nōbilis**, *known*] *fame; nobility, aristocracy.*

nocеō [cf. **necō**, *kill*], **-ēre, -uī, -itūrus**, v. intr. with dat. *harm, hurt, injure.*

noctū, adv. [**nox**, *night*] *by night, at night.*

nocturnus, -a, -um, adj. [**nox**, *night*] *at night, nocturnal.*

nōlī, nōlīte, imperat. mood of **nōlō**, used with the infin. of other verbs to represent the neg. imperat. and translated *do not, don't.*

nōlō [**nōn**, *not* + **volō**, *will*], **nōlle, nōluī**, —, v. tr. *be unwilling, will not, wish not.*

nōmen, -inis, n. [√ GNO-, *know*] *means of knowing, name.*

nōminō [**nōmen**, *name*], **-āre, -āvī, -ātum**, v. tr. *name, call by name.*

nōn, neg. adv. [**nē**, *not* + **ūnum**, *one*] *not, by no means, not at all.*

nōnne, interrog. adv. expecting an affirmative answer, *not.*

nōnnūllus, -a, -um, adj. [**nōn,** *not* + **nūllus,** *none*] *not none, some.*

nōnnumquam, adv. [**nōn,** *not* + **numquam,** *never*] *sometimes.*

nōs, pers. pron. pl. of **ego,** *we, us.*

nōscō [√ GNO-, *know*], **-ere, nōvī, nōtum,** v. tr. *learn, know.*

noster, -tra, -trum, poss. adj. [**nōs,** *we*] *our, ours, of us.*

novus, -a, -um, *new, young:* **novissimum āgmen,** *rear line.*

nox, noctis, f. [cf. **noceō,** *harm*] *night.*

nūbēs, -is, f. [√ NUB-, *cloud*] *cloud.*

nūbō [cf. **nūbēs,** *cloud*] **-ere, nūpsī, nūptum,** v. intr. with dat. *veil oneself for; marry,* used of the woman.

nūllus, -a, -um, gen. **nūllīus,** dat. **nūllī,** adj. [**nē,** *not* + **ūllus,** *any*] *not any, none, no.*

num, interrog. adv. expecting a negative answer: in indirect questions, the neg. force is lost and **num** means simply *whether.*

numerō [**numerus,** *number*], **-āre, -āvī, -ātum,** v. tr. *count, pay.*

numerus, -ī, n. *number, quantity, amount.*

Numida, -ae, m. a NUMIDIAN.

Numidia, -ae, f. *Numidia,* a province of Northern Africa.

Numitor, -ōris, m. *Numitor,* king of Alba Longa, father of Rhea Silvia and grandfather of Romulus and Remus.

numquam, adv. [**nē,** *not* + **umquam,** *ever*] *not ever, never.*

nunc, adv. *now, at present, at this time.*

nūntius, -ī, m. [cf. **nūntiō,** *report*] *bearer of news, messenger.*

nūper, adv. [for **noviper,** from **novus,** *new, recent*] *newly; recently, lately.*

nūptus and **nūptum,** from **nūbō.**

nūsquam, adv. [**nē,** *not* + **ūsquam,** *anywhere*] *nowhere, in no place.*

nūtō [**nuō,** *nod*], **-āre, -āvī, -ātum,** v. tr. *nod, waver.*

O

Ō, interjec. *O! oh!*

ob, prep. with acc. *on account of, for.*

obiciō [**ob,** *before, against* + **iaciō,** *throw*], **-ere, -iēcī, -iectum,** v. tr. *throw before, cast before, expose; set against, oppose.*

oblītus, -a, -um, adj. with gen. [part. of **oblīviscor,** *forget*] *forgetful, unmindful.*

oblīviscor, oblītus sum, verb dep. with gen. *forget.*

obnoxius, -a, -um, adj. [**ob,** *to* + **noxius,** *hurtful*] *liable, exposed.*

obruō [**ob,** intens. + **ruō,** *rush down*], **-ere, -uī, -ūtum,** v. tr. *rush down violently, overwhelm, cover; bury; slay, destroy.*

obses, -idis, m. and f. [**ob,** *before* + √ SED-, *sit*] *one who sits as a pledge, hostage.*

obsidiō, -ōnis, f. [cf. **obsideō,** *sit before*] *siege, blockade.*

obsistō [**ob,** *against* + **sistō,** *stand*], **-ere, -stitī, -stitum,** v. intr. with dat. *oppose, resist.*

obstupefaciō [**ob,** *before* + **stupefaciō,** *astonish*], **-facere, -fēcī, -factum,** v. tr. *astonish, amaze,* STUPEFY.

obsum [**ob,** *against* + **sum,** *am*], **-esse, -fuī,** ——, v. intr. with dat. *be against, be opposed to; injure.*

obtineō [**ob,** *before* + **teneō,** *hold*], **-ēre, -tinuī, -tentum,** v. tr. *hold before;* OBTAIN; *keep.*

obtingō [**ob,** *to* + **tangō,** *touch*], **-ere, -igī,** ——, v. intr. *fall to the lot of, befall.*

obtrectātor, -ōris, m. [**obtrectō,** *belittle*] *detractor, disparager, traducer.*

obveniō [**ob,** *before* + **veniō,** *come*], **-īre, -vēnī, -ventum,** v. intr. with dat. *come before, fall by lot.*

obviam, adv. [**ob viam,** *in the way*] *in the way; towards:* **obviam eō,** *go to meet.*

obvolūtus, -a, -um, adj. [part. of **obvolvō,** *roll around*] *covered, wrapped up.*

obvolvō [**ob**, *completely* + **volvō**, *roll*], **-ere, -vī, -volūtum**, v. tr. *roll around, cover, wrap up.*

occāsiō, -ōnis, f. [**ob**, *to* + √CAD-, *fall*] *favorable moment, occasion.*

occīdō [**ob**, *down* + **caedō**, *strike*], **-ere, -cīdī, -cīsum**, v. tr. *strike down, cut down, kill.*

occupō [**ob**, intens. *completely* + √CAP-, *take*], **-āre, -āvī, -ātum**, v. tr. *take completely, seize*, OCCUPY.

oceānus, -ī, m. OCEAN.

octō, num. adj. *eight.*

oculus, -ī, m. [√AC-, *sharp*] *eye.*

odium, -ī, n. *hatred, hate, aversion.*

offendō [**ob**, *against* + ***fendō**, *strike*], **-ere, -ndī, -nsum**, v. tr. *strike against*, OFFEND, *displease.*

offerō [**ob**, *before* + **ferō**, *bear*], **-ferre, obtulī, oblātum**, v. tr. *bear before, present, show*, OFFER.

officium, -ī, n. [for **opificium**, from **opus**, *work* + √FAC-, *do*] *service, kindness, duty, business.*

ōlim, adv. *at that time, formerly, once, once upon a time.*

omnis, -is, -e, adj. *all, every, whole.*

opera, -ae, f. [**opus**, *work*] *service, work, assistance:* **operam dare**, *give attention to.*

oportet, oportēre, oportuit, impers. v. *it is necessary, is proper, behooves.*

oppidānus, -ī, m. [**oppidum**, *town*] *townsman.*

oppidum, -ī, n. [**ob**, *on* + ***pedum** (cf. Gr. πέδον), *ground*] *town, city.*

opportūnus, -a, -um, adj. [**ob**, *before* + ***portūnus**, from **portus**, *harbor*] *fit, suitable, favorable*, OPPORTUNE.

oppositus, -a, -um, adj. [part. of **oppōnō**, *set against*] *opposed*, OPPOSITE.

opprimō [**ob**, *down* + **premō**, *press*], **-ere, -pressī, -pressum**, v. tr. *press down; overthrow, crash.*

oppūgnō [**ob**, *against* + **pūgnō**, *fight*], **-āre, -āvī, -ātum**, v. tr. *fight against, storm, besiege.*

(ops), opis, f. (no nom. or dat. sing.) *aid, power, influence.*

optimās, -ātis, *f.* [**optimus**, *best*] *aristocrat, patrician.*

optimus, -a, -um, adj. [superl. of **bonus**] *best.*

optiō, -ōnis, f. [cf. **optō**, *choose*] *choice.*

optō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr. *choose, prefer; wish, pray for.*

opus, -eris, n. *work, labor; need, want.*

ōrātiō, -ōnis, f. [**ōrō**, *speak*] *speaking, speech, oration.*

ōrātor, -ōris, m. [**ōrō**, *speak*] *one who speaks, orator.*

orbis, -is, m. *circle, orb:* **orbis terrārum**, *earth, world.*

ōrdinō [**ōrdō**, *row, line*], **-āre, -āvī, -ātum**, v. tr. *set in order, arrange.*

ōrdō, -inis, m. [√OL-, √OR-, *grow*] *row, line, order, rank.*

Orgetorīx, -īgis, m. *Orgetorix*, a Helvetian noble.

orior [√OL-, √OR-, *grow, rise*], **-īrī, ortus sum**, dep. v. intr. *arise, rise, start, begin.*

ōrnāmentum, -ī, n. [**ōrnō**, *fit out*] *that which adorns, jewel, ornament.*

ōrnātus, -a, -um, adj. [**ōrnō**, *fit out*] *fitted out, adorned, decorated; eminent, illustrious.*

ōrnō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr. *fit out, adorn, furnish.*

ōrō [**ōs**, *mouth*], **-āre, -āvī, -ātum**, v. tr. and intr. *speak; plead, pray, beg.*

ōs, ōris, n. *mouth; face, features.*

ostendō [**ob(s)**, *before* + **tendō**, *stretch*], **-ere, -dī, -tum**, v. tr. *stretch out before, show, display.*

ōtiōsus, -a, -um, adj. [**ōtium**, *leisure*] *full of leisure, at leisure, disengaged, free from public cares.*

ōtium, -ī, n. [√AV-, *delight*] *leisure, freedom from business; ease, rest.*

P

paene, adv. *almost, nearly.*

paenitĕō [cf. **poena**, *penalty*], **-ēre, -uī, ——**, *make sorry;* used impersonally, *it repents, dissatisfies.*

pāgus, -ī, m. *a district, canton.*

palam, adv. *openly, plainly, publicly.*

palūs, -ūdis, f. *swamp, marsh, pool.*

pār, paris, adj. *equal, like, well-matched.*

parātus, -a, -um, adj. with dat. or **ad** and acc. [part. of **parō**, *prepare*] *prepared, ready.*

parcō, -ere, pepercī or **parsī, parsum**, v. intr. with dat. *spare.*

parcus, -a, -um, adj. *sparing, frugal.*

parēns, -entis, m. and f. [part. of **pariō**, *beget*] *parent, father, mother.*

pareō, -ēre, -uī, ——, v. intr. with dat. *appear; obey, be subject to.*

pariter, adv. *equally, alike.*

parō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr. *make ready, prepare, plan.*

parricīdium, -ī, n. [**parricīda**, *a parricide*] *murder of a father, parricide.*

pars, partis, f. *part, piece, share.*

Parthī, -ōrum, m. *Parthians*, a people living south of the Caspian Sea.

parvulus, adj. dim. [**parvus**, *small*] *very small;* as subst. *infant.*

parvus, -a, -um, adj. *small, little, short:* comp. **minor**; superl. **minimus.**

passus, -ūs, m. [**patĕō**, *stretch*] *step, pace:* **mīlle passūs**, *thousand paces, mile.*

passus, -a, -um, adj. [part. of **pandō**, *spread out*] *outspread, extended; dishevelled.*

pāstor, -ōris, m. [√ PA-, *feed*] *one who feeds; herdsman, shepherd.*

patefaciō [**patĕō**, *lie open* + **faciō**, *make*], **-ere, -fēcī, -factum**, v. tr. *lay open, disclose, expose.*

pater, patris, m. [√ PA-, *feed*], *one who feeds; father:* pl. *senators.*

paternus, -a, -um, adj. [**patĕr**, *father*] *of a father; paternal.*

patiēns, -ntis, adj. [part. of **patior**] *suffering, enduring, capable of enduring,* PATIENT.

patienter, adv. [**patiēns**, *patient*] *with patience,* PATIENTLY.

patientia, -ae, f. [**patiēns**, *patient*] PATIENCE, *endurance.*

patior, patī, passus sum, v. dep. tr. *suffer, bear, endure.*

patria, -ae, f. [fem. of **patrius**, *ancestral*, sc. **terra**, *land*] *native land, fatherland.*

patrimōnium, -ī, n. [**pater**, *father*] *inheritance from a father,* PATRIMONY.

patrōnus, -ī, m. [**pater**, *father*] *protector,* PATRON, *advocate, pleader.*

paucus, -a, -um, adj. usually plural, *few, little.*

paulum, adj. *for a little while.*

pāx, pācis, f. *peace, treaty, compact, agreement.*

pectus, -oris, n. *breast.*

pecūnia, -ae, f. [**pecus**, *cattle*, the earliest kind of wealth] *wealth, property, riches; money.*

pecus, -oris, n. *cattle*, of all kinds; *flock, herd.*

pedes, -itis, m. [**pēs**, *foot*] *foot-soldier.*

pēior, -or, -us, gen. **-ōris**, adj. [comp. of **malus**, *bad*] *worse.*

pellō [√ PEL-, *drive*], **-ere, pepulī, pulsum**, v. tr. *drive, hurl; banish; expel.*

per, prep. with acc. of space, *through, across;* of time, *during;* of agency or means, *by the agency of, by means of.*

peragrō [**per**, *through* + **ager**, *field*], **-āre, -āvī, -ātum**, v. tr. *wander through, traverse, pass through.*

percussor, -ōris, m. [cf. **percutiō**, *strike*] *striker, murderer.*

percutiō [**per**, *thoroughly* + **quatiō**, *strike*], **-ere, -cussī, -cussum**, v. tr. *strike thoroughly, overthrow, defeat, slay.*

perdō [**per**, *through* + √ 2 DA-, *put*],

-ere, -didī, -ditum, v. tr. *destroy, squander, waste, lose.*

perdūcō [**per,** *through* + **dūcō,** *lead*], **-ere, -dūxī, -ductum,** v. tr. *lead through, lead, conduct.*

peregrīnus, -a, -um, adj. [**per,** *through* + **ager,** *field*] *foreign.*

perfacilis, -is, -e, adj. [**per,** *through* + **facilis,** *easy*] *very easy.*

perferō [**per,** *through* + **ferō,** *bear*], **-ferre, -tulī, -lātum,** v. tr. *bear through, spread abroad; announce; suffer.*

perficiō [**per,** *thorough* + **faciō,** *do*], **-facere, -fēcī, -fectum,** v. tr. *do thoroughly, accomplish, complete.*

perfidus, -a, -um, adj. [**per,** *breaking through* + √ FID-, *trust*] *promise-breaking, treacherous, faithless.*

perīculōsus, -a, -um, adj. [**perīculum,** *trial*] *dangerous, perilous.*

perīculum, -ī, n. *trial, danger, peril, risk.*

perītus, -a, -um, adj. [part. of **perior,** *try*] *experienced, trained, skilful.*

permoveō [**per,** *thoroughly* + **moveō,** *move*], **-ēre, -mōvī, -mōtum,** v. tr. *move deeply, induce, persuade.*

perōrō [**per,** *to the end* + **ōrō,** *speak*], **-āre, -āvī, -ātum,** v. tr. *speak to the end, plead at length.*

perpetuus, -a, -um, adj. *continuous:* **in perpetuum,** *forever;* **perpetuō,** *forever.*

persaepe, adv. [**per,** *very* + **saepe,** *often*] *very often.*

persequor [**per,** *completely* + **sequor,** *follow*], **-ī, -cūtus sum,** v. dep. tr. *follow completely, pursue.*

persuādeō [**per,** *completely* + **suādeō,** *persuade*], **-ēre, -suāsī, -suāsum,** v. intr. with dat. PERSUADE.

pertaesum est, impers. v. [perf. of **pertaedet,** *it wearies completely*] *it wearies, it disgusts, it makes sick:* **pertaesus,** p. p. *being disgusted at.*

perterritus, -a, -um, adj. [part. of **perterreō,** *thoroughly frighten*] *thoroughly frightened.*

pertināciter, adv. [**pertinācis,** *persevering*] *perseveringly, stubbornly.*

pertineō [**per,** *through to the end* + **teneō,** *hold*], **-ēre, -uī,** ——, v. intr. *stretch out, reach, extend.*

perturbō [**per,** *thoroughly* + **turbō,** *disturb*], **-āre, -āvī, -ātum,** v. tr. *disturb, confuse, confound.*

pēs, pedis, m. *foot:* **pedem referre,** *retreat.*

pessimus, -a, -um, adj. [sup. of **malus**] *worst.*

petītio, -ōnis, f. [**petō,** *seek*] *attack; candidacy, petition.*

petō, -ere, -īvī or **-ī, -ītum,** v. tr. *strive for, seek; demand, beg.*

Pharnacēs, -is, m. *Pharnaces,* son of Mithridates.

Pharsālicus, -a, -um, adj. PHARSALIAN.

philosophia, -ae, f. PHILOSOPHY.

philosophus, -ī, m. a PHILOSOPHER.

pietās, -ātis, f. [**pius,** *dutiful*] *dutiful conduct,* PIETY, *duty.*

pigeō, -ēre, -uī and **pigitum est,** v. tr. *feel annoyance;* usually impers. *it irks, disgusts, displeases.*

piger, -gra, -grum, adj. *slow, lazy.*

pīlum, -ī, n. *javelin.*

pīrāta, -ae, m. *sea-robber, pirate.*

piscis, -is, m. *fish.*

Placentia, -ae, f. *Placentia,* a city in Cisalpine Gaul.

placeō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, v. intr. with dat. *please, seem best;* impers. *it is determined, is agreed upon.*

plaga, -ae, f. *stroke, blow.*

plānitiēs, -ēī, f. [**plānus,** *smooth*] *level ground, plain.*

plēbs, plēbis, or **plēbēs, -eī** or **-ī,** f. [√ PLE-, *fill*] *the common people, commons, plebeians.*

plēnus, -a, -um, adj. [√ PLE-, *fill*] *full, filled.*

plērīque, plērōrumque, m. *most people, very many.*

Plīnius, -ī, m. *Caius Plinius Secundus*, a famous Roman writer.

plūrimus, -a, -um, adj. [superl. of **multus**, *much*] *most, very many.*

plūs, plūris, adj. [comp. of **multus**, *much*] *more.*

pōculum, -ī, n. *cup, bowl.*

poena, -ae, f. [**pūniō**, *punish*] *satisfaction, punishment, penalty.*

poēta, -ae, m. *poet.*

polliceor [**prō**, *forth* + **liceor**, *bid*], **-ērī, -itus sum**, dep. v. tr. *promise.*

Pompēiānus, -a, -um, adj. *of Pompey, Pompey's.*

Pompēius, -ī, m. *Pompey*, Cn. Pompēius Māgnus, the enemy of Caesar.

Pomptīnus, -a, -um, adj. *Pomptine*, the marshes on the coast of Latium.

pōnō [for **posinō** from **por** (**prō**), *forth* + **sinō**, *set*], **-ere, posuī, positum**, *put down, put, place:* **castra pōnere**, *pitch camp.*

pōns, pontis, m. *bridge.*

ponticulus, -ī, m. [**pōns**, *bridge*] *a little bridge.*

Pontus, -ī, m. *Pontus*, province in Northern Asia Minor.

populus, -ī, m. [√ PLE-, *fill*] *people, nation.*

Porsena, -ae, m. *Lars Porsena*, king of Etruria.

porta, -ae, f. *city-gate, gate, door.*

porticus, -ūs, f. [**porta**, *gate*] *a covered walk, colonnade, portico.*

portō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr. *bear, carry, bring.*

portōrium, -ī, n. [cf. **porta**, *gate*] *tax, duty.*

portus, -ūs, m. [cf. **porta**, *gate*] *harbor, haven.*

possum [**potis**, *able* + **sum**, *am*], **posse, potuī**, ——, v. intr. *be able, have power, can.*

post, adv. and prep. with acc.: as adv. *afterwards, later, behind;* as prep. *after, since, behind, next to.*

posteā, adv. [**pest**, *after* + **ea**, *these things*] *after this, afterwards, later.*

(**posterus, -a, -um**), adj. [**post**, *after*] *coming after, following, next:* comp. **posterior**; superl. **postrēmus.**

postrēmō, adv. *finally, at last.*

pōstulō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr. *ask, demand, claim, desire.*

potēns, -entis, adj. [**possum**, *am able*] *able, mighty, powerful*, POTENT.

potentātus, -ūs, m. [**potēns**, *able*] *might, power, rule, dominion.*

potentia, -ae, f. [**potēns**, *able*] *power, might, force.*

potestās, -ātis, f. [**potis**, *able*] *power, sway.*

potior [**potis**, *able*], **-īrī, potītus sum**, dep. v. with abl. *become master of, get, obtain.*

praebeō [**prae**, *before, forth* + **habeō**, *hold*], **-ēre, -uī, -itum**, v. tr. *hold forth, offer, give, furnish.*

praecēdo [**prae**, *forth* + **cēdō**, *go*], **-ere, -cēssī, -cēssum**, v. tr. and intr. *go forth*, PRECEDE; *surpass, excel, outdo.*

praeceptor, -ōris, m. [**prae**, *before* + √ CAP-, *take*], *teacher, instructor*, PRECEPTOR.

praeceptum, -ī, n. [**prae**, *before* + √ CAP-, *take*] *instruction*, PRECEPT, *rule.*

praecīdō [**prae**, *before* + **caedō**, *cut*], **-ere, -cīdī, -cīsum**, v. tr. *cut off in front, cut off.*

praecipiō [**prae**, *beforehand, forth* + **capiō**, *take*], **-ere, -cēpī, -ceptum**, v. tr. and intr. *take beforehand; advise, warn, order.*

praeclārus, -a, -um, adj. [**prae**, intens. + **clārus**, *bright*] *very bright, brilliant; eminent, excellent, famous.*

praeda, -ae, f. *property taken in war, booty, plunder.*

praedicātiō, -ōnis, f. [**praedicō**, *boast*] *a boast.*

praedicō [**prae**, *before* + **dicō**, *say*],

-ere, -dīxī, -dictum, v. tr. *say before,* PREDICT.

praecipuē, adv. *especially.*

praedō, -ōnis, m. [**praeda,** *booty*] *robber, pirate.*

praefātus, -a, -um [part. of ***praefor,** *say beforehand*] *saying beforehand.*

praeferō [**prae,** *before* + **ferō,** *bear*], **-ferre, -tulī, -lātum,** v. tr. *bear before, offer, place before.*

praeferōx, -ōcis, adj. [**prae,** intens. + **ferōx,** *violent*] *very violent, insolent.*

praemittō [**prae,** *before* + **mittō,** *send*], **-ere, -mīsī, -missum,** v. tr. *send forward, despatch in advance.*

praemium, -ī, n. *advantage, reward,* PREMIUM.

praesēns, -entis, adj. [part. of **praesum,** *be before*] PRESENT, *at hand.*

praesidium, -ī, n. [**praeses,** from **prae,** *before* + √SID-, *sit*], *defence, help, protection.*

praestō [**prae,** *before* + **stō,** *stand*], **-āre, -stitī, -stitum,** v. intr. with dat. *stand out, stand before, excel, surpass.*

praesum [**prae,** *before* + **sum,** *am*], **-esse, -fuī,** ——, *am before, am set over, have charge of.*

praetereō [**praeter,** *by* + **eō,** *go*], **-īre, -īvī** or **-iī, -itum,** v. tr. and intr. *go by, pass by.*

praeter, prep. with acc. *past, by, against, contrary to; beyond, besides.*

praetor, -ōris, m. [for **praeitor: prae,** *before* + √I-, *go*] *leader, chief magistrate,* PRAETOR.

praeveniō [**prae,** *before* + **veniō,** *come*], **-īre, -vēnī, -ventum,** v. tr. *come before, precede,* PREVENT.

prāvus, -a, -um, adj. *crooked, deformed; wrong, bad, wicked.*

prīdem, adv. *long ago, long since.*

prīdiē, adv. *on the day before.*

prīmum, adv. [sup. of **prae**] *first:* **quam prīmum,** *as soon as possible.*

prīmus, -a, -um, adj. [superl. of **prae**] *the first, first.*

prīnceps, -ipis, m. [**prīmus,** *first* + √CAP-, *take*] *foremost; chief, eminent; leader, chief, ruler.*

prīncipātus, -ūs, m. [**prīnceps,** *chief*] *beginning; chief command, supremacy, leadership.*

prior, -or, -us, gen. **-ōris,** adj. [comp. of **prae**], *former,* PRIOR, *first (of two).*

prīvātim, adv. [**prīvātus,** *private*] PRIVATE*ly, in private.*

prīvō [**prīvus,** *one's own*], **-āre, -āvī, -ātum,** v. tr. *de*PRIVE, *rob.*

prō, prep. with abl. *before, in front of, in behalf of; instead of.*

prosvus, -ī, m. [**prō,** *before* + **avus,** *grandfather*], *great-grandfather.*

Proca, -ae, m. *Proca,* king of the Albans, father of Numitor and Amulius.

prōcēdō [**prō,** *forward* + **cēdō,** *go*], **-ere, -cessī,** ——, v. intr. *go forward, advance,* PROCEED.

prōclāmō [**prō,** *out* + **clāmō,** *call*], **-āre, -āvī, -ātum,** v. tr. *call, cry out.*

procul, adv. [**prō,** *forth, away* + √CEL-, *drive*], *at a distance, away, far, far off.*

Proculus, -ī, m. *Julius Proculus,* a Roman, to whom Romulus appeared, as he said, after death.

prōditiō, -ōnis, f. [**prō,** *forth, away* + √DA-, *give*], *betrayal, treason, treachery.*

proelior [**proelium,** *battle*], **-ārī, -ātus sum,** dep. v. tr. *join battle, fight.*

proelium, -ī, n. *battle, combat.*

profectō, adv. [**prō,** *according to* + **factum,** *fact*] *assuredly, certainly, indeed.*

proficīscor [**prō,** *forth* + ***facīscor** (**faciō**), *begin to make*], *set forward, set out, go forth, march forth.*

prōflīgō [**prō,** *forward* + **flīgō,** *strike*], **-āre, -āvī, -ātum,** v. tr. *strike down, overthrow, defeat.*

profugiō [**prō,** *forth* + **fugiō,** *flee*], **-ere, -fūgī,** ——, v. intr. *flee, run away, escape.*

profugus, -ī, m. [**prō,** *forth* + √FVG-, *flee*] *fugitive, banished* = *exile.*

prōfundō [**prō**, *forth* + **fundō**, *pour*], **-ere, -fūdī, -fūsum,** v. tr. *pour forth; waste, squander.*

progredior [**prō**, *forth* + **gradior**, *go*], **-gredī, -gressus sum,** dep. v. intr. *go forth, advance.*

prohibeō [**prō**, *forth* + **habeō**, *hold*], **-ēre, -uī, -itum,** v. tr. *keep away from, check, hinder, prevent,* PROHIBIT.

proinde, adv. *hence, therefore, accordingly.*

prōmineō, -ēre, -uī-, —, v. intr. *stand out, lean forward, stretch out.*

prōmissum, -ī, n. [**prōmittō**, *promise*] PROMISE.

prōmittō [**prō**, *forth* + **mittō**, *send*], **-ere, -mīsī, -missum,** v. tr. *let go;* PROMISE, *assure.*

prōnepōs, -ōtis, m. [**prō**, *before* + **nepōs**, *grandson*] *great-grandson.*

prope, adv. *about, nearly, almost:* comp. **propius;** sup. **proximē.**

prōpēnsus, -a, -um, adj. [part. of **prōpendō**, *hang down*] *hanging down; inclined, disposed.*

properō [**properus**, *quick*], **-āre, -āvī, -ātum,** v. intr. *make haste, go quickly, hasten.*

propinquus, -a, -um, adj. [**prope**, *near*], *near, neighboring:* as a subst. *kinsman, relation.*

propior, -or, -us, gen. **-ōris,** adj. [**prope**, *near*] *nearer.*

prōpōnō [**prō**, *before* + **pōnō**, *place*], **-ere, -posuī, -positum,** v. tr. PROPOSE, *report, offer.*

propter, prep. with acc. [**prope**, *near*] *near: on account of.*

prōscrībō [**prō**, *forth* + **scrībō**, *write*], **-ere, -scrīpsī, -scrīptum,** v. tr. *write forth, publish, outlaw,* PROSCRIBE.

prōsequor [**prō**, *before* + **sequor**, *follow*], **-sequī, -secūtus sum,** dep. v. tr. *accompany, attend.*

prōsiliō [**prō**, *forth* + **saliō**, *jump*], **-īre, -uī, —,** v. intr. *jump forth, leap forward.*

prōsperus, -a, -um, adj. [**prō**, *according to* + **spēs**, *hope*] *according to hope; favorable, prosperous.*

prōsum [**prō**, *for* + **sum**, *am*], **prōdesse, prōfuī, —,** v. intr. with dat. *am before, am useful to, benefit.*

protinus, adv. *immediately, at once.*

prōvehō [**prō**, *forward* + **vehō**, *carry*], **-ere, -vēxī, -vēctum,** v. tr. *carry forward;* pass. *move forward, sail.*

prōvincia, -ae, f. *territory,* PROVINCE.

proximē, adv. sup. *nearest.*

proximus, -a, -um, adj. sup. [**prope**, *near*] *nearest, last:* **in proximō** (sc. **locō**), *in the neighborhood, near-by.*

prūdēns, -ēns, -ēns, gen. **-entis,** adj. [for **prōvidēns**, *foreseeing*] *wise, knowing, sagacious,* PRUDENT.

prūdentia, -ae, f. [**prūdēns**, *prudent*] *wisdom, sagacity,* PRUDENCE.

Ptolemaeus, -ī, m. *Ptolemy,* name of several kings of Egypt.

pūblicē, adv. [**pūblicus**, *of the people*] PUBLICly, *in the name of the state.*

pūblicō [**pūblicus**, *of the people*], **-āre, -āvī, -ātum,** v. tr. *throw open to the people; open.*

pūblicus, -a, -um, adj. [**populus**, *people, of the people*] PUBLIC: **in pūblicō,** *openly, publicly.*

pudeō, -ēre, -uī or **puditum est,** *be ashamed;* usually impersonal, *it makes ashamed;* **mē pudet,** *I am ashamed.*

pudor, -ōris, m. *shame, disgrace.*

puella, -ae, f. [dim. fem. of **puer**, *boy*] *girl, maiden.*

puer, -erī, m. *boy, young man:* pl. **puerī,** *children.*

puerīlis, -is, -e, adj. [**puer**, *boy*] *boyish, childish, youthful.*

pūgiō, -ōnis, m. *dagger.*

pūgna, -ae, f. *hand-to-hand fight, battle combat.*

pūgnō [**pūgna**, *fight*], **-āre, -āvī, -ātum,** v. tr. *fight, give battle.*

pulcher, -cra, -crum, adj. *beautiful, glorious.*

pulsus, -a, -um, part. of **pellō.**

Pūnicus, -a, -um, adj. PUNIC, *Carthaginian.*

pūniō [**poena,** *punishment*], **-īre, -īvī, -ītum,** v. tr. PUNISH.

putō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr. *judge, suspect, believe, think.*

Q

quadrāgintā, num. adj. *forty.*

quā dē causā, *for what reason, wherefore.*

quaerō, -ere, quaesīvī, quaesītum, v. tr. *seek, look for.*

quaestor, -ōris, m. [from **quaerō,** *seek*] QUAESTOR.

quaestūra, -ae, f. [**quaestor,** *quaestor*] *the office of quaestor, quaestorship.*

quaestus, -ūs, m. [**quaerō,** *seek*] *gain, profit, advantage.*

quālis, -is, -e, adj. *of what sort, of what kind, what kind of.*

quam, adv. and conj. as adv. *in what manner, how;* as conj. after a comp. *than:* **quam** with superl. *as . . . as possible,* e.g. **quam prīmum,** *as soon as possible.*

quamquam, concess. conj. *although, though.*

quamvīs, conj. *although, though.*

quantum, adv. *how much, as much as.*

quāre, adv. [**quā,** *by what* + **rē,** *means*] *by what means, wherefore, therefore.*

quārtānus, -a, -um, adj. [**quārtus,** *fourth*] *occurring on the fourth day,* QUARTAN.

quasi, adv. [**quam,** *as* + **sī,** *if*] *as if, just as if.*

quater, adv. [**quattuor,** *four*] *four times.*

quattuor, num. adj. *four.*

-que, conj. enclit. *and.*

quī, quae, quod, rel. pron. and adj. *who, which, what, that.*

quī, quae, quod, interrog. adj. *what? which? what kind of?*

quia, causal conj. *because.*

quīcunque, quaecunque, quodcunque, indef. rel. pron. [**quī,** *who* + **-cumque,** indef. suffix] *whoever, whatever, everyone who, everything that.*

quīdam, quaedam, quoddam and *as* subst. **quiddam,** indef. pron. *a certain, a, somebody, one;* pl. *some, some things.*

quidem, adv. *indeed, certainly:* **nē . . . quidem,** *not even.*

quiētus, -a, -um, adj. [part. of **quiēscō,** *rest*] QUIET, *calm, inactive.*

quīn, conj. [**quī,** *why* + **nē,** *not*] *so that not, but, but that;* often translated *from,* the following finite verb being rendered by our participle in *-ing.*

quīndecim, num. adj. indecl. *fifteen.*

quīnquāgintā, num. adj. indecl. *fifty.*

quīnque, num. adj. indecl. *five.*

quīnquiēns, adv. *for the fifth time, five times.*

quīntus, -a, -um, adj. [**quīnque,** *five*] *fifth.*

Quirīnālis, -is, -e, adj. [**Quirīnus**] *of Quirinus, of Romulus, Quirinal,* referring to the Quirinal Hill, one of the seven hills of Rome.

Quirīnus, -ī, m. [**Quīris** = Cūrēs] *Quirīnus,* name of Romulus after he had been deified.

quis, qua, quid, indef. pron. used with **sī, nisi, num, nē,** *anyone, anything, someone, something.*

quis, quid, interrog. pron. *who? which one? what man? what thing? what?*

quisnam, quaenam, quidnam, interrog. pron. *who then? who, pray?*

quisquam (m.), **quicquam** (n.), indef. pron. [**quis,** *anyone* + **quam,** indef. suffix], *any, anyone, anything.*

quisque, quaeque, quidque and as adj. **quodque,** indef. rel. pron. *each, each one, everybody, everything, all.*

quīvīs, quaevīs, quidvīs and **quodvīs,**

indef. pron. *anyone (you please), anyone, anything.*

quō, adv. [old dat. of **quī**] *whither, where.*

quod, causal conj. *because.*

quondam, adv. *formerly, once.*

quoque, conj. placed after the emphatic word, *also, too.*

quōrsum, adv. [**quō,** *whither* + **versus,** *ward*] *whitherward, whither.*

quot, interrog. and rel. adj. indecl. *how many? as many as.*

R

rapīna, -ae, f. [√ RAP-, *snatch*] *robbery, plunder.*

rapiō [√ RAP-, *snatch*], **-ere, -puī, raptum,** v. tr. *snatch, seize and carry off.*

raptus, -a, -um, part. of **rapiō.**

rārus, -a, -um, adj. *thin,* RARE; *infrequent, uncommon.*

ratiō, -ōnis, f. [cf. **reor,** *reckon*] *reckoning, account; course, conduct, plan.*

ratus, -a, -um [part. of **reor**], *thinking.*

rebellō [**re,** *again* + **bellō,** *wage war*], **-āre, -āvī, -ātum,** v. tr. *wage war again,* REBEL, *revolt.*

recidō [**re,** *back* + **cadō,** *fall*], **-ere, reccidī** or **recidī, recāsurus,** v. intr. *fall back; pass, return; result, turn out.*

recipiō [**re,** *back* + **capiō,** *take*], **-ere, -cēpī, -ceptum,** v. tr. *take back, recover.*

reconciliō [**re,** *again* + **conciliō,** *procure*], **-āre, -āvī, -ātum,** v. tr. *procure again; restore, reunite,* RECONCILE.

rēctē, adv. [**rēctus,** *straight*] *in a straight line; rightly, well, properly.*

recūsō [**re,** *again* + **causa,** *cause*], **-āre, -āvī, -ātum,** v. tr. *refuse, deny.*

redeō [**red,** *back* + **eō,** *go*], **-īre, -īvī** or **-iī, -itum,** v. intr. *go back, return.*

redigō [**red,** *back* + **agō,** *bring*], **-ere, -ēgī, -āctum,** v. tr. *bring back, reduce.*

redimō [**red,** *back* + **emō,** *buy*], **-ere, -dēmī, -dēmptum,** v. tr. *buy back,* REDEEM, *ransom.*

redintegrō [**red,** *again* + **integrō,** *make whole*], **-āre, -āvī, -ātum,** v. tr. *make whole again, renew.*

reditus, -ūs, m. [**redeō,** *return*] *return.*

referō [**re,** *back* + **ferō,** *bring*], **-ferre, rettulī, -lātum,** v. tr. *bring back,* REFER; *report, relate.*

refoveō [**re,** *again* + **foveō,** *warm*], **-ēre, -fōvī, ——,** v. tr. *warm again, revive.*

rēgīna, -ae, f. [**rēx,** *king*] *queen.*

regiō, -ōnis, f. [√ REG-, *guide*] *direction;* REGION, *district.*

rēgius, -a, -um, adj. [**rēx,** *king*] *kingly, royal, king's.*

rēgnō [**rēgnum,** *royal power*], **-āre, -āvī, -ātum,** v. intr. *have royal power. be king,* REIGN.

rēgnum, -ī, n. [√ REG-, *rule*] *royal power; supreme power, realm, kingdom.*

regredior [**re,** *back* + **gradior,** *walk*], **-ī, -gressus sum,** dep. v. intr. *retreat, return.*

relābor [**re,** *back* + **lābor,** *slide*], **-lābī, -lāpsus sum,** dep. v. intr. *slide back, flow back, sink back.*

religō [**re,** *back* + **ligō,** *bind*], **-āre, -āvī, -ātum,** v. tr. *bind back, bind fast, fasten on.*

relinquō [**re,** *behind* + **linquō,** *leave*], **-ere, -līquī, -lictum,** v. tr. *leave behind, leave, abandon.*

reliquiae, -ārum, f. [**reliquus,** *remaining*] *what is left, remnants.*

reliquus, -a, -um, adj. [**relinquō,** *leave*] *left, rest, remaining.*

remaneō [**re,** *back* + **maneō,** *stay*], **-ēre, -mānsī, -mānsum,** v. intr. *stay behind,* REMAIN.

remittō [**re,** *back* + **mittō,** *send*], **-ere, -mīsī, -missum,** v. tr. *send back, let go back, give up;* REMIT.

removeō [**re,** *back* + **moveō,** *move*], **-ēre, -mōvī, -mōtum,** v. tr. *move back, withdraw,* REMOVE.

Remus, -ī, m. *Remus*, the brother of Romulus.

renūntiō [**re**, *again* + **nūntiō**, *announce*], **-āre, -āvī, -ātum**, v. tr. *announce again, announce.*

renuō [**re**, *back* + **nuō**, *nod*], **-ere, -uī, ——**, v. tr. *nod backwards, refuse, decline.*

repellō [**re**, *back* + **pellō**, *drive*], **-ere, reppulī, repulsum**, v. tr. *drive back, drive away; repulse*, REPEL.

repente, adv. [**repēns**, *sudden*] *suddenly, unexpectedly.*

repentīnus, -a, -um, adj. [**repēns**, *sudden*] *sudden, unexpected.*

reperiō, -īre, repperī, reportum, v. tr. *find, meet with; get, obtain.*

repetundae, -ārum, f. *extortion.*

portō [**re**, *back* + **portō**, *bring*], **-āre, -āvī, -ātum**, v. tr. *bring back, win, gain.*

repudiō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr. *divorce.*

repūgnō [**re**, *against* + **pūgnō**, *fight*], **-āre, -āvī, -ātum**, v. tr. *oppose, resist.*

repulsa, -ae, f. [part. f. of **repellō**, *drive back*] REPULSE, *rejection.*

reputō [**re**, *again* + **putō**, *think*], **-āre, -āvī, -ātum**, v. tr. *think over, reflect, meditate.*

rēs, reī, f. *thing, event, circumstance, affair:* **rēs pūblica**, REPUBLIC, *state:* **rēs frūmentāria**, *corn supply:* **rēs familiāris**, *property, estate.*

rescindō [**re**, *back* + **scindō**, *cut*], **-ere, -scidī, -scissum**, v. tr. *cut off, cut down, break down.*

rescissus, part. of **rescindō.**

resistō [**re**, *back* + **sistō**, *stand*], **-ere, -stitī, ——**, v. intr. *stand back, halt, stop; oppose*, RESIST.

respiceō [**re**, *back* + **speciō**, *look*], **-ere, -spexī, -spectum**, v. tr. *look back, gaze at.*

respondeō [**re**, *back, in return* + **spondeō**, *promise*], **-ēre, -spondī, -spōnsum**, v. tr. *answer*, RESPOND.

restinguō [**re**, *back* + **stinguō**, *quench*], **-ere, -nxī, -nctum**, v. tr. *put out, quench, extinguish.*

restituō [**re**, *again* + **statuō**, *set up*], **-ere, -uī, -ūtum**, v. tr. *set up again, replace, rebuild; restore, revive.*

retrahō [**re**, *back* + **trahō**, *draw*], **-ere, -trāxī, -trāctum**, v. tr. *draw back; call back, bring back.*

revertō [**re**, *back* + **vertō**, *turn*], **-ere, -verti, ——**, see **revertor.**

revertor, -ī, reversus sum, perf. usually **revertī**, dep. v. intr. *turn back, return, come back*, REVERT.

revocō [**re**, *back* + **vocō**, *call*], **-āre, -āvī, -ātum**, v. tr. *call back, recall.*

rēx, rēgis, m. [**regō**, *rule*] *king.*

Rhēa, -ae, f. *Rhea*, praenomen of Rhea Silvia, the mother of Romulus and Remus.

Rhēnus, -ī, m. *the Rhine*, a river of Germany.

rhētōr, -ōris, m. *rhetorician, orator.*

Rhodanus, -ī, m. *the Rhone*, a river flowing through southeastern Gaul into the Mediterranean.

Rhodus, -ī, f. *Rhodes*, an island of the Mediterranean, south of Asia Minor.

rīdeō, -ēre, rīsī, rīsum, v. tr. and intr. *laugh, laugh at.*

rīpa, -ae, f. *bank (of a river).*

rīvulus, -ī, m. [dim. of **rīvus**, *brook*] *a little brook, stream.*

rogō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr. *ask, question, beg.*

Rōma, -ae, f. ROME.

Rōmānī, -ōrum, m. [**Rōma**, *Rome*] THE ROMANS.

Rōmānus, -a, -um, adj. [**Rōma**, *Rome*] ROMAN, *of Rome.*

Rōmulus, -ī, m. *Romulus*, brother of Remus, mythical founder of Rome and its first king.

rosa, -ae, f. *rose.*

Rōscius, -ī, m. *Sextus Roscius*, defended by Cicero.

rōstrum, -ī, n. [rōdō, *gnaw*] *beak, ship's beak;* pl. **rōstra,** the speaker's stand in the Forum.

Rubicō, -ōnis, m. *the Rubicon,* a small river between Cisalpine Gaul and Italy.

ruīna, -ae, f. [ruō, *fall*] *falling down; fall,* RUIN, *destruction.*

ruō, -ere, ruī, rutum, v. intr. *fall with violence; go to ruin; hurry, hasten.*

rūrī [loc. of **rūs**], *in the country.*

rūs, rūris, n. *country* (as opposed to city), *fields:* **rūrī,** loc. *in the country.*

S

Sabīnī, -ōrum, m. *Sabines,* an ancient Italian people, dwelling in central Italy, north of Latium.

sacerdōs, -ōtis, m. and f. [**sacer,** *sacred* + √DA-, *give*] *priest, priestess.*

saepe, adv. *often, many times, frequently:* comp. **saepius**; sup. **saepissimē.**

saepiō [**saepēs,** *hedge*], **-īre, saepsī, saeptum,** v. tr. *hedge in, surround, fortify.*

saepius, comp. of **saepe.** [*violent.*

saevus, -a, -um, adj. *raging, furious,*

sagitta, -ae, f. *arrow.*

(saltus, -ūs) m. [**saliō,** *leap*] only acc. and abl. sg. and pl. *leap, spring, jump.*

salūbritās, -ātis, f. [**salūbris,** *healthful*] *healthfulness.*

salūs, -ūtis, f. [**salvus,** *sound*] *soundness, health, safety.*

salūtō [**salūs,** *safety*], **-āre, -āvī, -ātum,** v. tr. *greet, pay respects, call upon,* SALUTE.

salvus, -a, -um, adj. *in good health, sound, safe.*

sapiēns, -entis, adj. [**sapiō,** *be wise*] *wise, sensible.*

sapienter, adv. [**sapiēns,** *wise*] *wisely, sensibly.*

sapientia, -ae, f. [**sapiēns,** *wise*] *wisdom, prudence, intelligence.*

satis, adv. *enough, sufficiently.*

scelus, -eris, n. *wicked deed, crime, sin.*

schola, -ae, f. [Gr. σχολή, *leisure*] *leisure for learning; school.*

sciō [√SCI-, *divide, distinguish*], **-īre, -īvī** or **-iī, -ītum,** v. tr. *know, understand, know how.*

Scīpiō, -ōnis, m. *Scipio,* a famous Roman.

scissem, plupf. subjv. of **sciō.**

scrībō, -ere, scrīpsī, scrīptum, v. tr. *scratch, write.*

scrīnium, -ī, n. *case, book-box.*

scūtum, -ī, n. *shield, buckler.*

sē, see **suī.**

sēcēdō [**sē,** *apart* + **cēdō,** *go*], **-ere, -cessī, -cessum,** v. intr. *go away,* SECEDE, *withdraw.*

sector [freq. of **sequor,** *follow*], **-ārī, -ātus sum,** dep. v. tr. *follow eagerly, attend.*

secundus, -a, -um, adj. [**sequor,** *follow*] *following, next; second; favorable.*

sed, advers. conj. *but.*

sēdēs, -is, f. [√SED-, *sit*] *seat, bench, chair; site.*

sēditiō, -ōnis, f. [**sēd,** *apart* + √I-, *go*] *a going aside, dissension, civil discord, mutiny,* SEDITION.

sella, -ae, f. [√SED-, *sit*], *seat, chair.*

sēmet, emphatic for **sē.**

semper, adv. *ever, always, forever.*

sempiternus, -a, -um, adj. [**semper,** *always*] *everlasting.*

senātor, -ōris, m. [**senātus,** *senate*] *member of the senate,* SENATOR.

senātōrius, -a, -um, adj. [**senātor,** *senator*] *senatorial, of a senator.*

senātus, -ūs, m. [cf. **senex,** *old*] *council of elders,* SENATE.

senectūs, -ūtis, f. [**senex,** *old*] *old age.*

senex, senis, adj. *old, aged:* comp. **senior.**

senior, -ōris, *older,* comp. of **senex.**

sententia, -ae, f. [**sentiō,** *think*] *sentiment, opinion, wish, desire.*

sēparātim, adv. [**sēparātus**, *separated*] SEPARATELY.

septem, num. adj. indecl. *seven*.

septimus, **-a**, **-um**, ord. adj. [**septem**, *seven*] *seventh*.

septendecim, num. adj. indecl. *seventeen*.

sequor, **secūtus sum**, dep. v. tr. *follow*.

sērīō, adv. [**sērius**, *earnest*] *earnestly*, SERIOUSLY.

sermō, **-ōnis**, m. *talk*, *speech*, *conversation*.

serva, **-ae**, f. [**servus**, *slave*] *female slave*, *maid*.

servīlis, **-is**, **-e**, adj. [**servus**, *slave*] *of a slave*, SERVILE.

servitūs, **-ūtis**, f. [**servus**, *slave*] *condition of a slave*, *slavery*.

servō, **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātum**, v. tr. *make safe*, *save*, *preserve*, *rescue*.

servus, **-ī**, m. *slave*, *servant*.

sēstertius, **-ī**, m. *a sesterce*, a small silver coin, worth two and a half asses.

seu, conj. see **sīve**.

sēverē, adv. [**severus**, *grave*] *gravely*, SEVERELY, *seriously*.

sex, num. adj. indecl. *six*.

sexāgintā, num. adj. indecl. *sixty*.

sī, conj. *if*, *whether*.

sīc, adv. *thus*, *so*.

siccō [**siccus**, *dry*], **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātum**, v. tr. *make dry*, *dry*.

siccus, **-a**, **-um**, adj. *dry*: **in siccō**, *on dry land*.

Siculus, **-a**, **-um**, adj. *Sicilian*.

sīdus, **-eris**, n. *star*, *constellation*.

signō [**signum**, *sign*], **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātum**, v. tr. *to sign*.

signum, **-ī**, n. *mark*, *sign*; *ensign*, *standard*.

silva, **-ae**, f. *wood*, *forest*.

Silvia, **-ae**, f. see Rhea.

similimus, **-a**, **-um**, superl. of **similis**.

similis, **-is**, **-e**, adj. *like*, *resembling*, *similar*: comp. **similior**; superl. **simillimus**.

simul, adv. *at the same time*.

simulō [**similis**, *like*], **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātum**, v. tr. *make like*, *imitate*, *feign*, *pretend*.

simultās, **-ātis**, f. [**simul**, *at the same time*] *dissension*, *rivalry*, *jealousy*.

sine, prep. with abl. *without*.

singulāris, **-is**, **-e**, adj. [**singulī**, *one at a time*] *one by one*; SINGULAR, *remarkable*.

singulī, **-ae**, **-a**, adj. *one at a time*, SINGLE, *every*.

sinister, **-tra**, **-trum**, adj. *left*.

sinō, **-ere**, **sīvī**, **situm**, v. tr. *let down*, *fix*; *suffer*, *allow*.

situs, *situated*, part. of **sinō**.

sīve, conj. or **seu** [**sī**, *if* + **ve**, *or*] *or if*, *or rather*, *or*: **sīve** ... **sīve** or **seu** ... **seu**, *either* ... *or*, *whether* ... *or*.

sōbrius, **-a**, **-um**, adj. [**sē**, *not* + **ebrius**, *drunk*] *not drunk*, SOBER.

socer, **-erī**, m. *father-in-law*.

societās, **-ātis**, f. [**socius**, *fellow*] *fellowship*; *league*, *alliance*.

sociō [**socius**, *sharer*], **-āre**, **-āvī**, **-ātum**, v. tr. *share*.

socius, **-ī**, m. *fellow*, *comrade*; *ally*.

Sōcratēs, **-is**, m. *Socrates*, a famous Greek philosopher.

sōl, **sōlis**, m. *the sun*.

soleō, **-ēre**, **solitus sum**, semi-dep. v. *am accustomed*, *am wont*.

sōlitūdō, **-inis**, f. [**sōlus**, *alone*] *desert*, *wilderness*.

solitus, **-a**, **-um** [part. of **soleō**], *accustomed*, *wonted*.

solum, **-ī**, n. SOIL, *ground*.

sōlus, **-a**, **-um**, adj., gen. **sōlīus**, dat. **sōlī**, *alone*, *only*, *single-handed*: **sōlum**, adv. *alone*, *only*, *merely*.

solvo [**sē**, *apart* + **luō**, *loose*], **-ere**, **solvī**, **solūtum**, v. tr. *loosen*, *unbind*.

somnus, **-ī**, m. [for **sopnus**; cf. **sōpiō**, *put to sleep*] *sleep*.

soror, -ōris, *f. sister.*

sors, sortis, *f. lot, fate, fortune, destiny.*

spatium, -ī, n. SPACE, *distance; period of time.*

speciēs, -ēī, *f.* [√ SPEC-, *look*] *look, appearance, pretence.*

spectāculum, -ī, n. [**spectō,** *look at*] *place in theatre; show,* SPECTACLE.

spectō [freq. of **speciō,** *look*], **-āre, -āvī, -ātum,** v. tr. *look on, look at, behold, watch.*

spērō [**spēs,** *hope*], **-āre, -āvī, -ātum,** v. tr. *hope, look for, expect.*

spēs, speī, *f. hope, expectation.*

spīritus, -ūs, m. [**spīrō,** *breathe*] *breathing, breath;* SPIRIT, *courage.*

splendor, -ōris, m. *brightness,* SPLENDOR; *honor, dignity.*

spoliō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr. *plunder,* SPOIL, *rob.*

spondeō, -ēre, spopondī, spōnsum, v. intr. *promise sacredly, promise.*

sponte [abl. of **spōns**], *of one's own accord, voluntarily.*

Spūrinna, -ae, m. *Spurinna,* a soothsayer.

statim, adv. [√ STA-, *stand*] *steadily; on the spot, at once, instantly.*

statua, -ae, *f.* [**status,** p. of **sistō,** *place*] *image,* STATUE.

statuō [**status,** *station*], **-ere, -uī, -ūtum,** v. tr. *cause to stand; determine, decide.*

statūra, -ae, f. [√ STA-, *stand*] *height, size,* STATURE.

status, -ūs, m. [√ STA-, *stand*] *station, position;* STATE, *condition.*

stella, -ae, *f. star.*

stercus, -oris, n. *filth.*

stīpendium, -ī, n. [for * **stīpipendium**: **stīps,** *small coin* + * **pendium,** cf. **pendere,** *pay*] *a paying of tax; pay, wages; military service, campaign.*

stō [√ STA-, *stand*], **-āre, stetī, statum,** v. intr. *stand, stand by.*

strictus, -a, -um, adj. [part. of **stringō**] *drawn.*

studiōsē, adv. [**studiōsus,** *eager*] *eagerly, zealously, anxiously.*

studiōsus, -a, -um, adj. [**studium,** *zeal*] *eager, zealous, anxious, devoted,* STUDIOUS.

studium, -ī, n. [**studiō,** *give attention*] *application, eagerness, zeal,* STUDY.

stultitia, -ae, *f.* [**stultus,** *foolish*] *folly, foolishness, simplicity.*

stultus, -a, -um, adj. *foolish, simple.*

suādeō [**suāvis,** *sweet*], **-ēre, suāsī, suāsum,** v. intr. PERSUADE, *advise, urge.*

sub, prep. with acc. and abl.: with abl. of rest, *under, below, beneath;* with acc. of motion, *under.*

subigō [**sub,** *from under* + **agō,** *drive*], **-ere, -ēgī, -āctum,** v. tr. *drive from under; subjugate, conquer.*

subitō, adv. [**subitus,** *sudden*] *suddenly.*

sublātus, see **tollō.**

sublicius, -a, -um, adj. [**sublica,** *stake*] *resting upon piles.*

subolēs, -is, f. [**sub,** *from below* + √ OL-, *grow*] *sprout; offspring, progeny, posterity.*

subsequor [**sub,** *after* + **sequor,** *follow*], **-ī, -secūtus sum,** dep. v. int. *follow after, follow up.*

subsidium, -ī, n. *troops in reserve; help, aid, assistance.*

subsistō [**sub,** *under* + **sistō,** *stand*], **-ere, -stitī,** v. intr. *stop, stay, halt.*

subsum [**sub,** *under* + **sum,** *am*], **-esse, -fuī,** ——, *am under, am near, am at hand.*

successus, -ūs, m. [**succēdō,** *come up*] *a coming up, approach,* SUCCESS.

sufficiō [**sub,** *under* + **faciō,** *make*], **-ere, -fēcī, -fectum,** v. tr. *put under, satisfy,* SUFFICE.

suffodiō [**sub,** *under* + **fodiō,** *dig*], **-ere, -fōdī, -fossum,** v. tr. *dig under, stab underneath.*

suffīgō [**sub**, *under* + **fīgō**, *fasten*] **-ere**, **-fīxī**, **-fīxus**, v. tr. *fasten under, nail to.*

suffrāgātor, -ōris, m. [**suffrāgor**, *favor by voting*] *favorer, supporter, partisan.*

suī, sibī, sē, sē, reflex. pron. *himself (herself, itself, themselves).*

Sulla, -ae, m. *Sulla.*

Sullānus, -a, -um, adj. *of Sulla;* as a subst. *a follower of Sulla.*

sum [√ES-, *be*], **esse, fuī, futūrus**, v. intr. *am, exist, live.*

summus, -a, -um, adj. [superl. of **superus**, *upper*] *highest, greatest.*

sūmō [**sub**, *from below* + **emō**, *take*] **-ere, sūmpsī, sūmptum**, v. tr. *take, take up,* ASSUME.

sūmptuārius, -a, -um, adj. [**sūmptus**, *outlay*] *of expense,* SUMPTUARY.

sūmptus, part. of **sūmō**.

super, prep. with acc. and abl.: with abl. *over, above, on;* with acc. *over, above, upon, beyond.*

superbus, -a, -um, adj. [**super**, *above*] *haughty, proud, arrogant.*

superincidō [**super**, *from above* + **in**, *upon* and **cadō**, *fall*], **-ere**, ——, ——, v. intr. *fall from above, fall down upon.*

superior, -or, -us, gen. **-ōris**, adj. [comp. of **superus**] *superior, victorious.*

superō [**superus**, *over, above*], **-āre, -āvī, -ātum**, v. tr. *pass over, surpass, conquer, overcome.*

supersum [**super**, *above* + **sum**, *am*] **-esse, -fuī**, ——, v. intr. with dat. *am over, survive.*

superus, -a, -um, adj. [**super**, *above*] *that which is above, upper, higher.*

supervenīō [**super**, *upon* + **venīō**, *come*], **-īre, -vēnī, -ventum**, v. intr. *come up, arrive; come upon, surprise.*

supervīvō [**super**, *beyond* + **vīvō**, *live*], **-ere, -vīxī**, ——, v. intr. *outlive,* SURVIVE.

supplicium, -ī, n. [**supplex**, *kneeling in entreaty*] *kneeling, death penalty, punishment.*

suscipiō [**sub(s)**, *from under* + **capiō**, *take*], **-ere, -cēpī, -ceptum**, v. tr. *take from under, take, receive, undertake.*

suspectus, -a, -um, adj. [part. of **suspiciō**] *mistrusted,* SUSPECTED.

sustineō [**sub(s)**, *from under, up* + **teneō**, *hold*], **-ēre, -tinuī, -tentum**, v. tr. *hold up, keep up, support,* SUSTAIN.

suus, -a, -um, poss. adj. [cf. **suī**, *of himself*, &c.] *belonging to oneself; his own, her own, his, hers, its, their;* always used with reference to the subject of the sentence.

T

taedet, -ēre, taeduit, taesum est, v. impers. *it disgusts, wearies:* **mē taedet**, *I am disgusted.*

taedium, -ī n. *weariness, tediousness, disgust.*

talentum, -ī, n. A TALENT, a Greek standard of value worth about $1,080 in gold.

tālis, -is, -e, adj. *such, of such a kind.*

tam, adv. *in such a degree, such, so.*

tamen, adv. *yet, but, nevertheless.*

tamquam, conj. *as if.*

tandem, adv. *at length, finally.*

tantopere, adv. [**tantus**, *so great* + **opus**, *labor*] *so greatly, so earnestly.*

tantum, adv. [**tantus**, *so great*] *only, merely.*

tantus, -a, -um, adj. *so great, such.*

tardō [**tardus**, *slow*], **-āre, -āvī, -ātum**, v. tr. *hinder, delay,* RETARD.

Tarentum, -ī, n. *Tarentum*, a famous and powerful Greek city in the southern part of Italy on the Gulf of Tarentum.

Tarpēia, -ae, f. *Tarpeia*, name of the Roman maiden who opened the gates to the Sabines in the hope that she would receive their rings and bracelets in return.

Tarquiniī, -ōrum, m. *Tarquinii*, a city in the southern part of Etruria.

Tatius, -ī, m. gentile name of *Titus Tatius*, a famous Sabine leader.

taurus, -ī, m. *a bull.*

tegō, -ere, tēxī, tēctum, v. tr. *cover, cover over.*

tēlum, -ī, n. *spear, javelin, weapon.*

tempestās, -ātis, f. [**tempus,** *time*] *time; storm, tempest.*

templum, -ī, n. *temple.*

tempus, -oris, n. *time, season.*

tendō [√ TEN-, *stretch*], **-ere, tetendī, tentum** or **tēnsum,** v. tr. and intr. *stretch,* EXTEND, *direct.*

tenebrae, -ārum, f. pl. *darkness, gloom.*

teneō [√ TEN-, *stretch*], **-ēre, -uī,** ——, v. tr. *hold, grasp, keep.*

tentō [intens. of **tendō,** *stretch*], **-āre, -āvī, -ātum,** v. tr. *handle, make trial, attempt, try.*

tergum, -ī, m. *back:* **ā tergō,** *in the rear.*

terra, -ae, f. [cf. **torreō,** *dry up*] *earth, ground, land:* **orbis terrae** or **terrārum,** *the earth.*

terreō, -ēre, -uī, -itum, v. tr. *frighten, alarm, terrify.*

terribilis, -is, -e, adj. [**terreō,** *frighten*] *frightful,* TERRIBLE.

territus, -a, -um, adj. [p. of **terreō,** *frighten*] *frightened, in fright.*

terror, -ōris, m. [cf. **terreō,** *frighten*] *great fear, dread,* TERROR.

tēstāmentum, -ī, n. [cf. **tēstor,** *witness*] *will,* TESTAMENT.

tēstor [**tēstis,** *witness*], **-ārī, -ātus,** dep. v. tr. *witness, testify.*

Themistoclēs, -is, m. *Themistocles,* a famous general and statesman of Athens.

Tiberis, -is, m. *the Tiber,* the chief river in Latium, upon which Rome was situated.

Tiberius, -ī, m. *Tiberius,* a Roman praenomen.

timeō, -ēre, -uī, ——, v. tr. *fear, be afraid of.*

Timoleōn, -ontis, m. *Timoleon,* a Greek.

titulus, -ī, m. *a title.*

Titus, -ī, m. *Titus,* a Roman first name.

toga, -ae, f. THE TOGA, *gown.*

tollō, -ere, sustulī, sublātum, v. tr. *raise, lift, cheer, carry off.*

tonitrus, -ūs, m. [**tonō,** *make a loud noise*] *thunder.*

tōtus, -a, -um, gen. **tōtīus,** dat. **tōtī,** adj. *all, the whole, entire.*

trādō [**trāns,** *across* + **dō,** *deliver*], **-ere, -didī, -ditum,** v. tr. *give up, deliver, surrender; betray.*

trāiciō [**trāns,** *across* + **iaciō,** *throw*], **-ere, -iēcī, -iectum,** v. tr. *throw across, transfer, lead across; stab, pierce.*

trānō [**trāns,** *across* + **nō,** *swim*], **-āre, -āvī, -ātum,** v. tr. *swim across.*

trāns, prep. with acc. *across, over.*

trānseō [**trāns,** *across* + **eō,** *go*], **-īre, -īvī** or **-iī, -itum,** v. tr. *go across, cross over, pass by.*

trānsiliō [**trāns,** *across* + **saliō,** *leap*], **-īre, -uī,** ——, *leap across, jump over.*

trānsversus, -a, -um, adj. [**trāns,** *across* + **versus,** *turned*] TRANSVERSE, *crosswise.*

trepidātiō, -ōnis, f. [**trepidō,** *hurry with alarm*] *hurry; alarm, confusion.*

trepidō [**trepidus,** *restless*], **-āre, -āvī, -ātum,** v. intr. *hurry with alarm, hesitate, tremble.*

trēs, trēs, tria, num. adj. *three.*

tribūnus, -ī, m. [**tribus,** *tribe*] *head of a tribe, tribune.*

tribuō [**tribus,** *tribe*], **-uere, -uī, -ūtum,** v. tr. *give, transfer, yield, confer.*

triennium, -ī, n. [**trēs,** *three* + **annus,** *year*], *space of three years, three years.*

trīgintā, num. adj. indecl. *thirty.*

trīstis, -is, -e, adj. *sad, sorrowful; bitter, severe.*

triumphus, -ī, m. *a* TRIUMPH.

trucidō [**trux,** *wild* + √ SCID-, *cut*], **-āre, -āvī, -ātum,** v. tr. *cut to pieces, kill, slay.*

tū, tuī, tibī, tē, tē, pers. pron. *thou, you.*

tuba, -ae, f. *trumpet.*

tueor, -ērī, tūtus, dep. v. tr. *look at, guard, protect.*

tum, adv. *then, at that time.*

tunc, adv. *then, at that time.*

turbulentus, -a, -um, adj. [**turba,** *commotion*] *full of commotion, disturbed, stormy.*

turpis, -is, -e, adj. *ugly; shameful, disgraceful, dishonorable.*

turpitūdō, -inis, f. [**turpis,** *ugly*] *ugliness; shame, disgrace, dishonor.*

tūtēla, -ae, f. [**tueor,** *look at*], *watcher, defender; tutor, guardian.*

tūtor [**tueor,** *look at*], **-ārī, -ātus sum,** dep. v. tr. *watch, protect, defend.*

tuus, -a, -um, poss. pron. [**tū,** *thou, you*] *thy, thine, your, yours.*

U

über, -eris, n. *dug, teat, udder, breast.*

ubi, adv. rel. and interrog. *in which place, where, when.*

üllus, -a, -um, gen. **üllīus,** dat. **üllī** [for **ūnulus,** dim. of **ūnus**], *any, anyone.*

ülterior, -or, -us, adj. gen. **-ōris,** *further.*

ültimus, -a, -um, adj. *furthest, last.*

ültrā, prep. with acc. *beyond, passing.*

ültrō, adv. *to the farther side; voluntarily, willingly.*

umbra, -ae, f. *shade, shadow.*

umerus, -ī, m. *shoulder.*

undique, adv. [**unde,** *whence:* **que,** indef. suffix] *from every quarter, on all sides, all around.*

üniversus, -a, -um, adj. [**ūnus,** *one* + **versus,** *turned*] *all together, all; whole, entire.*

ūnus, -a, -um, num. adj. gen. **ūnīus,** dat. **ūnī,** *one, alone.*

urbānus, -a, -um, adj. [**urbs,** *city*] *of the city;* as a subst. *a wit, wag.*

urbs, urbis, f. *walled town, city.*

ūsque, adv. *as far as, all the way, even.*

ūsurpō [**ūsus,** *use* + √RAP-, *seize*], **-āre, -āvī, -ātum,** v. tr. *seize, make use of.*

ūsus, -ūs, m. [**ūtor,** *use*] USE; *profit, need, want; skill.*

ut or **utī,** conj. *that, in order that, so that.*

üter, ütris, m. *bag of hide, leathern bottle, skin.*

uter, -tra, -trum, interrog. pron. *which (of two).*

uterque, utraque, utrumque, indef. pron. *each (of two), both.*

ütilis, -is, -e, adj. [**ūtōr,** *use*] *useful, advantageous.*

utinam, adv. *I wish that; if only; would that.*

ūtor, ūtī, ūsus sum, dep. v. with abl. USE, *employ.*

uxor, -ōris, f. *wife.*

V

vādum, -ī, n. *shoal, ford.*

vāgitus, -ūs, m. [**vāgiō,** *cry*] *crying, squalling.*

valētūdō, -inis, f. [**valeō,** *be strong*] *health; sickness.*

validus, -a, -um, adj. [**valeō,** *be strong*] *strong, powerful, able.*

vānus, -a, -um, adj. VAIN, *false.*

vāstō [**vāstus,** *empty*], **-āre, -āvī, -ātum,** v. tr. *make empty, lay waste, ravage, devastate.*

vāstus, -a, -um, adj. *empty, waste;* VAST, *huge.*

vehō, -ere, vēxī, vēctum [√VEH-, *carry*], v. tr. *carry, bear;* pass. *be carried,* hence, *sail, ride.*

vegetus, -a, -um, adj. *enlivened, animated, bright.*

vēlōx, -ōx, -ōx, gen. **-ōcis,** adj. *swift, quick, rapid, fleet.*

veluti, adv. *just as, like.*

vēnātiō, -ōnis, f. [**vēnor,** *hunt*] *a hunting, hunt.*

venēnum, -ī, *strong potion, poison.*

venerātiō, -ōnis, f. [**veneror,** *reverence*] *reverence, respect,* VENERATION.

venia, -ae, f. *pardon.*

veniō [√ VEN-, *come, go*] **-īre, vēnī, ventum,** v. intr. *come.*

vēnor, -ārī, -ātus sum, dep. v. intr. *hunt.*

ventus, -ī, m. *wind.*

vēr, vēris, n. *spring.*

verbum, -ī, n. *word; saying.*

verēcundia, -ae, f. [**vereor,** *fear*] *fear, respect, reverence.*

vereor, -ērī, -itus sum, dep. v. tr. *reverence, respect, fear.*

vērō, adv. [**vērus,** *true*] *in truth, indeed, certainly; but, however.*

verrūca, -ae, f. *a wart.*

versiculus, -ī, m. [**versus,** *verse*] *a little verse, versicle.*

versor, -ārī, -ātus sum, v. intr. *be engaged in, be busy, conduct oneself.*

versus, -ūs, m. [**vertō,** *turn*] VERSE, *line of poetry.*

vērum, conj. [**vērus,** *true*] *but, however.*

vērum, -ī, n. [**vērus,** *true*] *truth.*

vērus, -a, -um, adj. *true, real.*

Vesta, -ae, f. *Vesta,* daughter of Saturn and Ops, goddess of flocks and herds and of the household, guardian of the city.

vester, -tra, -trum, poss. adj. [**vōs,** *you*] *your, yours.*

vēstīgium, -ī, n. [cf. **vestigō,** *track*] *track, footstep.*

vestis, -is, f. *clothes, attire, garments.*

vetus, -us, -us, gen. **-eris,** adj. *old, aged; ancient, former.*

via, -ae, f. [√ VEH-, *carry*], *way, road, street.*

viātor, -ōris, m. [**viō,** *go*] *traveller, wayfarer.*

vīciēns, adv. [**vīgintī,** *twenty*] *twenty times.*

vīcinus, -a, -um, adj. [**vīcus,** *row of houses*] *near, neighboring;* as a subst. *neighbor.*

victor, -ōris, m. [**vincō,** *conquer*] *conqueror,* VICTOR.

victōria, -ae, f. [**victor,** *conqueror*] VICTORY.

victus, -a, -um, part. of **vincō.**

vīcus, -ī, m. *row of houses, street, village.*

vidēlicet, adv. [**vidēre,** *to see* + **licet,** *it is allowed*] *one may see; clearly, of course.*

videō [√ VID-, *see*], **-ēre, vīdī, vīsum,** v. tr. *see, perceive.*

videor, -ērī, vīsus sum [pass. of **videō**], v. intr. *seem, appear, seem good.*

vigilantia, -ae, f. [**vigilāns,** *watchful*] *watchfulness, vigilance.*

vīgintī, num. adj. indecl. *twenty.*

vinciō, -īre, vinxī, vinctum, v. tr. *bind, tie, fasten.*

vincō, -ere, vīcī, victum, v. tr. *conquer, defeat, subdue.*

vīlla, -ae, f. [dim. of **vīcus,** *village*] *country-house, farm,* VILLA.

vinculum, -ī, n. [**vinciō,** *bind*] *fetter, chain;* pl. *prison.*

vindicō [**vindex,** *maintainer*], **-āre, -āvī, -ātum,** v. tr. *maintain, avenge, punish.*

vīnum, -ī, n. *wine.*

violō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. tr. VIOLATE, *outrage.*

vir, virī, m. *male person, man; husband; hero.*

virēs, -ium [pl. f. of **vīs**], *strength, force; troops.*

virgō, -inis, f. VIRGIN, *maid, maiden.*

virtūs, -ūtis, f. [**vir,** *man*] *manhood, courage;* VIRTUE.

vīs, vīs, f. *strength, power, force.*

vīsus, -ūs, m. [√ VID-, *see*] *sight, appearance, vision.*

vīta, -ae, f. [√ VIV-, *live*], *life.*

vitium, -ī, n. *fault, offence, crime,* VICE.

vīvō [√ VIV-, *live*], **-ere, vīxī, ——**, v. intr. *live, exist; dwell.*

vix, adv. *hardly, with difficulty.*

vocō [√ VOC-, *call*], **-āre, -āvī, -ātum,** v. tr. *call, summon.*

volantia, n. pl. part. from **volō.**

volgō, adv. [**volgus,** *the mass*] *in the crowd, commonly, generally.*

volitō [freq. of **volō,** *fly*], **-āre, -āvī, -ātum,** v. intr. *fly, move.*

volnerō [**volnus,** *wound*], **-āre, -āvī, -ātum,** v. tr. *wound.*

volnus, -eris, n. *wound.*

volō [√ VOL-, *wish*], **velle, voluī, ——,** v. tr. *wish, desire, be willing.*

volō, -āre, -āvī, -ātum, v. intr. *fly.*

Volscī, -ōrum, m. *the Volscians,* the most powerful people of ancient Latium.

voltur, -uris, m. VULTURE.

voltus, -ūs, n. [√ VOL-, *wish*] *expression of countenance, features, looks, face.*

voluptās, -ātis, f. [**volō,** *wish*] *pleasure, enjoyment.*

voveō, -ēre, vōvī, vōtum, v. tr. *vow, promise solemnly.*

vōx, vōcis, f. [√ VOC-, *call*] *call,* VOICE, *speech.*

X

Xenophōn, -ōntis, m. *Xenophon,* a well-known Greek writer.

ENGLISH–LATIN.

A

a, *indef. article, usually not translated: sometimes translated by* quīdam, quaedam, quoddam (quiddam).

abandon, relinquō, 3.

able, be, possum.

about, dē, *prep. with abl.*

absent, be, absum.

abundance, cōpia, -ae, f.

abuse, abūtor, 3, *with abl.*

accept, accipiō, 3.

accomplish, cōnficiō, 3; perficiō, 3.

account of, on, *abl. of cause:* **propter,** *or* **ob,** *with acc.*

accuse, accūsō, 1.

accustomed, be, soleō, 2.

acquit, absolvō, 3.

across, trāns, *prep. with acc.*

admire, admīror, 1; mīror, 1.

admonish, moneō, 2.

adorn, ōrnō, 1.

advance, prōcēdō, 3.

advice, cōnsilium, -ī, n.

advise, moneō, 2.

Aeduan, Aeduus, -ī, m.

affairs, rēs, reī, f.

affirm, affīrmō, 1.

Africa, Āfrica, -ae, f.

after, post, *prep. with acc.*

afterwards, posteā, deinde.

age, aetās, -ātis, f.

Agesilaus, Agēsilāus, -ī, m.

aid, n. auxilium, -ī, n.

aid, v. iuvō, 1.

alarm, n. terror, -ōris, m.

alarm, v. terreō, 2.

Alexander, Alexander, -drī, m.

all, omnis, -is, -e; tōtus, -a, -um.

almost, paene, ferē.

alone, sōlus, -a, -um; ūnus, -a, -um.

also, quoque.

altar, āra, -ae, f.

although, cum, *with subjv.*

always, semper.

ambassador, lēgātus, -ī, m.

among, inter, apud, *prep. with acc.*

ancient, antīquus, -a, -um; vetus, -eris.

and, et; atque, āc; -que.

anger, īra, -ae, f.

angry, īrātus, -a, -um.

animal, animal, -ālis, n.

announce, nūntiō, 1.

another, alius, -a, -um; **time,** aliās.

any, ūllus, -a, -um; aliquis, aliqua, aliquid *or* aliquod; quisquam, ——, quidquam; quīvīs.

approach, appropinquō, 1.

Ariovistus, Ariovistus, -ī, m.

arise, orior, 3.

arm, v. armō, 1.

arms, n. arma, -ōrum, n.

army, exercitus, -ūs, m.

around, circum, *prep. with acc.*

arouse, incitō, 1.

arrange, ōrdinō, 1.

arrival, adventus, -ūs, m.

arrive, adveniō, 4.

arrow, sagitta, -ae, f.

art, ars, artis, f.

as, *adv.* ut: **as = since,** cum, *with subjv.*

ashamed, am, pudet.
ask, rogō, 1 ; interrogō, 1 ; (**for**) quaerō, 3.
ass, asinus, -ī, m.
assault, impetus, -ūs, m.
assemble, convenīō, 4.
assembly, cōntiō, -ōnis, f.
astray, go, errō, 1.
asylum, asȳlum, -ī, n.
at, in, *prep. with acc.; with names of towns, use the locative case.*
Athens, Athēnae, -ārum, f.
at once, statim.
attack, n. impetus, -ūs, m.
attack, v. oppūgnō, 1.
attempt, v. tentō, 1 ; cōnor, 1.
augury, augūrium, -ī, n.
avarice, n. avāritia, -ae.
avenge, vindicō, 1.
away, go, abeō, 4 ; discēdō, 3.
away from, ā, *or* ab, *with abl.;* ē *or* ex, *with abl.*

B

back, bring or **carry,** reportō, 1 ; referō, 3.
bad, malus, -a, -um.
baggage, impedīmenta, -ōrum, n.
band, manus, -ūs, f.
barbarian, barbarus, -ī, m.
baseness, turpitūdō, -inis, f.
battle, pūgna, -ae, f.; proelium, -ī, n.
be, sum.
bear, ferō, 3 ; portō, 1 : (= **suffer**) tolerō, 1 : **bear away,** auferō, 3 : **bear off,** abdūcō, 3.
beautiful, pulcher, -chra, -chrum.
because, quod, quia.
become, fīō, 3.
becomes, it, decet.
before, ante, *prep. with acc.*
beg, rogō, 1 ; petō, 3.
begin, incipiō, 3 ; coepī, 3.
beginning, initium, -ī, n.
behalf of, in, prō, *prep. with abl.*
behoove, dēbeō.
being (living), animal, -ālis, n.
Belgians, Belgae, -ārum, m.
believe, crēdō, 3, *with dat.*
benefit, prōsum, *with dat.*
besiege, oppūgnō, 1 ; obsideō, 3.
best, optimus, -a, -um.
better, melior, -us.
between, inter, *prep. with acc.*
bid, iubeō, 2.
big, māgnus, -a, -um.
bind, vinciō, 4.
bird, avis, -is, f.
black, niger, -gra, -grum.
blame, n. culpa, -ae, f.
blame, v. culpō, 1.
body, corpus, -oris, n.
boldly, audācter.
book, liber, -brī, m.
booty, praeda, -ae, f.
born, be, nāscor, 3.
both (each of two), uterque, utraque, utrumque : **both ... and,** et ... et.
bow, arcus, -ūs, m.
boy, puer, -erī, m.
brave, fortis, -is, -e.
bravely, fortiter.
bravery, fortitūdō, -inis, f. ; virtūs, -ūtis, f.
breath, anima, -ae, f.
bridge, pōns, pontis, m.
bridle, frēnum, -ī, n.
bring, portō, 1 ; ferō, 3 : **together,** cōnferō, 3 : **up,** ēdūcō, 1 : **back,** reportō, 1.
Britain, Britannia, -ae, f.
broad, lātus, -a, -um.
brook, rīvulus, -ī, m.
brother, frāter, -tris, m.
build, aedificō, 1 ; cōnstituō, 3 ; condō, 3.

building, aedificium, -I, n.

bull, taurus, -I, m.

buy, emō, 3.

by, ā, ab, *with abl.; denoting means, abl. alone.*

C

Caesar, Caesar, -aris, m.

call, appellō, 1; vocō, 1: **together,** convocō, 1.

camp, castra, -ōrum, n.

can, possum.

canton, pāgus, -I, m.

captive, captīvus, -I, m.

capture, capiō, 3.

Capua, Capua, -ae, f.

care for, v. cūrō, 1.

care, n. cūra, -ae, f.

carefully, cum cūrā.

carry, portō, 1; ferō, 3: **away,** auferō, 3; abdūcō, 3: **back,** referō, 3: **carry on war,** bellum gerere.

cart, carrus, -I, m.

Carthage, Carthāgō, -inis, f.

Carthaginian, Poenus, -I, m.; Carthāginiēnsis, -is, m.

cause, n. causa, -ae, f.

cause, v. praebeō, 2.

cavalry, n. equitātus, -ūs, m.

cavalry, adj. equester, -tris, -tre.

celebrate, celebrō, 1.

certain (a), quīdam, quaedam, quoddam (quiddam): (= **sure**), certus, -a, -um.

change, mūtō, 1.

character, mōrēs, -um, m. pl.

charge of, have, praesum, *with dat.*

chase, vēnor, 1.

chief, prīnceps, -cipis, m.

children, līberī, -ōrum, m.; puerī, -ōrum, m.

choice, optiō, -ōnis, f.

choose, optō, 1.

Christ, Chrīstus, -I, m.

Cicero, Cicerō, -ōnis, m.

circumstance, rēs, reī, f.

citadel, arx, arcis, f.

citizen, cīvis, -is, m. *and* f.

city, urbs, urbis, f.

close at hand, prope, *prep. with acc.*

clothe, vestiō, 4.

cohort, cohors, -tis, f.

cold, frīgus, -ōris, n.

collect, cōgō, 3.

come, veniō, 4: **together,** conveniō.

command, v. imperō, 1, *with dat.;* iubeō, 2, *with acc.;* praesum, *with dat.*

command, n. imperium, -I, n.

commander, imperātor, -ōris, m.

common, commūnis, -is, -e.

common people, plēbs, plēbis, *and* plēbēs, -eī, m. *and* f.

companion, comes, -itis, m. *and* f.

compel, compellō, 3; cōgō, 3.

conceal, cēlō, 1.

concerning, dē, *prep. with abl.*

condemn, condemnō, 1.

conquer, superō, 1; vincō, 3.

conqueror, victor, -ōris, m.

consider, cōnsīderō, 1.

conspiracy, coniūrātiō, -ōnis, f.

consul, cōnsul, -ulis, m.

consulship, cōnsulātus, -ūs, m.; **in the ... of:** *use cōnsul and name in abl. abs.*

consult, adhibeō, 3.

corn, frūmentum, -I, n.

country (*fatherland*), patria, -ae, f.; terra, -ae, f.; (*not city*) rūs, rūris, n.

courage, virtūs, -ūtis, f.

course, iter, itineris, n.

creature, bēstia, -ae, f.

cross, trānseō, 4.

crowd, volgus, -I, n.

crown, corōna, -ae, f.

cruel, crūdēlis, -is, -e.

cruelly, crūdēliter.

cultivate, colō, 3.
custom, mōs, mōris, m.

D

danger, perīculum, -ī, n.
dangerous, perīculōsus, -a, -um, *adj.*
dare, audeō, 2, *semi-dep.*
daring, audācia, -ae, f.
daringly, cum audāciā, audācter.
daughter, fīlia, -ae, f.
day, diēs, diēī, m. *and* f.
daybreak (at), prīmā lūce.
dear, cārus, -a, -um.
death, mors, mortis, f.
deck, ōrnō, 1.
decree, dēcernō, 3.
deep, altus, -a, -um.
deer, cerva, -ae, f.
defeat, superō, 1; vincō, 3.
defend, dēfendō, 3.
delay, mora, -ae, f.
deliberate, dēliberō, 1; cōnsiderō, 1.
delight, dēlectō, 1.
deliver, līberō, 1.
Delphī, Delphī, -ōrum, m.
depart, discēdō, 3; exeō, 4.
depth, altitūdō, -inis, f.
desire, optō, 1; volō, 3; cupiō, 3.
desirous, avidus, -a, -um.
destroy, dēleō, 2.
devote oneself to, operam dō.
dictator, dictātor, -ōris, m.
die, morior, 3.
differ, differō, 3.
different, run in different ways, discurrō, 3.
difficulty, difficilia, n. pl.; **with difficulty,** vix.
diligence, dīligentia, -ae, f.
diligent, dīligēns, -entis.
diligently, dīligenter.
disgraceful, turpis, -is, -e.
dishonors (it), dēdecet.
dismay, cōnsternō, 1.
distant, am, absum.
distinguished, īnsīgnis, -is, -e.
distress, dolor, -ōris, m.
ditch, fossa, -ae, f.
Divitiacus, Divitiacus, -ī, m.
do, faciō, 3; agō, 3.
doubt, v. dubitō, 1.
doubt, n. dubium, -ī, n.
doubtful, dubius, -a, -um.
dove, columba, -ae, f.
draw, dūcō, 3: **draw up,** īnstruō, 3.
dread, v. formīdō, 1; timeō, 2.
dread, n. terror, -ōris, m.; timor, -ōris, m.
Dumnorix, Dumnorīx, -īgis, m.
during (= amid), inter, *prep. with acc.*
duty, mūnus, -eris, n.; officium, -ī, n.
dwell, habitō, 1.

E

each (one), quisque, quaeque, quidque (quodque); **(of two),** uterque, utraque, utrumque.
eager, cupidus, -a, -um; ācer, ācris, ācre.
eagerly, ācriter; cum studiō.
eagerness, studium, -ī, n.
earth, terra, -ae, f.
easily, facile.
educate, ēducō, 1.
eighth, octāvus, -a, -um.
elder, senior, -ius, gen. -ōris.
encourage, hortor, 1.
end, fīnis, -is, m.
endure, tolerō, 1.
enemy, hostis, -is, m. *and* f. *usually in plur.*; inimīcus, -ī, m.
enjoy, fruor, 3, *with abl.*
enroll, cōnscrībō, 3.

envy, n. invidia, -ae, f.
equal, pār, paris.
escape, ēvādō, 3; mē ēripiō, 3.
especially, māximē.
establish, cōnfīrmō, 1; cōnstituō, 3.
exchange, inter sē dō.
exhort, hortor, 1.
expense, sūmptus, -ūs, m.
experience, ūsus, -ūs, m.
explain, explānō, 1; explicō, 1; expōnō, 3.
expose, offerō, 3; expōnō, 3.
extend, pertineō, 2.
Etruscans, Etruscī, -ōrum, m.
Europe, Eurōpa, -ae, f.
even, etiam.
every, omnis, -is, -e; quisque, *see* **each.**
everyone, quisque, quaeque, quidque (quodque).

F

fact, rēs, reī, f.
fair, pulcher, -chra, -chrum.
faithful, fīdus, -a, -um; fidēlis, -is, -e.
faithfully, fidēliter.
faithless, perfidus, -a, -um.
fall, cadō, 3.
famous, clārus, -a, -um.
far, by far, longē.
farmer, agricola, -ae, m.
father, pater, patris, m.
fault, culpa, -ae, f.; vitium, -ī, n.: **find fault with, blame**, culpō, 1, *with acc.*; vituperō, 1, *with acc.*
Faustulus, Faustulus, -ī, m.
favor, faveō, 2, *with dat.*
fear, n. terror, -ōris, m.
fear, v. formīdō, 1; vereor, 2; timeō, 2.
few, paucī, -ae, -a.
field, ager, agrī, m.
fiercely, atrōciter; ācriter.
fight, v. pūgnō, 1; dīmicō, 1.
fight, n. pūgna, -ae, f.
fill, compleō, 2.
filled with, plēnus, -a, -um, *with gen.*
find, nancīscor, 3: **find out**, cōgnōscō, 3.
finish, cōnficiō, 3.
fire, ignis, -is, m.: **set fire to**, incendō, 3.
firmness, cōnstantia, -ae, f.
first, prīmus, -a, -um: **first (of two)**, prior, prius.
fish, piscis, -is, m.
fit, idōneus, -a, -um.
five hundred, quīngentī, -ae, -a.
flee, fugiō, 3; cōnfugiō, 3: **flight**, n. fuga, -ae, f.; **flight, put to**, fugō, 1.
flock, grēx, gregis, m.
flower, flōs, flōris, m.
fly, volō, 1.
follow, sequor, 3.
following day, posterō diē.
folly, stultitia, -ae, f.
food, cibus, -ī m.
foot, pēs, pedis, m.
foot-soldier, pedes, peditis, m.
for, *conj.* nam.
for: *sign of dative: prep.* dē, prō, *with abl.: denoting time or space, acc.*
force, manus, -ūs, f.
forces, cōpiae, -ārum, f.
foresight, prūdentia, -ae, f.
forest, silva, -ae, f.
forever, semper.
forget, oblīvīscor, 3.
form, fōrma, -ae, f.
former, ille.
fortify, mūniō, 4; saepiō, 4.
fortune, fortūna, -ae, f.
forum, forum, -ī, n.
forward, go, prōcēdō, 3; prōgredior, 3.
free, adj. līber, -era, -erum.
free, v. līberō, 1.
friend, amīcus, -ī, m.

friendly, amīcus, -a, -um.

frighten, terreō, 2.

frightened, territus, -a, -um.

from, dē, *with abl.:* **away from,** ā *or* ab, *with abl.:* **out of,** ex or ē, *with abl.*

front, frōns, frontis, m.

fruit, frūctus, -ūs, m.

full, plēnus, -a, -um, *with gen.*

furnish, praebeō, 2.

further, ulterior, -ius, gen. -ōris.

furthest, ultimus, -a, -um.

G

gain, v. reportō, 1.

game, lūdus, -ī, m.

garrison, praesidium, -ī, n.

gate, porta, -ae, f.

gaze at, spectō, 1; cōnspicor, 1.

Gaul, Gallia, -ae, f.

Gaul, a, Gallus, -ī, m.

general, dux, ducis, m. *and* f.; imperātor, -ōris, m.

Germans, Germānī, -ōrum, m.

get (possession of), potior, 4, *with abl.:* **get ready,** parō, 1: **get together,** comparō, 1.

gift, dōnum, -ī, n.

girl, puella, -ae, f.

give, dō, 1.

glad, laetus, -a, -um.

glorious, glōriā māgnā.

go, eō, 4: **go forth** or **out,** exeō, 4: **go off, away,** abeō, 4; discēdō, 3: **go forward,** prōgredior.

goat, capra, -ae, f.

god, deus, -ī, m.

goddess, dea, -ae, f.

gold, aurum, -ī, n.

golden, aureus, -a, -um.

good, bonus, -a, -um.

grain, frūmentum, -ī, n.

grandfather, avus, -ī, m.

grant, dō, 1.

great, māgnus, -a, -um; ingēns, -entis: **so great,** tantus, -a, -um.

greatest, summus, -a, -um.

greatly, māximē.

Greece, Graecia, -ae, f.

Greek, a, Graecus, -ī.

grieve, doleō, 1, *with abl.*

grievous, gravis, -is, -e.

ground (on the), humī (*loc.*).

guard, v. cūstōdiō, 4.

guard, n. cūstōs, -ōdis, m.

guide, dux, ducis, m.

H

hand, manus, -ūs, f.

handsome, pulcher, -chra, -chrum.

happen, accidō, 3.

harbor, portus, -ūs, m.

harm (do), noceō, 2, *with dat.;* obsum, *with dat.*

harsh, gravis, -is, -e; asper, -era, -erum.

hasten, properō, 1; fēstīnō, 1; contendō, 3.

hate, ōdī, *present tenses wanting.*

hatred, odium, -ī.

have, habeō, 2: **have charge of,** praesum, *with dat.*

he, is; hīc; ille.

head, caput, -itis, n.: **be at the head of,** praesum, *with dat.*

heal, cūrō, 1.

hear, audiō, 4.

heavens, caelum, -ī, n.

heavy, gravis.

help, v. iuvō, 1.

help, n. auxilium, -ī, n.

Helvetians (the), Helvētiī, -ōrum, m.

her, ēius, illīus: *if referring to subject of the sentence,* suus, -a, -um.

hero, vir, virī, m.

hesitate, dubitō, 1.

hide, lateō, 2.
high, altus, -a, -um.
highest, summus, -a, -um.
hill, collis, -is, m.
himself, *see* **self.**
hinder, impediō, 4.
his, ēius, illīus: *if referring to subject of the sentence,* suus, -a, -um.
history, historia, -ae, f.
hither (= *nearer*), citerior, -ius, gen. -ōris.
hold, habeō, 2; teneō, 2; contineō, 2: **hold back,** retineō, 2.
home, domus, -ūs, f.: **at home,** domī: **home** (*result of motion*), domum.
honor, n. honor, -ōris, m.
honor, v. celebrō, 1; honōrō, 1.
hope, n. spēs, speī, f.
hope, v. spērō, 1.
horn, cornū, -ūs, n.
horse, equus, -ī, m.
horseman, eques, -itis, m.
host, hospes, -itis, m.
hostage, obses, -idis, m. *and* f.
hour, hōra, -ae, f.
house, domus, -ūs, f.
hundred, centum.
hunt, vēnor, 1.
hunter, vēnātor, -ōris, m.
hurl, iaciō.
hurt, v. noceō, *with dat.*
hut, casa, -ae, f.

I

I, ego.
if, sī.
ignorant, īgnārus, -a, -um, *with gen.*
ill, adv. male.
immediately, statim.
impede, impediō, 4.
impious, impius, -a, -um.
in, in, *with abl.*
in order that, ut, *with subjv.*
incite, incitō, 1.
increase, augeō, 2.
induce, indūcō, 3.
induced, inductus, -a, -um; adductus, -a, -um.
industriously, cum dīligentiā.
industry, dīligentia, -ae, f.
infantry, peditēs, -um, m.; peditātus, -ūs, m.
influence, auctōritās, -ātis, f.
inform, certiōrem faciō.
inhabitant, incola, -ae, m. *and* f.
injure, noceō, 2, *with dat.*: obsum, *with dat.*
into, in, *with acc.*
irksome, molestus, -a, -um.
island, īnsula, -ae, f.
it, is, ea, id; hīc, haec, hōc; ille, illa, illud.
Italy, Ītalia, -ae, f.
itself, *see* **self.**

J

javelin, pīlum, -ī, n.
join together, coniungō, 3.
journey, iter, itineris, n.
joy, gaudium, -ī, n.
joyful, laetus, -a, -um.
joyfully, cum gaudiō.
judge, n. iūdex, -icis, m.
judge, v. iūdicō, 1.
Jupiter, Iūppiter, Iovis, m.
just, iūstus, -a, -um.

K

keep, habeō, 2; teneō, 2.
keeper, cūstōs, -ōdis, m.
keep off, arceō, 2.
kill, necō, 1; interficiō, 3.
kind, genus, -eris, n.
kind of, what, quālis, -is, -e.

kindness, beneficium, -ī, n.
king, rēx, rēgis, m.
kingdom, rēgnum, -ī, n.
knife, culter, -trī, m.
know, sciō, 4 : **not know,** nesciō, 4.
known, nōtus, -a, -um.

L

labor, n. labor, -ōris, m.
labor, v. laborō, 1.
lack, dēsum, *with abl.*; careō, 2, *with abl.*
land, terra, -ae, f.: **native land,** patria, -ae, f.
large, māgnus, -a, -um.
last, suprēmus, -a, -um; ūltimus, -a, -um.
latter (the), hīc, haec, hōc.
laugh, rīdeō, 2 : **laugh at,** inrīdeō, 2, *with acc.*
law, lēx, lēgis, f.
lazy, piger, -gra, -grum.
lay waste, vāstō, 1.
lead, dūcō, 3 : **lead out,** ēdūcō, 3 : **lead on,** addūcō, 3.
letter, epistula, -ae, f.; lītterae, -ārum, f.
level, campester, -tris, -tre.
liberty, lībertās, -ātis, f.
lie (= *recline*), iaceō, 2.
lie (= *tell a lie*), mentior.
lieutenant, lēgātus, -ī, m.
life, vīta, -ae, f.
light, adj. levis, -is, -e.
light, n. lūx, lūcis, f.
like, similis, -is, -e.
likeness, imāgō, -inis, f.
line of battle, aciēs, -ēī, f.
literature, līterae, -ārum, f.
little, parvus, -a, -um.
lion, leŏ, -ōnis, m.
live, vīvō, 3.
living being, animal, -ālis, n.
long, longus, -a, -um : **for a long time,** diū.
look at, spectō, 1.
Lord, Dominus, -ī, m.
lose, āmittō, 3.
love, v. amō, 1.
love, n. amor, -ōris, m.
low, humilis, -is, -e.
lower, īnferior, -ius, gen. -ōris.
luckily, fēlīciter.
lucky, fēlīx (*of persons*); prosperus, -a, -um (*of things*).

M

Macedonia, Macedōnia, -ae, f.
maiden, maid, puella, -ae, f.; virgō, -inis, f.: **maid-servant,** ancilla, -ae, f.
make, faciō, 3.
man, vir, virī, m.; homŏ, -inis, m.
many, multī, -ae, -a.
march, via, -ae, f.; iter, itineris, n.
marriage, mātrimōnium, -ī, n. : **right of marriage,** cōnūbium, -ī, n.
marry, in mātrimōnium dūcō, 3; *when said of a woman*, nūbō, 3, *with dat.*
master, dominus, -ī, m. : **schoolmaster,** magister, -trī, m.
match, pār, paris.
medicine, medicīna, -ae, f.
meeting, concilium, -ī, n.
merchant, mercātor, -ōris, m.
merry, laetus, -a, -um.
messenger, nūntius, -ī, m.
Miltiades, Miltiadēs, -is, m.
mind, animus, -ī, m.; mēns, mentis, f.
mine, meus, mea, meum.
misdeed, scelus, sceleris, n.
money, pecūnia, -ae, f.
month, mēnsis, -is, m.
moon, lūna, -ae, f.
more, magis; plūs.
mother, māter, -tris, f.

mountain, mōns, montis, m.
move, moveō, 2.
much, multus, -a, -um.
multitude, multitūdō, -inis, f.
must, dēbeō, *with inf.; expressed by gerundive.*
my, meus, mea, meum.

N

name, nōmen, -inis, n.
narrow, angustus, -a, -um.
nation, gēns, gentis, f.; nātiō, -ōnis, f.
native land, patria, -ae, f.
near, ad, *with acc.;* prope, *with acc.*
near by, near at hand, prope.
nearer, propior, -ius.
nearest, proximus, -a, -um.
neighbor, vīcīnus, -ī, m.
neighboring, vīcīnus, -a, -um.
neither, neque.
neither (of two), neuter, -tra, -trum.
never, numquam.
nevertheless, tamen.
new, novus, -a, -um.
next, posterus, -a, -um; postrēmus, -a, -um.
night, nox, noctis, f.: **by night,** noctū.
nine, novem.
ninth, nōnus, -a, -um.
no, nūllus, -a, -um.
noble, nōbilis, -is, -e.
nobody, no one, nēmō, nūllīus, nēminī, nēminem, nūllō: **that no one,** nē quis.
no longer, iam *with a negative.*
noise, clāmor, -ōris, m.
nor neque.
not, nōn; nē.
nothing, nihil.
nourish, alō, 3.
now, nunc; iam.
Numa, Numa, -ae, m.
number, numerus, -ī, m.

O

oath, iūsiūrandum, iūrisiūrandī, n.
obey, pāreō, 2, *with dat.*
obtain, obtineō, 2.
occupy, occupō, 1.
of (*sign of gen.*), *untranslated;* dē, *with abl.*
often, saepe.
oh, Ō.
old, antīquus, -a, -um; vetus, -eris: **old man,** senex, senis, m.
older, senior, -ōris.
oldest, māximus, -a, -um nātū.
on, in, *with abl.; denoting time, expressed by simple abl.:* **on account of,** ob *or* propter, *with acc. or by abl. alone.*
once, ōlim.
one, ūnus, -a, -um: **one . . . another,** alius . . . alius: **the one . . . the other,** alter . . . alter.
only, tantum.
open, aperiō, 4.
opportune, opportūnus, -a, -um, *with dat.*
opposite, contrārius, -a, -um, *with dat.*
order, imperō, 1, *with dat.:* iubeō, 2, *with acc.:* **in order to,** ut, *with subjv.*
other, alius, -a, -ud: **some . . . others,** aliī . . . aliī: **other (of two),** alter.
ought, dēbeō, 2; oportet, 2, *impers.; also by the gerundive.*
our, noster, -tra, -trum.
ourselves, *see* **self.**
out of, ē or ex, *with abl.*
overcome, superō, 1; vincō, 3.
overwhelm, superō, 1.
own (his, her, their), suus, -a, -um: **my,** meus, -a, -um: **our,** noster, -tra, -trum: **your,** vester, -tra, -trum: **thy,** tuus, -a, -um.

P

pained, am, doleō, *with abl.*
parent, parēns, -entis, m. *and* f.

part, pars, partis, f.

patience, patientia, -ae, f.

patiently, patienter ; cum patientiā.

peace, pāx, pācis, f.

people, populus, -I, m: **common people,** plēbs, -bis, f.

perform, fungor, 3, *with abl.*

peril, perīculum, -I, n.

perilous, perīculōsus, -a, -um.

permit, permittō, 3, *with dat.*

persuade, persuādeō, 2, *with dat.*

pirate, pīrāta, -ae, m.

pitch (camp), pōnō, 3.

pity, v. miseret, 2, *impers.*

pity, n. misericordia, -ae, f.

place, n. locus, -I, m.; plur. loca, -ōrum, n.: *places on the earth,* locī, -ōrum, m.: *passages in books:* **in that place,** ibi.

place, v. locō, 1.

plain, campus, -I, m.; plānitiēs, -ēī, f.

plan, cōnsilium, -I, n.

plead, dīcō, 3.

pleasant, grātus, -a, -um ; iūcundus, -a, -um.

please, placeō, 2, *with dat.*

pleasing, grātus, -a, -um.

plenty, cōpiā, -ae, f.

plough, n. arātrum, -I, n.

plough, v. arō, 1.

poet, poēta, -ae, m.

poor, pauper, -era, -erum.

position, status, -ūs, m.

possession of, get, potior, 4.

power, imperium, -I; rēgnum, -I, n.; potestās, -ātis, f.

powerful, potēns, -entis, f.

praise, n. laus, laudis, f.

praise, v. laudō, 1.

prefer, mālō, *irreg.*

prepare, parō, 1.

prepared, parātus, -a, -um, *with dat. or* ad *and acc.*

present, am, adsum, *with dat.*

presently, mox.

preserve, cōnservō, 1.

pretty, pulcher, -chra, -chrum.

prevent, impedīō, 4.

prisoner, captīvus, -I, m.

promise, v. prōmittō, 3: **promise solemnly,** voveō, 2.

promise, n. prōmissum, -I, n.; vōtum, -I, n.

prosperous, prosperus, -a, -um (*of things*); fēlīx, -īcis (*of persons*).

protect, dēfendō, 3.

proud, superbus, -a, -um.

province, prōvincia, -ae, f.

provisions, rēs frūmentāria, reī frūmentāriae, f.

prudence, prūdentia, -ae, f.

prudent, prūdēns, -entis.

punish, vindicō, 1 ; pūniō, 4.

punishment, poena, -ae, f.

pupil, dīscipulus, -I, m.

purpose (for the purpose of), ut, *with subjv.* ; ad, *with acc. of gerund or gerundive* ; causā, *with gen. of gerund or gerundive.*

put, pōnō, 3: **put to flight,** fugō, 1: **put off,** differō, 3.

Q

queen, rēgīna, -ae, f.

question, v. interrogō, 1.

quickly, citō.

R

rampart, vāllum, -I, n.

rank, ōrdō, -inis, m.

raise, tollō, 3.

rather, *use comp. degree:* **wish rather,** mālō.

read, legō, 3.

ready, parātus, -a, -um.

recall, revocō, 1.
receive, recipiō, 3; accipiō, 3; excipiō, 3.
refresh, recreō, 1.
refuse, recūsō, 1.
region, regiō, -ōnis, f.
reign, rēgnō, 1.
rejoice, gaudeō, 2.
remain, maneō, 2.
remind, moneō, 2.
renown, fāma, -ae, f.; glōria, -ae, f.
repent, poenitet, *impers.*, 2.
reply, respondeō, 2.
repulse, repellō, 3.
resist, resistō, 3, *with dat.*
respect to, in, *use abl. case.*
restore, restituō, 3; reddō, 3; reconciliō, 1.
return, v. redeō, 4; revertor, 3.
revolution, novae rēs, novārum rērum, f.
reward, praemium, -I, n.
Rhine, Rhēnus, -I, m.
rich, dīves, dīvitis.
riches, dīvitiae, -ārum, f.
ride, equitō, 1.
right (hand), adj. dexter, -tra, -trum.
right, n. iūs, iūris, n.: **right of marriage,** cōnūbium, -I, n.
rightly, rēctē.
ripe, mātūrus, -a, -um.
river, flūmen, -inis, n.
road, via, viae, f.
Roman, Rōmānus, -a, -um.
Rome, Rōma, -ae, f.
rose, rosa, -ae, f.
rough, asper, -era, -erum.
rout, fugō, 1.
rule, n. imperium, -I, n.
rule, v. regō, 3; rēgnō, 1.
run, currō, 3; **in different ways,** discurrō, 3.

S

Sabines, Sabīnī, -ōrum, m.
sad, trīstis, -is, -e; maestus, -a, -um.
safe, tūtus, -a, -um.
safety, salūs, -ūtis, f.
sail, nāvigō, 1.
sailor, nauta, -ae, f.
sake of, for the, causā, *with gen.*
sally, n. incursiō, -ōnis, f.; ēruptiō, -ōnis, f.
same, īdem, eadem, idem.
savage, ferōx, -ōcis.
save, servō, 1; cōnservō, 1.
say, dīcō, 3; inquit, *irreg.*
school, schola, -ae, f.
sea, mare, -is, n.; aequor, -oris, n.
second, secundus, -a, -um.
sedition, sēditiō, -ōnis, f.
see, videō, 2.
seek, quaerō, 3; petō, 3.
seem, videor, 2.
seize, occupō, 1; capiō, 3.
self, *intensive,* ipse; *reflexive, i.e. referring to subject of sentence,* suī, sibī, sē, sē.
senate, senātus, -ūs, m.
senator, senātor, -ōris, m.
send, mittō, 3: **send forward,** praemittō, 3.
servant, servus, -I, m.; serva, -ae, f.
set out, proficīscor, 3: **set free,** līberō, 1: **set fire to,** incendō, 3, *with acc.*
seventh, septimus, -a, -um.
severe, gravis, -is, -e.
shake, agitō, 1.
sharp, acūtus, -a, -um.
she, ea; haec; illa.
shield, scūtum, -I, n.; clipeus, -I, m.
ship, nāvis, -is, f.
short, brevis, -is, -e.
shout, n. clāmor, -ōris, m.

show, v. dēmōnstrō, 1 ; mōnstrō, 1.

show, n. spectāculum, -ī, n.

sick, aeger, -gra, -grum.

side (on the other side of), trāns, *with acc.*

signal, sīgnum, -ī, n.

since, cum, *with subjv.*

sing, cantō, 1.

sister, soror, -ōris, f.

six, sex.

sixth, sextus, -a, -um.

sixty, sexāgintā.

size, māgnitūdō, -inis, f.

skilful, skilled, perītus, -a, -um, *with gen.*

sky, caelum, -ī, n.

slave, servus, -ī, m. ; serva, -ae, f.

slavery, servitūs, -ūtis, f.

slay, necō, 1 ; interficiō, 3.

sleep, somnus, -ī, m.

small, parvus, -a, -um.

so, ita, tam : **so great,** tantus, -a, -um : **so that,** ut, *with subjv.:* **so that . . . not, so as not to,** ut nōn, *with subjv.*

soldier, mīles, -itis, m.

solemnly, *see* **promise.**

some (one), aliquis, -qua, -quid *or* -quod ; quīdam, quaedam, quod- *or* quiddam : **some . . . others,** alii . . . alii ; alterī . . . alterī (*when only two parties are meant*).

something, aliquid.

sometimes, interdum.

son, fīlius, -ī, m.

song, carmen, -inis, m.

soon, mox.

sorry, be, doleō, 2.

source, fōns, fontis, m.

space, spatium, -ī, n.

Spain, Hispānia, -ae, f.

spare, parcō, 3.

speak, loquor, 3.

spear, hasta, -ae, f.

speedily, celeriter.

spirit, animus, -ī, m.

spirited, ācer, ācris, ācre.

spur, calcar, -āris, n.

stag, cervus, -ī.

stand, stō, 1 : **stand together,** cōnsistō.

standard, sīgnum, -ī, n.

star, stella, -ae, f.

state, cīvitās, -ātis, f.; rēs pūblica, reī pūblicae, f.

statue, statua, -ae, f.

stature, statūra, -ae, f.

stay, maneō, 2.

still, tamen.

stone, lapis, -idis, m.

storm, n. tempestās, -ātis, f.

storm, v. oppūgnō, 1.

story, fābula, -ae, f.

strange, mīrābilis, -e.

street, via, -ae, f.

strength, vis, vīs, f.; cōnstantia, -ae, f.

strong, validus, -a, -um.

struggle, n. certāmen, -inis, n.

sturdy, validus, -a, -um.

subdue, pācō, 1.

successfully, fēlīciter.

suddenly, subitō.

suffer, tolerō, 1; labōrō, 1.

suffice, sufficiō, 3.

suitable, idōneus, -a, -um.

summer, aestās, -ātis, f.

summon, vocō, 1.

sun, sōl, sōlis, m.

superior, superior, -ius.

surpass, superō, 1.

survive, supersum, *with dat.*

swift, celer, celeris, celere.

swiftly, celeriter.

sword, gladius, -ī, m.

T

table, mēnsa, -ae, f.

take, occupō, 1 ; capiō, 3 ; sūmō, 3 : **take by storm,** expūgnō, 1.

tale, fābula, -ae, f.

talent, talentum, -ī, n.

tall, altus, -a, -um.

Tarentum, Tarentum, -ī, n.

Tarquin, Tarquinius, -ī, m.

teach, doceō, 2.

teacher, magister, -trī.

tell, nārrō, 1 ; dīcō, 3.

temple, templum, -ī, n.

ten, decem.

tender, tener, -era, -erum.

tenth, decimus, -a, -um.

terrify, terreō, 2.

territory, fīnēs, -ium, m.

terror, terror, -ōris, m.

than, quam ; *or by abl. if* quam *is omitted.*

that, *dem. pron.* is, ea, id ; ille, illa, illud ; iste, ista, istud.

that, *rel. pron.* quī, quae, quod.

that, *conj.*, 1, *denoting purpose or result,* ut ; 2, *with verbs of fearing,* nē ; 3, *after verbs of saying and thinking, omitted.*

their, eōrum *referring to masc. and neut.*, eārum *to fem.: if to the subject of the sentence,* suus, -a, -um.

themselves, *see* **self.**

then, tunc.

there, *adv.* ibi.

there, *expletive, not translated.*

therefore, igitur.

thing, rēs, reī ; *in plur. with adj. usually expressed by neut. gender.*

think, putō, 1 ; arbitror, 1.

thirteen, tredecim.

this, is, ea, id ; hīc, haec, hōc.

thousand, mīlle.

three, trēs, trēs, tria.

three hundred, trecentī, -ae, -a.

through, per, *with acc.*

throw, iactō, 1 ; iaciō, 3.

thus, ita.

time, tempus, -oris, n.

tired, tired out, dēfessus, -a, -um.

to, 1, *sign of dat. ;* 2, *denoting motion,* ad *with acc. ;* 3, *denoting purpose,* ut *with subjv.*, ad *with gerund or gerundive ;* causā, *with gen. of gerund or gerundive.*

to and fro, *see* **run.**

to-day, hodiē.

together with, cum, *with abl.*

toil, labōrō, 1.

too, *expressed by comp. degree.*

touch, tangō, 3.

towards, ad *or* in, *with acc.*

tower, turris, -is, f.

town, oppidum, -ī, n.

townsman, oppidānus, -ī, m.

train, v. ēducō, 1.

traveller, viātor, -ōris, m.

treason, prōditiō, -ōnis, f.

treaty, foedus, -eris, n.

tree, arbor, -oris, f.

tribe, tribus, -ūs, m. ; gēns, gentis, f.

triumph, triumphus, -ī, m.

troops, cōpiae, -ārum, f.

troublesome, molestus, -a, -um.

true, vērus, -a, -um.

trumpet, tuba, -ae, f.

trust, fīdō, 3.

truth, vērum, -ī, n.

try, tentō, 1 ; cōnor, 1.

turn, flectō, 3 ; vertō, 3.

twenty, vīgintī.

two, duo, -ae, -o : **which of two,** uter, -tra, -trum : **each of two,** uterque, -traque, -trumque.

U

uncertain, incertus, -a, -um.
under, sub, *with acc. to denote motion; with abl. to denote rest.*
unlike, dissimilis, -is, -e.
unsuccessful, infēlix.
unused to, insuētus, -a, -um.
unwilling, am, nōlō.
unworthy, indignus, -a, -um.
upon, in, *with acc., of motion; with abl., of rest.*
use, ūtor, 3, *with abl.*
useful, ūtilis, -is, -e.

V

valor, virtūs, -ūtis, f.
van, āgmen prīmum, āgminis prīmī.
vanquish, superō, 1; vincō, 3.
versed in, perītus, -a, -um, *with gen.*
very, *expressed by superl. degree.*
victor, victor, -ōris, m.
victory, victōria, -ae, f.
village, vīcus, -I, m.
vine, vītis, -is, f.
virgin, virgō, -inis, f.
virtue, virtūs, -ūtis, f.
voice, vōx, vōcis, f.

W

wage (war), gerō, 3.
wagon, carrus, -I, m.
walk (= *take a walk*), ambulō, 1.
wall, mūrus, -I, m.; moenia, -ium, n.
wander through, peragrō, 1.
want (= *wish*), volō: (= *lack*), dēsum, *with dat.*
want, n. inopia, -ae.
war, n. bellum, -I, n.
war, v. bellō, 1.
warlike, bellicōsus, -a, -um.
warn, v. moneō, 2.
waste, lay, vāstō, 1.
water, aqua, -ae, f.
wave, fluctus, -ūs, m:
way, via, -ae, f.; iter, itineris, n.
ways, see **run.**
weapon, tēlum, -I, n.
weary, dēfessus, -a, -um.
weather, caelum, -I, n.
weep, fleō, 2.
welcome, grātus, -a, -um.
well, bene.
what? 1, *interrog. pron.* quis, quid? 2, *interrog. adj.* quī, quae, quod? **what kind of,** quālis, -is, -e?
when, cum, *with subjv.*; ubi, *with ind.*
whence, unde.
where, ubi.
whether, num.
which, *rel. pron.* quī, quae, quod: **which of two,** uter, -tra, -trum.
while, dum.
white, albus, -a, -um.
whither, quō.
who, *interrog.* quis, quid; *rel.* quī, quae, quod.
whole, tōtus, -a, -um.
why, cūr.
wide, lātus, -a, -um.
wife, uxor, -ōris, f.
wild beast, fera, -ae, f.
wild boar, aper, -rī, m.
willing, am, volō.
win, reportō, 1.
wine, vīnum, -I, n.
wing, āla, -ae: (*of an army*) cornū, -ūs, n.
winter, n. hiems, -mis, f.
winter, v. hiemō, 1.
winter-quarters, hīberna, -ōrum, n.
wisdom, prūdentia, -ae, f.; sapientia, -ae, f.
wise, sapiēns, -entis; prūdēns, -entis.

wish, volō ; capiō, 3 ; optō, 1.

with, cum, *with abl. ; often by abl. alone.*

withdraw, discēdō, 3.

without, sine, *with abl.*

woman, fēmina, -ae, f. ; mulier, -eris, f.

wonder, wonder at, mīror, 1, *with acc.*

wont, am, soleō, 2.

woods, silva, -ae, f.

word, verbum, -ī, n. ; vōx, vōcis, f.

work, n. opus, -eris, n. ; labor, -ōris, m.

work, v. labōrō, 1.

world, orbis (terrārum), -is, m. ; mundus, -ī, m.

worse, pēior, -ius.

would that, utinam.

wound, n. volnus, -eris, n.

wound, v. volnerō, 1.

wretched, miser, -era, -erum.

write, scrībō, 3.

wrong, iniūstus, -a, -um.

Y

year, annus, -ī, m.

yesterday, herī.

yoke, iugum, -ī, m.

you, *sing.* tū ; *pl.* vōs.

young, iuvenis, -is, -e.

young man, adulēscēns, -entis, m. ; iuvenis, -is, m.

your, *sing.* tuus, -a, -um ; *pl.* vester, vestra, vestrum.

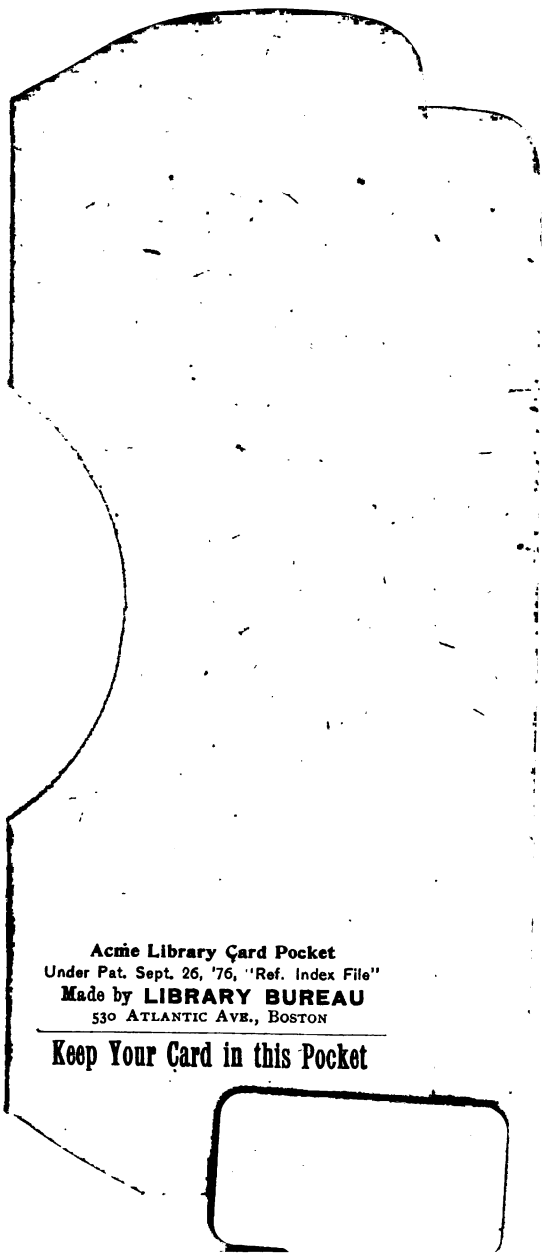
yourselves, *see* **self.**

youth (body of), iuventūs, -ūtis, f.

Z

zeal, studium, -ī, n.

zealously, cum studiō.


Acme Library Card Pocket
Under Pat. Sept. 26, '76, "Ref. Index File"
Made by LIBRARY BUREAU
530 ATLANTIC AVE., BOSTON
Keep Your Card in this Pocket